

BEGINNING CHINESE

BY
JOHN DE FRANCIS

EDITED BY

HENRY C. FENN GEORGE A. KENNEDY

NEW HAVEN
YALE UNIVERSITY PRESS
1946

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	vii
ABBREVIATIONS	x
LESSON 1: SIMPLE INITIALS, FINALS, AND TONES	1
LESSON 2: RETROFLEXES, FRICATIVES, AND U-SOUNDS	3
LESSON 3: PAUSE, STRESS, AND MODIFIED TONES	5
LESSON 4: PARTS OF SPEECH	7
LESSON 5: PALATALS AND OTHER SOUNDS	11
LESSON 6: TRANSITIVE AND AUXILIARY VERBS	14
LESSON 7: INDIRECT OBJECTS, TITLES	17
LESSON 8: EQUATIONAL VERBS, THREE-SYLLABLE COMPOUNDS	21
LESSON 9: NUMBERS, QUESTION-WORDS	25
LESSON 10: MEASURES AND SPECIFIERS	27
LESSON 11: SUBORDINATION OF NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND PLACE-WORDS	33
LESSON 12: SUBORDINATION OF STATIVE VERBS	38
LESSON 13: SUBORDINATION OF NON-STATIVE VERBS	43
LESSON 14: PLACE-WORDS AND LOCATION	48
LESSON 15: PLACE-WORDS AND EXISTENCE	52
LESSON 16: THE COVERB OF LOCATION	57 —
LESSON 17: THE COVERB OF DIRECTION	62 —
LESSON 18: THE USES OF <i>le</i>	66
LESSON 19: COMPLETED ACTION WITH <i>gwo</i>	72
LESSON 20: COMPLETED ACTION WITH <i>de</i>	78
LESSON 21: TIME BY THE CLOCK	83
LESSON 22: DURATION OF TIME	89
LESSON 23: RELATIVE TIME	96
LESSON 24: FURTHER USES OF <i>le</i>	103
LESSON 25: RESULTATIVE VERBS	108
LESSON 26: DISTANCE AND SEPARATION	114
LESSON 27: SIMILARITY AND DISPARITY	121
LESSON 28: COMPARISON	127
LESSON 29: ADVERBIAL PREDICATES	133
LESSON 30: DIRECTIVE VERBS	140
LESSON 31: QUESTION-WORDS AS INDEFINITES	148
LESSON 32: THE COVERB <i>bǎ</i>	154 —
LESSON 33: THE PARTICLE <i>je</i>	161
LESSON 34: THE COVERB <i>ràng</i>	168 —
APPENDIX: TRANSLATION EXERCISES (ENGLISH VERSION)	177
INDEX	192

66-24-47 X

INTRODUCTION

THIS book is based on the method of teaching developed by the Department of Linguistics at Yale University and applied to Chinese by Professor George A. Kennedy. It introduces the student to the type of Northern Chinese spoken in the city of Peiping.

The only sound way to study a modern language is to begin by speaking. In the case of Chinese there are two special and additional reasons for this. The traditional system of writing Chinese is extremely difficult, for it uses a separate character for each syllable. Moreover, much of the language used in writing is archaic and highly formalized, differing greatly from the living speech. Our lessons are based on the actual everyday language. The forms are presented in a transcription developed at Yale University.¹

More specifically, our method of instruction can be summarized by the words *analysis* and *repetition*. The analysis consists of a systematic presentation of the sounds and constructions of spoken Chinese on the assumption that such a presentation can speed up the learning process. The structure of Chinese is analyzed in its basic aspects in the various Notes of each lesson. The constructions which have been dealt with are the most important ones in the language. Taken together they provide a firm base for adding further vocabulary and idioms. The grammatical terminology and general order of presentation follow very largely the system devised by Professor Kennedy; many of the formulations were originated by him and all have benefited from his scrutiny. Invaluable criticism was also contributed by Professor Leonard Bloomfield. Mr. Henry C. Fenn too has gone over the notes with great care and has contributed innumerable suggestions for improvement. Much aid was also received from the students upon whom the material was tested.

On the Chinese text itself the author has been lucky enough to receive the help of several native speakers. All of the Chinese material has been gone over by Mr. Henry C. Fenn, Mr. Gardner Tewksbury, Miss K. Chuan, and Mrs. Gertrude Tang. Parts of it have been checked by Mr. P. E. Wang, Mrs. Eleanor Ling, and Miss Vee Ling. Much valuable aid was also contributed by Mr. Fred Wang, Miss Sally Cheng, Miss Yolanda Sun, and Miss Lily Tang. The author gratefully acknowledges the help received on the Chinese text and explanatory notes but at the same time assumes responsibility for the material in its present form.

Though analysis can help, yet one can reach a firm, quick, and sensitive understanding only when one has learned to hear and to use the forms and constructions without stopping to reason. The only way to accomplish this aim is by constant repetition. To this end the present work has limited the vocabulary to some 400 words; yet it provides more than 4,000 sentences and phrases illustrating the use of this vocabulary. Repetition is further encouraged by the Substitution Tables which enable the student to construct additional thousands of sentences within the same

1. For a discussion of systems of writing Chinese alphabetically and related problems, see John De Francis, "The Alphabetization of Chinese," *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, Vol. 63, Number 4 (1943).

limited vocabulary. It is impossible to overemphasize the importance of these exercises. Analysis without repetition cannot possibly lead to the mastery of a language. On the other hand, repetition without analysis, the normal procedure by which a child learns his native language, would in the end lead to mastery. One must agree with Jespersen when he advises: "Practice what is right again and again."

A few hints on how the present material should be practiced may prove of value. If the student is trying to pick up Chinese by himself he should start by reading through the Notes and then glancing through the Vocabulary. After this, he should read through the various Drills, comparing the Chinese with the English and referring when necessary to the Notes. This should be repeated over and over again without however spending too much time trying to understand the Notes. If they continue to be obscure after several readings they should be set aside, for it is better to spend time on memorizing sentences than on figuring out and memorizing notes. After the material has been gone over in this way several times, the student should cover up the English version and translate the Chinese sentences into English, checking himself sentence by sentence. Then an attempt should be made to compose some sentences from the Substitution Tables. When the student is successful in this and can also make perfect translations of the Chinese sentences, he should then reverse the process by covering up the Chinese and translating the English sentences back into Chinese. This should be repeated back and forth until translations can be made quickly in either direction. This goal can be reached more quickly by memorizing as many sentences as possible. At the very least, one should memorize the starred sentences in the drill entitled Model Sentences, for they illustrate the main grammatical points dealt with in each lesson. The rest of the sentences in the drill are also worth memorizing, for an attempt has been made to illustrate the use of all the new vocabulary items and all the points of grammar in this drill.

Special attention should be paid to Lessons 31-34. In these lessons all the vocabulary and constructions of the first thirty lessons have been repeated at least once. Lessons 31-34 therefore provide a valuable review of all the material in this book.

If phonograph records are available as an additional help, the above program can be varied by repeated playing of the appropriate records. One should listen carefully before trying to imitate. One may look at the printed text while listening to the records, but it is well to try as rapidly as possible to reach the point of understanding the spoken version without reference to the text. When this point has been reached one may try to repeat after the recording sentence by sentence.

If it is possible to study with a Chinese teacher try by all means to work with one whose native dialect is Pekingese, for those who have learned this dialect as adults will, unless they have learned it perfectly, often exhibit more or less important differences in pronunciation, vocabulary, and word-order. A teacher with little or no knowledge of English is to be welcomed, at least in the beginning, as no time will then be wasted in speaking English. A bilingual teacher can sometimes help in translating English into Chinese, but often much valuable time is wasted in the process.

Whether one works alone or with a teacher, one can master the material in this book by repeating all the Chinese phrases and sentences so often that they become as familiar as their English equivalents. When the student has absorbed the materials presented here he will have a solid base from which to go on with other books which

INTRODUCTION

ix

continue beyond the point where the present book leaves off. For this is only a beginning in a language which is as fascinating as it is important.

John De Francis

Washington, D. C.
January, 1946

BEGINNING CHINESE

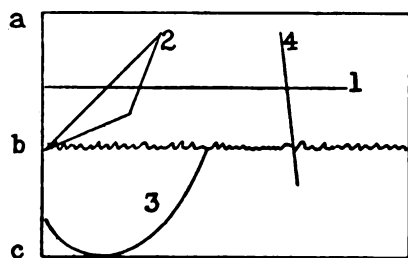
LESSON 1

SIMPLE INITIALS, FINALS, AND TONES

1. The Peking dialect of Chinese has some 400 basic syllables plus 4 full tones and a neutral tone.
2. The basic syllables contain one, two, or all three of the following elements: *initial*, *medial*, and *final*. Thus the syllable *hwa* is made up of the initial *h*, the medial *w*, and the final *a*.
3. The following are the simple initials:
 - b: like the *p* in *spy* (not like the *b* in *by*).
 - p: as in *pie*, but with much more breath.
 - m: as in *might*.
 - f: as in *fight*.
 - d: like the *t* in *sty* (not like the *d* in *die*).
 - t: as in *tie*, but with much more breath.
 - n: as in *night*.
 - l: as in *light*.
 - g: like the *k* in *sky* (not like the *g* in *guy*).
 - k: as in *kite*, but with much more breath.
 - h: like the *ch* in German *nach*, that is much rougher than the English *h*.
4. The letters *b p, d t, and g k* in our transcription represent voiceless sounds. The sounds which we write as *b, d, g* are unaspirated (without a following puff of breath) and the sounds which we write as *p, t, k* are aspirated (followed by a puff of breath). In English, the letters *b, d, g* represent voiced sounds (as in *be, do, go*) and the letters *p, t, k* represent unvoiced sounds, either unaspirated (as in *spy, sty, sky*) or aspirated (as in *pie, tie, kite*). The letters by which we indicate Chinese sounds cannot have the same values as in English writing, since the two languages do not use the same sounds.
5. The following are the simple finals:
 - a: as in *father*.
 - an: the *a* lies between the above *a* and the one in *man*. The vowel is followed by a slight nasalization rather than by a strongly pronounced *n*.
 - ang: *a* as in *father* and *ng* as in *sing*.
 - ai: as in *aisle*.
 - au: like the *au* in *sauerkraut*.
 - e: begins as the *e* of *error* and passes quickly into the *o* of *love*.
 - en: between the *en* in *men* and the *un* in *sun*. Approximately like the *en* in *chicken*.
 - eng: like the *ung* of *lung*.
 - ei: as in *eight*.
 - ou: as in *soul*.

- i: as in *machine*.
 u: as in *rule*.
 in: between the *ee* of *seen* and the *in* of *sin*, but closer to the latter.
 ing: as in *sing*.
 ung: as in German *jung* or, roughly, *u* as in *put* and *ng* as in *sing*.

6. The initials in Note 3 combine with the finals in Note 5, but some of the possible combinations do not actually occur. Drill II, below, shows which ones occur. The first twelve finals (*a* through *u*) occur also as full syllables without any initial; thus there are words like *ai* and *au*. The finals *in*, *ing*, and *ung* are not used as full syllables; they are always preceded by an initial. When *i* and *u* occur as full syllables we write *yi* and *wu* so that there will be no confusion with their use in the diphthongs *ai*, *ei*, *au*, *ou*. Thus, *dai* is one syllable but *dayi* is two, *da* plus *yi*.
7. The tones of Chinese form an integral part of a word or syllable. A word or syllable spoken with the wrong tone will either mean something different or make no sense at all. For instance, *má* means 'hemp,' but *mǎ* means 'horse,' and *mà* means 'to curse.'



Tone Chart

The type of Chinese we are studying has four tones. In our tone chart these four tones are related to the range of a speaker's voice. In this chart the top line *a* represents the highest pitch in a person's normal speech, the bottom line *c* represents the lowest pitch, and the wavy line *b* represents the average level. The first tone starts midway between lines *a* and *b* and continues on that level until the

end. The second tone starts at the line *b* but rises rapidly, either in a straight line or with a sharp kick, to a point somewhat higher than that of the first tone. The third tone starts a little above line *c*, drops to this point, and then rises to about the average level. The fourth tone starts at the point where the second tone ends and drops quickly below the average level. Drill I, below, illustrates these tones.

8. We shall represent the four tones by marks over the vowel letters, as follows:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------|
| 1. first tone, high level: | gāu |
| 2. second tone, high rising: | máng |
| 3. third tone, low dipping: | hǎu |
| 4. fourth tone, high falling: | dà |

Drill I. The Four Tones

- | | | | | | | | |
|--------|------|-----|----|---------|------|------|------|
| 1. gāu | máng | hǎu | dà | 5. gāu | gāu | gāu | gāu |
| 2. gāu | máng | hǎu | dà | 6. máng | máng | máng | máng |
| 3. gāu | máng | hǎu | dà | 7. hǎu | hǎu | hǎu | hǎu |
| 4. gāu | máng | hǎu | dà | 8. dà | dà | dà | dà |

Drill II. Simple Sounds

ā	ān	āng	ǎi	àu	é	ēn	ēng	ēi	ōu	(y)ī	(w)ū	(in)	(ing)	(ung)
bā	bǎn	bǎng	bài	bāu		bèn	bēng	běi	bōu	bǐ	bù	bīn	bīng	
pà	pàn	páng	pái	páu		pén	péng	péi	pōu	pí	pù	pīn	píng	
mǎ	mǎn	máng	mǎi	máu		mèn	mèng	měi	móu	mǐ	mǔ	mín	míng	
fá	fàn	fāng				fěn	fèng	féi	fǒu		fú			
dǎ	dān	dǎng	dài	dàu	dé		dēng	děi	dōu	dì	dù		dìng	dūng
tà	tán	tǎng	tái	tàu	té		téng		tóu	tī	tù		tíng	tūng
ná	nàn	náng	nài	nǎu		nèn	néng	nèi	nòu	nǐ	nù	nín	níng	núng
lā	lán	láng	lái	láu	lè		lěng	lèi	lóu	lì	lú	lín	líng	lúng
gǎ	gān	gǎng	gǎi	gàu	gě	gēn	gēng	gěi	gǒu		gǔ		gūng	
kǎ	kàn	kàng	kǎi	kàu	kè	kěn	kēng		kòu		kū		kūng	
hā	hàn	háng	hài	hàu	hé	hèn	héng	hēi	hòu		hú		húng	

LESSON 2

RETROFLEXES, FRICATIVES, AND U-SOUNDS

- Retroflexes* are initial sounds in which the tip of the tongue is curled back, as in the English *r*, but much farther back. They are never followed by *i* or *y*. The medials and finals with which they combine are shown in Drill I of this lesson. There are four retroflex initials:
 - j*: like the *j* in *jute*, but not voiced and with the tongue tip curled far back.
 - ch*: like the *ch* in *chew*, but with the tongue curled far back and with much more breath.
 - sh*: like the *sh* in *shoe*, but with the tongue tip curled far back.
 - r*: like the *r* in *rude*, but with the tongue tip curled far back.
- The difference between *j* and *ch* is like that between *b*, *d*, *g*, and *p*, *t*, *k*, (Lesson I, Note 4). Thus, the *j* in *já* is unaspirated and the *ch* in *chá* is aspirated. Both are unvoiced.
- These retroflex initials are made with the tongue curled so far back that they seem to contain a short *r* sound: *j*, *ch*, *sh*, and *r* approach English *dr*, *tr*, *shr*, and *r* respectively. Chinese *ju*, *chu*, *shu*, and *ru* recall English *drew*, *true*, *shrew*, and *rue*. When the retroflex initials are followed by the sound *u*, one rounds the lips. Thus in a word like *shū*, the lips are thrust out and rounded while one is forming the sound *u*. When the retroflex initials are followed by sounds other than *u*, the lips are not rounded but spread out; thus in speaking a word like *shā*, the lips are drawn back and spread out while one is forming the sound *a*.
- Fricatives* are initial sounds in which the air passage is so constricted as to cause a hissing or buzzing sound as the breath comes out. They are never followed by *i*

or *y*. The medials and finals with which they combine are shown in Drill II of this lesson. There are three fricative initials:

dz: like the *tz* in *at zero* (not the *dds* of *adds*).

ts: like the *ts* in *hats*, but with much more breath.

s: as in *soon*, but more intense.

5. The initial *dz* differs from *ts* just as *b, d, g, j* differ from *p, t, k, ch* (Note 2, above). Thus the *dz* in *dzài* is unaspirated and the *ts* in *tsài* is aspirated. Both are unvoiced.
6. The sound *u* which appeared as a final in Lesson 1 serves also as an initial and as a medial. When *u* serves as an initial or as a medial, we write it with the letter *w*. The finals with which this initial or medial *w* combines are shown in Drill III of this lesson.

When this *w* is combined with the *e* final, the latter is so modified that we write the whole syllable as *wo* rather than *we*. The pronunciation of *wo* begins with the *oo* of *ooze* and passes into a sound between the *aw* of *law* and the *u* of *up*.

Drill I. Retroflex Initials

já	jàn	jāng	jài	jáu	jě	jén	jēng	jèi	jōu	jū	jūng
chá	chǎn	cháng	chái	chǎu	chē	chén	chéng		chōu	chū	chūng
shā	shān	shǎng	shài	shǎu	shé	shěn	shěng	shéi	shōu	shū	
	rǎn	ràng		ráu	rè	rèn	rēng		ròu	rù	rúng

Drill II. Fricative Initials

dzā	dzàn	dzāng	dzài	dzǎu	dzé	dzěn	dzēng	dzéi	dzōu	dzū	dzūng
tsā	tsān	tsāng	tsài	tsǎu	tsè	tsén	tséng		tsòu	tsū	tsúng
sā	sǎn	sāng	sāi	sǎu	sè	sén	séng		sōu	sū	súng

Drill III. Initial and Medial W

wā	wǎn	wāng	wài	wǒ	wēn	wēng	wèi
				bwō			
				pwō			
				mwò			
				fwó			
	dwǎn			dwō	dwèn		dwèi
	twán			twō	twēn		twèi
	nwǎn			nwò			
	lwàn			lwó	lwén		
gwā	gwǎn	gwāng	gwài	gwō	gwén		gwèi
kwā	kwǎn	kwāng	kwài	kwò	kwèn		kwèi
hwā	hwǎn	hwāng	hwài	hwó	hwén		hwèi

Drill III (cont.)

jwǎ	jwǎn	jwǎng	jwài	jwō	jwěn	jwēi
chwā	chwǎn	chwǎng	chwài	chwō	chwěn	chwēi
shwā	shwǎn	shwǎng	shwài	shwō	shwěn	shwēi
	rwǎn			rwō	rwěn	rwēi
	dzwǎn			dzwō	dzwěn	dzwēi
	tswǎn			tswō	tswěn	tswēi
	swǎn			swō	swěn	swēi

LESSON 3

PAUSE, STRESS, AND MODIFIED TONES

1. a. We write together two or more syllables which combine to form a word: *tàitai*, *Dūngsānshěng*.
 b. We use hyphens to join together two or more words which are spoken together without a pause: *mǎi-shū*.
 c. We use space between words or hyphenated phrases to mark points where in slow speech, but not in ordinary rapid conversation, it is possible to hesitate briefly or stop to catch one's breath: *Nèige-tàitai mǎi-shū*.
 d. We use punctuation marks such as commas, colons, periods, and question marks to mark points where longer pauses are made between phrases or sentences: *Nèige-tàitai mǎi-shū, mǎi-bàu*.
2. a. Within a word the last syllable with a tone receives the chief stress. Thus *tài* (note the tone) is stressed in *tàitai* and *shěng* in *Dūngsānshěng*.
 b. Within a hyphenated phrase the last syllable with a tone receives the chief stress. Thus *tài* is stressed in *nèige-tàitai* and *shū* is stressed in *mǎi-shū*. Within a hyphenated phrase it is sometimes possible to distinguish not only the chief stress but also secondary, tertiary, and further degrees of stress. Thus the phrase *mǎi-bumǎi-bàu* will be heard with the loudest stress on *bàu*, the next loudest on the first *mǎi*, and the third loudest on the second *mǎi*. However, phrases of this sort can also be spoken with equal stress on all the tonal syllables other than the one with the chief stress. We therefore indicate only the chief stress in a hyphenated phrase.
 c. In a sentence the last tonal syllable receives more stress than the last tonal syllable of the preceding words or phrases. Thus *shū* receives more stress than *tài* in the sentence *nèige-tàitai mǎi-shū*.
 d. There are some exceptions to the general statements made above. These will be given special treatment:
 - (1) If a word has the chief stress elsewhere than on the last syllable with a tone, the stress will be marked by the sign ' placed before the stressed syllable: '*jèiběn*.
 - (2) If a hyphenated phrase has the chief stress elsewhere than on the last syllable with a tone, the stress will be marked by the sign ' placed before the stressed syllable: '*Wáng-Tàitai*.
 - (3) If a sentence containing a series of hyphenated phrases has the chief stress elsewhere than on the last syllable with a tone, the stress will be marked by

special type. If the sentence as a whole is in roman type, we shall use italics for the stressed syllable: *Nèige-tàitai mǎi-shū*. If the sentence as a whole is in italics we shall use roman type for the stressed syllable: *Nèige-tàitai mǎi-shū*.

- e. In Chinese, as in English, a word which is strongly emphasized or strongly contrasted with something is spoken louder than the rest of its sentence. Thus the English sentence 'He is leaving tomorrow,' can, according to the meaning, be spoken as '*He* is leaving tomorrow,' 'He *is* leaving tomorrow,' 'He is *leaving* tomorrow,' or 'He is leaving *tomorrow*.' When it is necessary to bring out the meaning of a sentence we indicate this kind of emphatic stress in one of the ways mentioned in Note 2d. However, we indicate only one way in which a sentence can be spoken. Our version does not exclude the possibility of stressing or phrasing a sentence in other ways.
3. a. Stressed syllables always have one of the four tones described in Lesson 1. The same syllables sometimes occur unstressed. In that case, the loss of emphasis in the syllable is accompanied by a loss of strength in the tone; if the syllable becomes completely unstressed the tone disappears to the point where it is no longer distinguishable. Such unstressed syllables are said to have *neutral tone* or to be *neutral syllables*; they are written without a tone mark. Thus *bùgāu* will often occur as *bugāu*, that is, the stressed tonal syllable *bù* will occur unstressed as the neutral syllable *bu*. The pronunciation which we indicate does not exclude the possibility of another pronunciation. In some cases our tonal syllables can be spoken as neutral ones, and vice versa.
 - b. Some unstressed syllables never occur as stressed syllables and therefore never have a tone. Such is the case with *de* in *gāude* and *le* in *hǎule*.
 - c. If a neutral tone begins a word, as in *bugāu*, it is pronounced with the voice at the level of line *b* in the chart presented in Lesson 1, Note 7. If a neutral tone ends a word its pronunciation is influenced by the tone of the preceding syllable. After the first and second tones the voice drops slightly to the level of line *b* in the chart. After the third tone the voice continues upward to line *b* and a little beyond it. After the fourth tone the voice continues downward.
 - d. We attach neutral syllables directly to the preceding or following syllable, as in *bugāu*, *wǒde*. The few exceptions to this rule will be noted separately.
4. Unstressed *e*, as in *wǒde*, is pronounced like unstressed *a*, namely as the *a* in *America*.
5. a. A third-tone syllable has its full contour, as described in Lesson 1, Note 7, only when followed by a pause. Thus *hǎu* in the phrase *tài-hǎu* has its full contour.
 - b. When a third-tone syllable is followed by a syllable in the first, second, or fourth tones the upswing shown in Lesson 1, Note 7, is cut off, leaving only a low tone with a very slight dip. This feature is illustrated in Drills I and II of this lesson by the combinations *hěn-gāu*, *hěn-máng*, and *hěn-dà*.
 - c. When a third-tone syllable is followed without pause by another third-tone syllable, the former is pronounced in the second tone. This feature is illustrated by the combination of *hěn* plus *hǎu*, which is pronounced *hén-hǎu*. This combination will, however, be written *hěn-hǎu*, the hyphen being sufficient indication that the first syllable is followed without pause by the second and therefore is to be pronounced in the second tone.

Note: Native speakers make this change unconsciously, and thus retain a

sense of the identity of third-tone syllables in all positions. Subjectively, the syllable *hěn* in the example above is in a "raised third tone," even though to the objective ear it sounds as if it were in the second tone.

Drill I. Combinations of Tones

1. jēn-gāu	5. rén-gāu	9. hěn-gāu	13. tài-gāu
2. jēn-máng	6. rén-máng	10. hěn-máng	14. tài-máng
3. jēn-hǎu	7. rén-hǎu	11. hěn-hǎu	15. tài-hǎu
4. jēn-dà	8. rén-dà	12. hěn-dà	16. tài-dà
	17. bugāu	21. gāude	
	18. bumáng	22. mángde	
	19. buhǎu	23. hǎude	
	20. budà	24. dàde	

Drill II. Combinations of Tones

1. jēn-gāu	6. jēn-máng	11. jēn-hǎu	16. jēn-dà
2. rén-gāu	7. rén-máng	12. rén-hǎu	17. rén-dà
3. hěn-gāu	8. hěn-máng	13. hěn-hǎu	18. hěn-dà
4. tài-gāu	9. tài-máng	14. tài-hǎu	19. tài-dà
5. bugāu	10. bumáng	15. buhǎu	20. budà

LESSON 4

PARTS OF SPEECH

Conversation: Mr. Martin greets his friend and teacher, Mr. Wáng

M: Nǐ-hǎu-a?	How are you?
W: Hǎu. Nǐ-hǎu?	Well. How are you?
M: Wǒ-hěn-hǎu.	I'm fine.
W: 'Máng-bumáng?	Are you busy?
M: Hěn-máng.	Very busy.
W: Bulèi-ma?	Aren't you tired?
M: Butài-lèi. Nǐ-'lèi-bulèi?	Not too tired. Are you tired?
W: Buhěn-lèi.	Not very tired.

Vocabulary¹

1. gāu	SV: be tall, high	5. lèi	SV: be tired
2. máng	SV: be busy	6. ma	GP: <i>interrogative suffix</i> (Note 6b)
3. hǎu	SV: be good, well	7. a	GP: <i>final particle</i> (Note 6c)
4. dà	SV: be big, great	8. men	GP: <i>pluralizing suffix</i> (note 3b)

1. The letters following the Chinese words are abbreviations for the names of parts of speech or other classes of words defined in the notes.

Vocabulary (*cont.*)

9. wǒ	PR: I, me	13. hěn	AD: very, quite
10. nǐ	PR: you	14. tài	AD: excessively, too
11. tā	PR: he, she	15. dōu	AD: all, both, entirely
12. bù	AD: not		

Substitution Tables

nǐ	gāu	ma?	wǒ	bu-	gāu
tā	hǎu		nǐ	hěn	máng
nǐmen	máng		tā	tài	hǎu
tāmen	dà		wǒmen		dà
			tāmen		lèi

HOW TO USE THE SUBSTITUTION TABLES

Taking the second table above as an example, start by reading across the top of the substitution table: *wǒ bugāu*. Continue by replacing the first word in the first column by those given below it: *nǐ bugāu*, *tā bugāu*, *wǒmen bugāu*, *tāmen bugāu*. Second, repeat the process while replacing the first word in the second column by those given below it: *wǒ hěn gāu*, *nǐ hěn gāu*, *tā hěn gāu*, *wǒmen hěn gāu*, *tāmen hěn gāu*; *wǒ tài gāu*, *nǐ tài gāu*, *tā tài gāu*, *wǒmen tài gāu*, *tāmen tài gāu*. Repeat the first and second steps while replacing the first word in the third column by those given below it: *wǒ bumáng*, *nǐ bumáng*, *tā bumáng*, *wǒmen bumáng*, *tāmen bumáng*; *wǒ hěn máng*, *nǐ hěn máng*, *tā hěn máng*, *wǒmen hěn máng*, *tāmen hěn máng*; *wǒ tài máng*, *nǐ tài máng*, *tā tài máng*, *wǒmen tài máng*, *tāmen tài máng*; *wǒ buhǎu*, *nǐ buhǎu*, *tā buhǎu*, *wǒmen buhǎu*, *tāmen buhǎu*; *wǒ hěn hǎu*, *nǐ hěn hǎu*, and so on through the 75 possible sentences which can be made from this table. Be sure that no column is skipped. So long as one word is taken from each column a correct Chinese phrase or sentence is sure to result automatically. Since you do not have to worry about making a mistake in grammar, go through the tables as rapidly as possible. Say the sentences aloud until you become thoroughly familiar with the words and the order in which they appear.

In the first (left-hand) substitution table above, no substitution is to be made for the syllable *ma* in the third (last) column. That is, the table will yield 16 sentences, of three syllables, all 16 containing the syllable *ma*.

Drill I. Questions and Answers

1. Tā-gāu-ma?	Is he tall?	5. Tā-bugāu.	He isn't tall.
2. Tā-máng-ma?	Is he busy?	6. Tā-bumáng.	He isn't busy.
3. Tā-hǎu-ma?	Is he good?	7. Tā-buhǎu.	He isn't good.
4. Tā-dà-ma?	Is he big?	8. Tā-budà.	He isn't big.
9. Tā-'gāu-bugāu?	Is he tall?	13. Tā-hěn-gāu.	He's very tall.
10. Tā-'máng-bumáng?	Is he busy?	14. Tā-hěn-máng.	He's very busy.
11. Tā-'hǎu-buhǎu?	Is he good?	15. Tā-hěn-hǎu.	He's very good.
12. Tā-'dà-budà?	Is he big?	16. Tā-hěn-dà.	He's very big.

Drill II. Model Sentences²

*1. Nĭ-máng-ma?	Are you busy?	9. Tā-buhěn-dà.	He isn't very big.
*2. Nĭ-bumáng-ma?	Aren't you busy?	10. Wōmen-dōu-hěn-lèi.	We are all very tired.
*3. Wǒ-hěn-máng	I'm very busy.	11. Tā-buhǎu.	He is bad.
*4. Wǒ-bumáng.	I'm not busy.	12. Tāmen-buhěn-hǎu.	They are not very good.
*5. Wǒ-'hěn-máng.	I'm <i>very</i> busy.	13. Tāmen-dōu-buhǎu.	They are all bad.
*6. Nĭ-'máng-bu-máng?	Are you busy?	14. Tāmen-hěn-buhǎu.	They are very bad.
*7. Nĭ-hǎu-a?	How are you?	15. Nĭmen-buhěn-máng-ma?	Aren't you very busy?
8. Tā-tài-gāu.	He is too tall.		

Drill III. Translation Exercise³

1. Tāmen-dōu-hěn-lèi.	11. Tā-buhěn-hǎu.
2. Nĭ-'lèi-bulèi?	12. Tāmen-dōu-lèi-ma?
3. Nĭmen-dōu-máng-ma?	13. Wōmen-dōu-hǎu.
4. Tā-bumáng-ma?	14. Tāmen-bulèi-ma?
5. Tā-buhěn-gāu.	15. Tāmen-dōu-hěn-gāu.
6. Tāmen-dōu-máng-ma?	16. Nĭmen-'lèi-bulèi?
7. Hěn-hǎu.	17. Tāmen-butài-hǎu.
8. Tāmen-'gāu-bugāu?	18. Tā-bumáng-ma?
9. Nĭmen-dōu-lèi-ma?	19. Tā-buhěn-gāu.
10. Tāmen-dōu-hěn-gāu.	20. Tāmen-dōu-hǎu-ma?

NOTES

- Chinese has parts of speech somewhat like those of English. Thus we shall speak of *nouns*, *pronouns*, *verbs*, *adverbs*, etc. However, those names must not mislead us into thinking that they represent the same things in Chinese as in English, for very often they do not. In the English sentence 'All are well,' for example, 'all' is a noun or perhaps an adjective, but in the Chinese translation of this sentence the word meaning 'all' is an adverb.
- Pronouns* (PR) are words which can be replaced in all uses by nouns. (For the definition of nouns [N] see Lesson 10, Note 2.) Example: *wǒ* 'I,' *nǐ* 'you,' *tā* 'he, she.'
- Grammatical particles* (GP) are particles which are placed before or after words or phrases to show their function or otherwise modify their meaning. They resemble English endings like *s* in 'hats' and *ing* in 'drinking.'
 - The grammatical particle *men* is attached to personal pronouns and to a few nouns to show a plural number: *wǒ* 'I,' *wōmen* 'we'; *nǐ* 'you,' *nĭmen* 'you' (plural); *tā* 'he, she,' *tāmen* 'they.'
- Starred sentences are to be memorized.
- The English translation of the Chinese sentences is given in the Appendix.

4. a. *Verbs (V)* are words which can be followed by a full pause and can be preceded by a prefix meaning 'not' (Note 5b). Chinese verbs resemble English words like *eat, come, are*. However, Chinese verbs are not inflected for person, number, tense, or mood.
- b. Chinese verbs have several uses, such as *transitive, intransitive, auxiliary*. It often happens that one and the same verb has sometimes one of these uses, sometimes another. For instance, a Chinese verb may sometimes be transitive and sometimes intransitive, just as the English verb 'sit' is intransitive in 'Where shall I sit?' but transitive in 'He sits a horse well.'
- c. *Stative verbs (SV)* are verbs which can be preceded by a word meaning 'very' but are never followed by an object. They describe a state of being and hence resemble adjectives in English: *hǎu* 'to be good, to be well'; *máng* 'to be busy.'
- d. Verbs often serve as sentences in Chinese. In other words, the subjects and objects of verbs are frequently omitted if they can be inferred from the context. Thus, when greeted with the Chinese equivalent of 'How are you?' one may answer simply *Hǎu* '(I) am well, Fine.'
5. a. *Adverbs (AD)* are words which can only stand before a verb or another adverb. They resemble words like 'only,' 'still,' in English. Examples: *hěn* 'very' in *Hěn-hǎu* '(I) am very well,' and *dōu* in *Dōu-hǎu* '(We) are all well.'
- b. The adverb *bu* is a negative prefix meaning 'not.' It is joined directly to the following word: *buhǎu* 'not good, bad,' *Tāmen-buhǎu* 'They are bad.' This negative prefix is generally neutral in tone. When it is specially emphasized it has the second tone before a fourth-tone syllable and has the fourth tone in all other cases: *Tā-'búdà* 'He isn't big,' *Tā-'bùmáng* 'He isn't busy.'
- c. When several adverbs are used together before a verb, the order of their occurrence varies according to the meaning: *Tāmen-hěn-hǎu* 'They are very good,' *Tāmen-buhǎu* 'They are not good, They are bad,' *Tāmen-hěn-buhǎu* 'They are very bad,' *Tāmen-buhěn-hǎu* 'They are not very good.'
- d. Chinese adverbs differ very much from English adverbs. An English adverb can shift its position in a sentence according to what it modifies, but a Chinese adverb always comes before a verb and never after a verb. Furthermore, Chinese often uses adverbs where English uses other parts of speech. Thus 'all' in an English sentence like 'All of them are very tired' is expressed in Chinese by the adverb *dōu*, so that the equivalent for this sentence is *Tāmen-dōu-hěn-lèi*. It is impossible to translate 'all of them' as *dōu-tāmen*, since Chinese adverbs occur only before verbs.
6. a. A question which can be answered by 'yes' or 'no' is often formed by offering a choice of the positive and negative forms of the verb: *Tā-'máng-bumáng?* This construction is generally used with an unmodified verb, but seldom with a verb preceded by an adverb.
- b. A statement is often turned into a yes or no question without any change in word-order by the addition of a question particle, the most common being *ma*. This form of question is nearly always used when the verb of the sentence is preceded by an adverb: *Nǐ-máng-ma?* 'Are you busy?' *Nǐ-hěn-máng-ma?* 'Are you very busy?' The only way to ask a question when the verb is negative is to use *ma* at the end of the sentence: *Nǐ-bumáng-ma?* 'Aren't you busy?'

- c. The particle *a* added to a sentence has the meaning of a mild command, suggestion, or presumption. It often suggests that the speaker presumes the person to whom he is speaking agrees with what he has just said. Thus the Chinese sentence *Ni-hǎu-a?* is like the English 'You are well, I suppose?' or 'How are you?' spoken as a greeting rather than as a real question. (Hence this greeting often appears in the simple form *Ni-hǎu?*)
- d. Chinese has no precise equivalent for English 'yes' or 'no.' Hence the answer to the type of questions described in the preceding paragraphs is always made with the positive or negative form of the verb: *Ni-máng-ma?* *Ni-'máng-bumáng?* 'Are you busy?' can be answered by *Wǒ-hěn-máng* 'I'm very busy,' *Bumáng* 'I'm not busy, No.'
7. a. When a sentence ends in a question particle, such as *ma*, the final syllable is spoken with a question intonation. This question intonation is a high tone which is slightly lower than the first of the four tones of Pekingese. In making the question intonation the voice drops slightly after a first or second tone, as in *gāu-ma?* and *máng-ma?* and rises after a third or fourth tone, as in *hǎu-ma?* and *dà-ma?*
- b. Questions formed by offering a choice of the positive and negative forms of the verb, as in *Tā-'dà-budà?* 'Is he big?' do not have the question intonation described above. In this sentence the voice drops at the end because the last syllable is a falling tone. The tone of the last syllable is preserved even though the sentence is a question.
8. The pluralizing suffix *men* affects only the preceding syllable; we therefore attach it directly to the syllable before it, as in *wǒmen* 'we.' The final particles *a* and *ma* affect the whole sentence; we therefore place a hyphen between *a* or *ma* and the preceding syllable, as in *Ni-máng-ma?* 'Are you busy?' In all cases the endings *a*, *ma*, *men* are pronounced after the preceding syllable without a pause or hesitation (Lesson 3, Notes 1a and 1b).
9. A word or phrase which consists of the same syllable repeated, such as '*rénrén*', is generally stressed on the first syllable. This also applies to verbs reduplicated with an intervening *bu* to form a question. Thus, *Ni-'máng-bumáng?* 'Are you busy?' is stressed on the first *máng*. In phrases of this type the negative form of the verb often becomes unstressed in rapid speech: *Ni-máng-bumang?*

LESSON 5

PALATALS AND OTHER SOUNDS

1. a. *Palatals* are initial sounds which are made with the broad part of the tongue pressing against the upper gums and the tip resting against the edges of the lower teeth. They resemble English *j*, *ch*, and *s*, with the important difference that the English sounds are made with the tip of the tongue, but the Chinese with the flat part back of the tip. The palatal initials occur only before *i* or *y*. The medials or finals with which they combine are shown in the following Drill I, in lines 2-4 of Drill II, and in lines 2-4 of Drill III. There are three palatal initials:

- j*: like the *tch* in *itching* (not like the *j* in *jeep*).
ch: like the *ch* in *cheap*, but with much more breath.
s: between the *s* in *see* and the *sh* in *she*.

- b. The difference between *j* and *ch* is like that between *b, d, g* and *p, t, k* (Lesson 1, Note 4). Thus, the *j* in *jī* is unaspirated and the *ch* in *chī* is aspirated. Both are unvoiced.
- c. The letters *j, ch,* and *s* which we use to represent the palatal initials are the same as those which we used for the retroflexes *j, ch* and the fricative *s* in Lesson 3. No confusion is possible since the retroflexes *j, ch* and the fricative *s* never come before *i* or *y* and the palatals *j, ch,* and *s* occur only before these letters. However, there is a great difference in sound between the retroflex *j, ch* and the fricative *s* on the one hand, and the palatal *j, ch, s* on the other. This difference is brought out in items 1-7 in Drill VI of this lesson.
2. The sound *i* which was given as a final in Lesson 1 appears also as an initial and as a medial. When *i* occurs as an initial or as a medial we write *y,* as in *yǎng, jyǎng.* The syllables in which this initial and medial *y* occur are shown in Drill II of this lesson. Three finals are somewhat modified when they come after *y*:
- an* after *y* is modified so that *yan* approaches the English slang word 'yen' in 'I have a yen for some candy.'
- e* after *y* is modified so that *ye* resembles the *ye* in English 'yet' or 'yen' or the syllable 'yeah' in 'oh yeah.'
- ou* after *y* is modified when the syllable is in the first and second tones so that *you* approaches the sound of the English word 'you.' When the syllable is in the third and fourth tones *you* is pronounced like 'yo' in English 'yo ho.'
 See items 25-28 in Drill VI of this lesson.
3. The sound *yu* occurs as an independent syllable and also as an initial, medial, and final. It is made by pronouncing *i* with the lips pursed as if to say *u.* Chinese *yu* resembles French *u* or German *ü.* We write *yu* for the independent syllable and the final and *yw* for the initial and medial. The syllables in which this sound occurs are shown in Drill III of this lesson. Two finals are somewhat modified when they come after *yw*:
- an* after *yw* is modified in the same way as *an* after *y.* See Note 2.
- e* after *yw* is modified in the same way as *e* after *y.* See Note 2.
4. a. The retroflex initials described in Lesson 2, Note 1, occur as full syllables. As full syllables they are followed by a long drawn out *r.* To remind the reader of this, we add the letter *r* to all these syllables, except to the initial *r*: *jr, chr, shr, r.* See Drill IV of this lesson.
- b. The fricative initials described in Lesson 2, Note 2, occur as full syllables. As full syllables they are followed by a long drawn out *z.* To remind the reader of this, we add the letter *z* to all these syllables, except to the initial *dz*: *dz, tsz, sz.* See Drill IV of this lesson.
5. The sound *r* appeared as a retroflex initial in Lesson 2, as in *rén.* It also appeared as part of the full retroflex syllables in the preceding note, as in *shṛ.* In addition it occurs as an added sound after the finals listed in Lesson 1, Note 5, and after a few other finals. In this position it resembles the general American English *r* sound in *sir, fur.* This sound occurs at the end of many words in the Peking

dialect, especially at the end of nouns. A very few words, such as *èr*, occur only in the form with this final *r*. When a word occurs both with and without the final *r*, the *r* is sometimes merely added to the syllable, as in *gē*, *gēr*. At other times the *r* replaces or modifies the final part of the syllable, as in *yidyǎr*, which is the word *yidyǎn* with *r* in place of *n*. When there are two alternative forms for words of this sort we shall present both forms. Thus we list one vocabulary item as *gē*, *gēr* to show that either form is possible. Other examples appear in Drill V of this lesson.

Drill I. Palatal Initials

jī	jìn	jǐng
chī	chín	chǐng
sī	sìn	sǐng

Drill II. Initial and Medial Y

yá	yǎn	yáng	yào	yě	yǒu	yīn	yīng	yòng
jyā	jyàn	jyāng	jyào	jyě	jyòu			jyǒng
chyā	chyán	chyáng	chyào	chyě	chyóu			chyǒng
syā	syān	syāng	syào	syě	syóu			syǒng
	byàn		byǎu	byě				
	pyàn		pyǎu	pyě				
	myàn		myǎu	myě				
	dyàn		dyào	dyě	dyóu			
	tyán		tyào	tyě				
	nyán	nyáng	nyǎu	nyě	nyóu			
lyǎ	lyǎn	lyǎng	lyáu	lyě	lyòu			

Drill III. The Sound Yu

yú	yún	ywán	ywè
jyù	jyūn	jywán	jywè
chyù	chyún	chywán	chywè
syū	syùn	sywán	sywè
nyǔ			nywè
lyù			lywè

Drill IV. Retroflexes and Fricatives as Full Syllables

jʃ	jʃdau	bujʃ	dʒ	dʒmǔ	háidz
chʃ	chʃdau	hǎuchʃ	tsʒ	tsʒdyǎn	sǎntsʒ
shʃ	shʃtou	shʃshʃ	sʒ	sʒge	dǎsz
ʃ	ʃbǎn	ʃtou			

Drill V. Words with Final r

yidyär (yidyǎn)	jèr (jèli)	cháyèr (cháyè)
shòutàur (shòutàu)	túngdzěr (túngdž)	mífēngr (mífēng)
dyànyǐngr (dyànyǐng)	jìntóur (jìntóu)	wár (wán)

Drill VI. Sounds Difficult to Distinguish

1. chū	chyù	8. tán	táng	15. dōu	dwō	22. dè	dzé
2. shàng	syàng	9. mín	míng	16. shǒu	shwō	23. dzá	jā
3. shǎu	syǎu	10. rén	rēng	17. dzǒu	dzwò	24. dè	sè
4. shwěi	sywě	11. jě	jwō	18. yǒu	yàu	25. syōu	syòu
5. chwán	chywán	12. rè	ř	19. hwèi	wèi	26. yóu	yòu
6. jwēn	jyūn	13. jèr	jř	20. chyān	tyān	27. jyōu	jyòu
7. bàu	byǎu	14. èr	ř	21. lǐ	lyǐ	28. yōu	yòu

LESSON 6

TRANSITIVE AND AUXILIARY VERBS

Conversation: Wáng gives Martin a Chinese Lesson

W: Wōmen-tántán-hwà, 'hǎu-buhǎu?	Let's chat a while, shall we?
M: Hǎu.	Fine.
W: Wǒ-shwō: "Wǒ-yàu-ni mǎi-shū, mǎi-bàu." Nǐ-dǔng-ma?	(Supposing) I say: "Wǒ-yàu-ni mǎi-shū, mǎi-bàu." Do you understand?
M: Dǔng. "Wǒ-yàu mǎi-shū, mǎi-bàu." 'Dwèi-budwèi?	Yes. "I want to buy a book and a newspaper." Right?
W: Budwèi.	No.
M: Budwèi-ma?	No?
W: Bu'dōu-dwèi. "Wǒ-yàu-nǐ mǎi-shū, mǎi-bàu."	Not entirely correct. "Wǒ-yàu-nǐ mǎi-shū, mǎi-bàu."
M: Wǒ-dōu-dǔng. "Wǒ-yàu-nǐ mǎi-shū, mǎi-bàu." 'Dwèi-budwèi?	I understand it all. "I want you to buy a book and a newspaper." Is that right?
W: Dwèile! Nǐ-yě-yàu kàn-shū-ma?	Correct! Do you also want to read?
M: Buyàu-kàn-shū.	No.

Vocabulary

1. yàu TV: want	5. kàn TV: look at, read, visit	9. shū N: book
2. mǎi TV: buy		10. bàu N: newspaper
3. shwō TV: say, speak	6. dǔng TV: understand	11. yě AD: also, too
4. tán TV: converse, speak, talk	7. dwèi SV: be correct	12. dwèile PH: correct
	8. hwà N: words, speech	

Substitution Tables

wǒ	yào	bào	wǒ	yào	kàn	bào	wǒmen	yào	tā	kàn	bào
nǐ	kàn	shū	nǐ	mǎi	shū		nǐmen			mǎi	shū
tā	mǎi		tā				tāmen				

Drill I. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Nǐ-yào-buyào-shū? | Do you want a book? |
| 2. Wǒ-buyào-shū. | I don't want a book. |
| 3. Nǐmen-kàn-'shū-bukàn? | Do you read books? |
| 4. Wǒmen-bukàn-shū. | We don't read books. |
| 5. Tāmen-yào-shū-ma? | Do they want some books? |
| 6. Tāmen-buyào-shū. | They don't want any books. |
| 7. Nǐ-yào-kàn-'shū-buyào? | Do you want to read a book? |
| 8. Wǒ-yào-kàn-shū. | I want to read a book. |
| 9. Nǐ-yào-ta mǎi-bào-ma? | Do you want him to buy a newspaper? |
| 10. Wǒ-buyào-ta mǎi-bào. | I don't want him to buy a newspaper. |
| 11. Nǐ-yě-yào-bào-ma? | Do you want a newspaper too? |
| 12. Wǒ-yě-yào-bào. | I want a newspaper too. |
| 13. Nǐ-dǔng-ma? | Do you understand? |
| 14. Wǒ-budǔng. | I don't understand. |
| 15. Tā-budǔng-ma? | Doesn't he understand? |
| 16. Tā-shwō tā-budǔng. | He says he doesn't understand. |
| 17. Tā-kàn-bào-ma? | Is he reading the newspaper? |
| 18. Tā-yě-kàn-bào. | He's reading the newspaper too. |
| 19. Nǐ-yào-ta mǎi-shū-ma? | Do you want him to buy a book? |
| 20. Wǒ-buyào-ta mǎi-shū. | I don't want him to buy a book. |

Drill II. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| *1. Nǐ-yào-buyào-bào? | Do you want a newspaper? |
| *2. Nǐ-yào-'bào-buyào? | Do you want a newspaper? |
| *3. Nǐ-yào-bào-ma? | Do you want a newspaper? |
| *4. Wǒ-yào-bào. | I want a newspaper. |
| *5. Wǒ-yào-mǎi-bào. | I want to buy a newspaper. |
| *6. Wǒ-yào-ni mǎi-bào. | I want you to buy a newspaper. |
| *7. Wǒ-kàn-ta. | I'm looking at him. |
| *8. Wǒ-yào-shū, yào-bào. | I want some books and newspapers. |
| *9. Wǒ-yào mǎi-shū, mǎi-bào. | I want to buy some books and newspapers. |
| *10. Wǒmen-kàn-shū, 'hǎu-buhǎu? | Shall we read? |
| 11. Nǐ-'dǔng-budǔng? | Do you understand? |
| 12. Tā-'yào-buyào shwō-hwà? | Does he want to speak? |
| 13. Tāmen-yào-tán-hwà-ma? | Do they want to converse? |
| 14. Tā-shwō: "Dwèile!" | He said: "Correct!" |
| 15. Tā-yě-yào kàn-shū. | He also wants to read. |

Drill III. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Nĭ-'yàu-buyàu? | 11. Tā-kàn-ni. |
| 2. Nĭ-yàu-shū-ma? | 12. Tā-kàn-shū. |
| 3. Tā-yě-yàu-bàu-ma? | 13. Tā-' dǔng-budǔng? |
| 4. Tāmen-dōu-kàn-shū. | 14. Tā-yàu-wo shwō-hwà. |
| 5. Nĭmen-yě-yàu kàn-shū-ma? | 15. Tā-dōu-dǔng. |
| 6. Nĭ-'yàu-buyàu-wo mǎi-shū? | 16. Nĭ-buyàu-wo mǎi-bàu-ma? |
| 7. Tā-buyàu shwō-hwà-ma? | 17. Tāmen-yàu-tán-hwà. |
| 8. Tāmen-dōu-budǔng. | 18. Wōmen-kàn-bàu, 'hǎu-buhǎu? |
| 9. Hěn-dwèi. | 19. Tā-yàu kàn-shū, kàn-bàu. |
| 10. Wǒ-yě-yàu kàn-bàu. | 20. Wǒ-buyàu. |

NOTES

- Transitive verbs* (TV) are verbs which take nouns or pronouns as objects. They resemble *buy, have, want* in English. Subject, verb, and object appear in the same order as in English: *Wǒ-yàu-bàu* 'I want a newspaper,' *Wǒ-mǎi-bàu* 'I'm buying a newspaper.'
- Verbs and verb-phrases appear as the subjects and objects of other verbs: *Tā-yàu-wǒ-mǎi-bàu* 'He wants that I buy a newspaper, He wants me to buy a newspaper.'
- Auxiliary verbs* (AV) are verbs which take other verbs as objects. Some verbs serve only as auxiliary verbs, but others, such as *yàu* 'to want,' occur both as ordinary transitive verbs and as auxiliaries: *Tā-yàu-bàu* 'He wants a newspaper,' *Tā-yàu mǎi-bàu* 'He wants to buy a newspaper.'
- Chinese verbs are not inflected to show tense. Hence many expressions in which verbs occur can be translated in several different ways, according to the situation. Thus, *Wǒ-mǎi-bàu* will be translated as 'I'm buying a newspaper' and also as 'I'll buy a newspaper,' 'I'm going to buy a newspaper,' and in other ways, according to the situation.
- When there are several objects, the verb is repeated with each new object: *Tā-yàu-shū, yàu-bàu* 'He wants some books and newspapers,' *Tā-yàu mǎi-shū, mǎi-bàu* 'He wants to buy some books and newspapers.'
 - The object of a verb is often omitted in Chinese when it can be understood from the context: *Wǒ-kàn-bàu. Nĭ-'yàu-buyàu?* 'I'm reading the newspaper. Do you want it?' The sentence *Nĭ-'yàu-buyàu?* 'Do you want it?' also illustrates the point that Chinese has no precise equivalent for 'it.' Where English uses this pronoun, Chinese most often has nothing at all. Since the subject and the object are frequently omitted in Chinese, the question *Nĭ-'yàu-buyàu?* 'Do you want it?' can be answered simply with *Buyàu* 'I don't want it, No.'
 - Although the object is often omitted, yet some verbs are nearly always used with objects. Thus *tán* 'to converse' and *shwō* 'to speak' rarely occur without the object *hwà* 'speech.' *Tā-shwō-hwà* 'He is speaking,' *Tāmen-tán-hwà* 'They are conversing.' Similarly *kàn* when it means 'to read' is followed by some such word as *shū* 'book': *Wǒ-kàn-shū* 'I'm reading a book, I'm reading,' *Wǒ-kàn-bàu*

- 'I'm reading the newspaper.' With other objects *kàn* has other meanings, as for instance, *Wǒ-kàn-tā* 'I'm looking at him.'
6. a. Some combinations of two or more words (especially of a word followed by a particle) have a special meaning or special peculiarity of grammatical use. Combinations like these will be marked in the vocabularies as *phrases* (PH). Where necessary they will be explained in the notes.
 - b. The phrase *duèile* 'correct' is made up of the stative verb *duèi* 'correct' plus the particle *le*. This particle (which will be treated more fully in Lessons 18 and 24) means, among other things, the completion of an action or state. Hence *duèile!* means something like 'Now you've got it!'
 7. '*Hǎu-buhǎu?* 'Is it good or not? Is it all right or not?' added to a sentence suggests a polite request or very mild command: *Wǒmen-kàn-bào, 'hǎu-buhǎu?* 'Let's read the newspaper, Shall we read the newspaper?'
 8. The verb *tán* 'converse' appears doubled in the expression *tántán-hwà* 'to converse for a while': *Wǒmen-tántán-hwà, 'hǎu-buhǎu?* 'Shall we talk for a while?' This doubling of the verb will be dealt with further in Lesson 26, Note 12.
 9. As pointed out in Lesson 4, Note 5a, adverbs always precede verbs. Hence 'I want a book, too' is *Wǒ-yě-yào-shū*, with *yě* coming before the verb (and not at the end of the sentence, as in English).
 10. a. Where the object comes between the positive and negative forms of the verb in a question, as in *Tā-yào-'bào-buyào?* 'Does he want a newspaper?' the chief stress falls on *bào* and the next stress falls on the first *yào*, which as the first of a reduplicated syllable receives more stress than the *yào* in *buyào*. See also Lesson 4, Note 9.
 - b. The singular personal pronouns as objects of verbs are often unstressed and neutral in tone. We write such unstressed pronouns without tones: *Wǒ-kàn-tā* 'I'm looking at 'im.' These pronouns have tone only under special emphasis. In careful slow pronunciation, (as for the benefit of a foreign student) a teacher may give them tone, saying, for instance, *Wǒ-kàn-tā* 'I'm looking at *him*,' but this would scarcely occur in natural speech.

LESSON 7

INDIRECT OBJECTS, TITLES

Conversation: Martin and Wáng visit Chyán's bookstore

- C: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, 'Wáng-Syānsheng, Mr. Martin, Mr. Wáng, are you both
nǐmen-dōu-hǎu-a? well?
- M: Hǎu. Fine.
- W: Hǎu. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide, nǐ-yě- Fine. Manager Chyán, are you well too?
hǎu-ma?
- C: Hǎu. Nǐmen-yào mǎi-shū-ma? I'm fine. Do you want to buy some books?
- W: Buyào-mǎi-shū. 'Wáng-Tàitai yào- No. Mrs. Wáng wants me to buy a news-
wǒ-mǎi-bào. Nǐmen-'yǒu-méiyǒu? paper. Do you have any?

- C: Wǒ-kàn yǒu-'bào-méiyǒu. . . .Yǒu. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-yě-yào mǎi-bào-ma? I'll look and see if there are any newspapers or not. . . . There are. Mr. Martin, do you want to buy a paper too?
- M: Yě-yào-mǎi. Wǒ-kàn yǒu-méiyǒu-chyán. I want to buy one too. I'll see if I have any money.
- W: Nǐ-méiyǒu-chyán-ma? Wǒ-yǒu. Don't you have any money? I have. Do you want some?
- M: Syèsye, buyào. Wǒ-yǒu-chyán. Thanks, I don't want any. I have money.

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|-----------|---|----------------|---|
| 1. gěi | TV: give | 9. syānsheng | N: gentleman, teacher, Mr. (<i>syān</i> 'first' plus <i>shēng</i> 'born') (see Note 3) |
| 2. syèsye | TV: thank | 10. jǎnggwèide | N: manager (of a small business) (<i>jǎng</i> 'manage' plus <i>gwèi</i> 'till' plus <i>de</i> 'one who,' hence 'one who manages the till') |
| 3. yǒu | TV: have, there is | | |
| 4. méi | AD: not | | |
| 5. wáng | (N): king, <i>surname</i> (see Notes 3 and 4) | | |
| 6. mǎ | N: horse, <i>surname</i> | | |
| 7. chyán | N: money, <i>surname</i> | | |
| 8. tàitai | N: wife, Mrs., Madame | | |

Substitution Tables¹

Chyán	Jǎnggwèide	wǒmen	(bu-)	gěi	tā	chyán	(ma?)
Wáng	Syānsheng	nǐmen				shū	
Mǎ	Tàitai	tāmen				bào	

Drill I. Surnames and Titles

- | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------------|--------------|
| 1. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide | Manager Chyán | 4. 'Wáng-Tàitai | Mrs. Wáng |
| 2. 'Chyán-Syānsheng | Mr. Chyán | 5. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng | Mr. Mǎ |
| 3. 'Chyán-Tàitai | Mrs. Chyán | 6. 'Wáng-Jǎnggwèide | Manager Wáng |

Drill II. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Yǒu-méiyǒu-shū? | Are there any books? |
| 2. Méiyǒu-shū. | There aren't any books. |
| 3. Nǐ-yǒu-'shū-méiyǒu? | Do you have any books? |
| 4. Wǒ-yǒu-shū. | I have some books. |
| 5. Nǐ-gěi-tā-'chyán-bugěi? | Are you going to give him any money? |

1. Parentheses around words in this and later substitution tables indicate that it is possible to make up phrases or sentences either with these words or without them. Thus, in the second table above, we are to read the first line across as *wǒmen gěi tā chyán*, *wǒmen bugěi tā chyán*, *wǒmen gěi tā chyán ma?* or *wǒmen bugěi tā chyán ma?*

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 6. Wǒ-bugěi-tā-chyán. | I'm not going to give him any money. |
| 7. Tāmen-bugěi-nǐ-chyán-ma? | Don't they give you any money? |
| 8. Tāmen-gěi-wǒ-chyán. | They give me money. |
| 9. Tā-yǒu-'shū-méiyǒu? | Does he have any books? |
| 10. Tā-méiyǒu-shū. | He hasn't any books. |
| 11. Tāmen-yào-tán-'hwà-buyào? | Do they want to have a talk? |
| 12. Tāmen-hěn-máng. Buyào-tán-hwà. | They're very busy. They don't want to talk. |
| 13. 'Wáng-Syānsheng 'máng-bumáng? | Is Mr. Wáng busy? |
| 14. Wáng-Syānsheng-shwō tā-buhěn-máng. | Mr. Wáng says he isn't very busy. |
| 15. Yǒu-méiyǒu-bào? | Are there any newspapers? |
| 16. Méiyǒu-bào. | There aren't any newspapers. |
| 17. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng 'dǔng-budǔng? | Does Mr. Martin understand? |
| 18. Mǎ-Syānsheng-shwō tā-budōu-dǔng. | Mr. Martin says he doesn't understand everything. |
| 19. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide 'yào-buyào mǎi-mǎ? | Does Manager Chyán want to buy a horse? |
| 20. Chyán-Jǎnggwèide-shwō tā-buyào mǎi-mǎ. | Manager Chyán says he doesn't want to buy a horse. |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|---|
| *1. Yǒu-méiyǒu-bào? | Are there any newspapers? |
| *2. Yǒu-bào-ma? | Are there any newspapers? |
| *3. Tā-yǒu-'chyán-méiyǒu? | Does he have any money? |
| *4. Nǐ-gěi-tā-chyán-ma? | Are you going to give him any money? |
| *5. 'Wáng-Syānsheng méiyǒu-chyán. | Mr. Wáng hasn't any money. |
| 6. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng hěn-máng. | Mr. Martin is very busy. |
| 7. Tā-bugěi-wǒ-chyán. | He doesn't give me money. |
| 8. 'Wáng-Syānsheng yě-gěi-wǒ-shū. | Mr. Wáng is also giving me a book. |
| 9. Wǒ-yào-syèsye-ta. | I want to thank him. |
| 10. 'Wáng-Syānsheng 'dǔng-budǔng? | Does Mr. Wáng understand? |
| 11. 'Wáng-Tàitai yào-'shū-buyào? | Does Mrs. Wáng want any books? |
| 12. Chyán-Jǎnggwèide-shwō tā-'dōu-dǔng. | Manager Chyán says he understands everything. |
| 13. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide yǒu-bào-ma? | Does Manager Chyán have newspapers? |
| 14. Mǎ-Syānsheng-shwō tā-yě-yào mǎi-mǎ. | Mr. Martin says he also wants to buy a horse. |
| 15. Wáng-Tàitai-shwō tā-buyào-shū. | Mrs. Wáng says she doesn't want any books. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Tā-yǒu-'chyán-méiyǒu? | 3. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide yě-buhěn-gāu. |
| 2. 'Wáng-Syānsheng buhěn-gāu. | 4. Nǐ-yào-mǎi-shū-ma? |

Drill IV (cont.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. Tā-yàu-gěi-nǐ-chyán. | 14. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide yě-yǒu-shū. |
| 6. 'Wáng-Tàitai 'yàu-buyàu mǎi-shū? | 15. 'Wáng-Tàitai yàu-'Wáng-Syānsheng mǎi-bàu. |
| 7. Nǐ-gěi-tā-chyán, 'hǎu-buhǎu? | 16. Yǒu-méiyǒu-chyán? |
| 8. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng budōu-dǔng. | 17. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-kàn nǐ-yǒu-méi-yǒu-chyán. |
| 9. Tā-yě-gěi-wǒ-bàu. | 18. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide hěn-gāu. |
| 10. 'Wáng-Syānsheng yàu-mǎi-bàu. | 19. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng yàu-kàn-bàu. |
| 11. Nǐ-buyàu gěi-tā-chyán-ma? | 20. Wáng-Syānsheng-shwō tā-yàu-mǎi-bàu. |
| 12. Tā-shwō 'Wáng-Syānsheng yǒu-chyán. | |
| 13. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng yǒu-bàu. | |

NOTES

- The verb *gěi* 'to give' can take both a direct and an indirect object. The indirect object precedes the direct: *Wǒ-gěi-tā-shū* 'I'm giving him a book.'
- When no subject is expressed or implied before the verb *yǒu* 'to have' it becomes impersonal. As an impersonal verb it is translated as 'there is' or 'there are': *Yǒu-bàu-ma?* 'Are there any newspapers?'
 - The verb *yǒu* takes a special negative prefix *méi*: *Tā-méiyǒu-bàu* 'He hasn't any newspapers,' *Tā-yǒu-méiyǒu-bàu?* 'Does he have any newspapers?' *Yǒu-méiyǒu-bàu?* 'Are there any newspapers?' The negative prefix *bu* is not used before *yǒu*.
- Many Chinese monosyllables, such as *bào* 'newspaper' and *shū* 'book,' are full words and can stand alone. Many other monosyllables have meaning but are not full words and cannot stand alone; we call them *combining forms*. They are somewhat like the prefixes *ex* 'out' and *tele* 'far' in the English words 'expose' and 'telephone.' However, some combining forms have more freedom than syllables like *ex* and *tele* in English. The syllable *wáng*, for example, means 'king' and forms part of the full word for a 'king (of a country),' namely *guówáng*, but it is also used as a surname and as part of the title of ancient Chinese kings, and may appear alone in such phrases as 'king of beasts.' When combining forms of this sort are given in the vocabularies we place parentheses around the abbreviation of the part of speech to which the combining form belongs, as a reminder that it can only be used in certain restricted ways. Thus, the fifth item in the vocabulary of this lesson is given as follows: *wáng* (N): king, *surname*.
 - The syllables which make up Chinese words of more than one syllable often have individual meaning. Thus, as noted in the ninth item of the vocabulary of this lesson, in the word *syānsheng* the syllable *syān* means 'first' and the syllable *sheng*, which as an independent word is pronounced *shēng* (with the first tone), means 'born.' Some of the syllables which make up Chinese words are themselves full words; others are only combining forms. We shall in the vocabularies give the separate meanings of the syllables in words as an aid in understanding and remembering these words. However, these syllables are not to be used as full words unless they have been designated as such elsewhere, for some are only combining forms and not full words at all.

4. a. Chinese surnames number no more than a few hundred. They generally consist of only one syllable and are either full words, combining forms, or syllables having no use except as surnames. The surname *Mǎ* 'horse,' for example, is also a full word, but the surname *Wáng* 'king' is only a combining form.
- b. English surnames cannot be spoken in Chinese, for they contain non-Chinese sounds and do not correspond to any of the recognized Chinese surnames. The English surname is therefore replaced by a Chinese surname. In a few cases the English surname has an exact Chinese equivalent in meaning; the Chinese then simply translate the name, as in the case of *Wáng* for *King*. Most often, however, the foreign surname has no exact Chinese equivalent either in meaning or in sound; then a Chinese surname is generally selected to represent the sound of the first syllable of the foreign surname, as in the case of *Mǎ* for *Martin*.
- c. Surnames precede a title: '*Wáng-Syānsheng* 'Mr. Wang.' In phrases of this sort the surname receives the chief stress.
5. When *méiyǒu* ends a sentence it often loses the tone on the second syllable: *Tā-yǒu-'bàu-méiyǒu?*

LESSON 8

EQUATIONAL VERBS, THREE-SYLLABLE COMPOUNDS

Conversation: Manager Chyán learns about America

- C: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-shì-búshr-Yīng-gwo-rén? Mr. Martin, are you English?
- M: Búshr. No, I'm not.
- W: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng shr-'Měigwo-rén. Mr. Martin is an American.
- C: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng hěn-gāu. Tā-búshr-'Yīnggwo-rén-ma? Mr. Martin is very tall. He isn't an Englishman?
- W: 'Měigwo-rén yě-hěn-gāu. Americans are very tall too.
- M: Dwèile. Měigwo-rén yě-hěn-gāu. That's right. Americans are also very tall.
- C: Měigwo-'dà-budà? Is America big?
- M: Měigwo-hěn-dà. Rén-yě-hěn-dwō. America is very large and its people are also very numerous.
- W: Yīnggwo-budà. Rén-yě-shǎu. Yīnggwo-yǒu-gwówáng. Měigwo-méi-you. England isn't big. Besides, its people are few. England has a king. America hasn't.
- C: Měigwo-rén yě-shwō-Yīnggwo-hwà-ma? Do Americans also speak English?
- W: Yě-shwō-Yīnggwo-hwà. Yes.
- C: Tāmen-yě-kàn-Yīnggwo-shū-ma? Do they also read English books?
- W: Yě-kàn-Yīnggwo-shū. They also read English books.
- C: Hǎu! . . . 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-yào-kàn-Jūnggwo-'shū-buyào? Jūnggwo-shū, Rbēn-shū—wō-dōu-yǒu. Good! . . . Mr. Martin, would you like to read some Chinese books? Chinese books, Japanese books—I have them all.

- M: Wǒ-buyàu kàn-'Jūngwo-shū, yě- I don't want to read Chinese or Japanese
buyàu kàn-'Rbēn-shū. Wǒ-jǐ-yàu books. I want to read only English books.
kàn-'Yīngwo-shū.
- C: Wǒ-yě-yǒu-'Yīngwo-shū. I also have English books.

Vocabulary

1. shì, shr	EV: to be	8. Měigwo	PW: United States,
2. dwō	SV: to be many, much		America (<i>měi</i> 'beau-
3. shǎu	SV: to be few, little		tiful' plus <i>gwó</i>)
4. rén	N: person	9. Yīngwo	PW: England (<i>yīng</i>
5. gwó	N: country, nation		'brave' plus <i>gwó</i>)
6. gwówáng	N: king	10. Rbēn	PW: Japan (<i>ř</i> 'sun' plus
7. Jūngwo	PW: China (<i>jūng</i>		<i>bēn</i> 'origin')
	'middle' plus <i>gwó</i>	11. jǐ	AD: only
	'country')		

Substitution Tables

Jūngwo	chyán	wǒ	shr	jǎngwèide	chyán	hěn	shǎu
Yīngwo	shū	nǐ		syānsheng	rén	yě	dwō
Měigwo	rén	tā		tàitai	shū	tài	
Rbēn	hwà			rén	bàu	bu-	

Chyán	Jǎngwèide	(bu-)	shr	Jūngwo	syānsheng	(ma?)
Wáng	Tàitai				tàitai	
Mǎ	Syānsheng				rén	

Drill I. Three-Syllable Compounds

1. Jūngwo-rén	A Chinese person	11. Yīngwo-mǎ	English horse
2. Rbēn-shū	Japanese books	12. Měigwo-bàu	American newspaper
3. Yīngwo-bàu	English newspaper	13. Jūngwo-chyán	Chinese money
4. Měigwo-chyán	American money	14. Yīngwo-rén	Englishmen
5. Yīngwo-hwà	English speech	15. Měigwo-shū	American books
6. Jūngwo-mǎ	Chinese horse	16. Rbēn-mǎ	Japanese horse
7. Měigwo-rén	An American	17. Jūngwo-shū	Chinese books
8. Rbēn-bàu	Japanese newspaper	18. Yīngwo-chyán	English money
9. Jūngwo-hwà	Chinese language	19. Měigwo-mǎ	American horse
10. Rbēn-rén	A Japanese	20. Rbēn-chyán	Japanese money

Drill II. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Tā-shì-bushr-Yīngwo-rén? | Is he an Englishman? |
| 2. Tā-'búshr-Yīngwo-rén. | He isn't an Englishman. |

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. Nimen-shr-Měigwo-rén-ma? | Are you Americans? |
| 4. Wōmen-shr-Měigwo-rén. | We are Americans. |
| 5. Chyán-'dwō-budwō? | Is there much money? |
| 6. Chyán-budwō. | There isn't much money. |
| 7. Tā-shr-jǎnggwèide-ma? | Is he the manager? |
| 8. Tā-'búshr-jǎnggwèide. | He's not the manager. |
| 9. Rbēn-yōu-gwówáng-méiyōu? | Does Japan have a king? |
| 10. Rbēn-yě-yōu-gwówáng. | Japan has a king too. |
| 11. Ní-búshr-Yínggwo-rén-ma? | Aren't you English? |
| 12. Búshr. Wō-shr-'Měigwo-rén. | No. I'm an American. |
| 13. Ní-dǔng-budǔng-Jūnggwo-hwà? | Do you understand Chinese? |
| 14. Wō-dǔng-Jūnggwo-hwà. | I understand Chinese. |
| 15. Ní-'yàu-buyàu mǎi-Jūnggwo-shū? | Would you like to buy some Chinese books? |
| 16. Buyàu-mǎi. Wō-méiyōu-chyán. | No. I don't have any money. |
| 17. Wōmen-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà, 'hǎu-buhǎu? | Let's speak Chinese, all right? |
| 18. Shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà yě-hǎu. | Speaking Chinese will be all right too. |
| 19. Jǐ-yōu-Jūnggwo-bào. Ní-yàu-buyàu-mǎi? | There are only Chinese newspapers. Would you like to buy any? |
| 20. Wō-buyàu mǎi-Jūnggwo-bào. | I don't want to buy any Chinese newspapers. |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|--|--|
| *1. Wō-shr-Měigwo-rén. | I'm an American. |
| *2. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng shr-Měigwo-rén. | Mr. Martin is an American. |
| *3. Yínggwo-yōu-gwówáng-méiyōu? | Does England have a king? |
| *4. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng buyàu-kàn-Jūnggwo-shū. | Mr. Martin doesn't want to read Chinese books. |
| *5. Jūnggwo-rén hěn-dwō. | There are a lot of Chinese. |
| 6. Tā-yōu-méiyōu-Jūnggwo-chyán? | Does he have any Chinese money? |
| 7. Rbēn-rén yě-bushǎu. | There are not a few Japanese too. |
| 8. 'Wáng-Syānsheng yàu-mǎi-Jūnggwo-bào, buyàu-mǎi-Jūnggwo-shū. | Mr. Wáng wants to buy a Chinese newspaper, but not a Chinese book. |
| 9. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide yě-shr-Jūnggwo-rén. | Manager Chyán is also a Chinese. |
| 10. Wō-gěi-ní-Měigwo-chyán, 'hǎu-buhǎu? | I'll give you American money, all right? |
| 11. Tā-shr-gwówáng-bushr? | Is he the king? |
| 12. Tā-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà. | He is speaking Chinese. |
| 13. Tā-shr-Jūnggwo-rén. | He is a Chinese. |
| 14. Tā-hěn-dà. | He is very big. |
| 15. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng yě-dǔng-Jūnggwo-hwà. | Mr. Martin also understands Chinese. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

1. 'Wáng-Syānsheng búshr-jǎnggwèide.
2. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide shr-Ābēn-rén-ma?
3. Jǔnggwo-mǎ budà.
4. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng yàu-gěi-tā-Měigwo-chyán.
5. Tā-shwō tā-yàu-'Yīnggwo-shū, bu-yàu-'Jǔnggwo-shū.
6. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng méiyōu-tàitai.
7. Ābēn-yōu-méiyōu-mǎ?
8. Jǔnggwo-rén budōu-yàu-shwō-Yīnggwo-hwà.
9. Tā-shr-'Wáng-Tàitai-bushr?
10. Tā-shwō 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide buyàu-Měigwo-chyán.
11. Ní-yàu-gěi-tā-Měigwo-chyán-ma?
12. Ní-dōu-dǔng-ma?
13. Wǒ-yě-buyàu gěi-tā-chyán.
14. Tā-yōu-'Jǔnggwo-shū, méiyōu-'Ābēn-shū.
15. Ābēn-budà. Rén-yě-shǎu.
16. Tā-shr-'Jǔnggwo-rén, búshr-'Ābēn-rén.
17. Ní-dǔng-budǔng-Yīnggwo-hwà?
18. Nimen-dōu-shr-Měigwo-rén-ma?
19. Jǔnggwo-hěn-dà. Měigwo-yě-hěn-dà.
20. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng syèsye-ní.

NOTES

1. a. *Equational verbs* (EV) are verbs which connect or equate two nouns or nominal expressions on either side of the verb. They are like English 'is' in the sentence 'That man is an Englishman'; here 'is' equates 'man' with 'Englishman.' The verb *shì* or *shr* 'to be' is the most common equational verb: *Tā-shr-rén* 'He is a man,' 'Mǎ-Syānsheng shr-Měigwo-rén' 'Mr. Martin is an American.'
- b. The verb *shì* 'to be' is used only to connect nominal expressions such as 'he' and 'man' in 'He is a man.' It has no place in a sentence like *Tā-hěn-máng* 'He is very busy,' for *máng* is not a noun but a stative verb meaning 'is busy.'
2. a. *Place words* (PW), which will be defined more precisely in Lesson 15, Note 1b, may for the time being be described as words of location. They are like expressions of place in English: *Jǔnggwo* 'China,' *Měigwo* 'America.'
- b. When a place word like *Yīnggwo* 'England' precedes the verb *yōu*, as in the sentence *Yīnggwo-yōu-gwówáng*, it is possible to translate *yōu* as either 'have' or as 'there is, there are.' If we translate *yōu* as 'have' the word *Yīnggwo* 'England' becomes the subject of the sentence, so that *Yīnggwo-yōu-gwówáng* means 'England has a king.' If we translate *yōu* as 'there is, there are' the word *Yīnggwo* 'England' means 'in England,' so that *Yīnggwo-yōu-gwówáng* means 'In England there is a king.'
3. The verbs *duō* 'to be many, to be much' and *shǎu* 'to be few, to be little' express an indefinite quantity. They are most often used as the main verb in the sentence. Thus, the English sentence 'There aren't many people' is in Chinese *Rén-budwō* 'The people aren't many.' Other examples: *Chyán-hěn-shǎu* 'The money is very little, There's very little money,' *Chyán-budwō* 'The money isn't much, There isn't much money,' *Rén-tài-duō* 'The people are too many, There are too many people.'
4. a. Unless specially emphasized, the verb *shì* 'to be' is unstressed and neutral in tone: *shr*. It has a negative form *búshr* and a question form *shì-bushr*.
- b. The syllable *gwó* 'country' when forming part of the name of a country becomes

neutral in tone: *Jūngwo* 'China.' However, over-deliberate pronunciation will sometimes produce the form *Jūngwó*.

- c. In conformity with the rule that in a word or hyphenated phrase the last syllable with a tone is spoken most loudly, the syllable *běn* is stressed in *Ābēn* 'Japan' and the syllable *shū* is stressed in *Jūngwo-shū* 'Chinese book.' When *Ābēn* and *shū* are joined together in the three-syllable compound *Ābēn-shū* 'Japanese book,' the final syllable *shū* is, quite regularly, spoken most loudly, but the middle syllable *bēn* is spoken less loudly than the first syllable *Ā*. In three-syllable compounds of this sort the middle syllable is sometimes spoken with so little stress that the tone becomes neutral. When the middle syllable is always neutral we shall write it without a tone. When the middle syllable can be spoken with a tone we shall write it with a tone. But no indication will be made that this middle syllable with tone is spoken with less stress than the other syllables in the three-syllable expressions, for the correct pronunciation will come quite automatically if the phrases given in Drill I are practiced a few times.

LESSON 9

NUMBERS, QUESTION-WORDS

Vocabulary

1. yī	NU: one	5. wǔ	NU: five	9. jǔ	NU: nine
2. èr	NU: two	6. liù	NU: six	10. shí	NU: ten
3. sān	NU: three	7. qī	NU: seven	11. jǐ?	NU: how many?
4. sì	NU: four	8. bā	NU: eight	12. dì	GP: ordinalizer

Substitution Tables

(di) yī	(di) shí-	yī	(di) —	-shí	—	-shí	yī
èr		èr		èr		èr	èr
sān		sān		sān		sān	sān
sì		sì		sì		sì	sì
wǔ		wǔ		wǔ		wǔ	wǔ
liù		liù		liù		liù	liù
qī		qī		qī		qī	qī
bā		bā		bā		bā	bā
jǔ		jǔ		jǔ		jǔ	jǔ
shí		jǐ		jǐ			dwǒ

Drill I. Counting (1-50)

yī	wǔ	jǔ	shí	shí
èr	liù	shí	shí	shí
sān	qī	shí	shí	shí
sì	bā	shí	shí	shí

Drill I (cont.)

èrshr-yī	èrshr-chī	sānshr-sān	sānshr-jyǒu	sǜshr-wǔ
èrshr-èr	èrshr-bā	sānshr-sǜ	sǜshǐ	sǜshr-lyǒu
èrshr-sān	èrshr-jyǒu	sānshr-wǔ	sǜshr-yī	sǜshr-chī
èrshr-sǜ	sānshǐ	sānshr-lyǒu	sǜshr-èr	sǜshr-bā
èrshr-wǔ	sānshr-yī	sānshr-chī	sǜshr-sān	sǜshr-jyǒu
èrshr-lyǒu	sānshr-èr	sānshr-bā	sǜshr-sǜ	wǔshǐ

Drill II. Miscellaneous Numbers

1. shǐyī	11	13. sǜshr-yī	41
2. jyǒushr-jyǒu	99	14. chīshr-jyǒu	79
3. di-èrshr-sān	23d	15. sānshr-sān	33
4. wǔshr-èr	52	16. di-bāshr-èr	82d
5. sǜshr-sǜ	44	17. yī-lyǒu-sān-sǜ	1-6-3-4
6. bāshr-wǔ	85	18. èr-wǔ-bā-chī	2-5-8-7
7. chīshr-bā	78	19. jyǒu-lyǒu-èr-bā	9-6-2-8
8. lyǒushr-lyǒu	66	20. sǜ-sān-chī-wǔ	4-3-7-5
9. jyǒushr-yī	91	21. bāshr-dwō	eighty-odd
10. sānshr-chī	37	22. 'jǐshǐ?	how many tens?
11. chīshr-sān	73	23. shǐjǐ?	ten and how many?
12. di-shǐsǜ	14th	24. lyǒushr-dwō	sixty-odd
		25. jyǒushr-jǐ?	ninety and how many?

Drill III. Translation Exercise

1. di-jyǒushr-lyǒu	11. wǔ-bā-jyǒu-èr
2. chīshr-dwō	12. sǜ-yī-sǜ-wǔ
3. lyǒushr-chī	13. di-bāshr-bā
4. di-bāshǐ	14. shǐsān
5. sānshr-jǐ?	15. sǜshr-wǔ
6. jyǒushr-èr	16. jyǒushr-sǜ
7. chīshr-sǜ	17. shǐjyǒu
8. 'jǐshǐ?	18. lyǒushr-sān
9. sǜshr-dwō	19. bā-lyǒu-èr-jyǒu
10. sān-sān-lyǒu-chī	20. chī-bā-wǔ-èr

NOTES

1. a. *Numbers* (NU) are words which can follow the syllable *di*. This is a prefix which changes cardinal numbers into ordinal numbers: *yī* 'one,' *dī-yī* 'the first.'
- b. Numbers from 1 to 9 occur in telephone style in the same way as in English: *yī-lyǒu-sān-sǜ* '1-6-3-4.'
- c. A number from 1 to 9 following *shǐ* 'ten' is added to 'ten': *shǐyī* 'eleven,' *shǐjyǒu* 'nineteen.'
- d. A number from 2 to 9 preceding *shǐ* 'ten' multiplies 'ten': *èrshǐ* 'twenty,' *jyǒushǐ* 'ninety.'

- e. The word *dwō* 'many' in the extended meaning of 'a few more' is placed after a number divisible by ten to form the equivalent of English expressions like '20-odd': *èrshr-dwō* '20-odd,' *jyōushr-dwō* '90-odd.'
- f. When the number *yī* 'one' comes before a syllable with a first, second, or third tone, it is pronounced with a fourth tone: *yìfēn*, *yìmdú*, *yìbēn*. When *yī* precedes the neutral syllable *ge* and when it comes before a syllable with a fourth tone, it is pronounced with a second tone: *yíge*, *yíkwài*.
2. a. *Question-words* are words which form questions that cannot be answered by 'yes' or 'no.' They are like 'how many?' 'who?' 'what?' in English. In English these expressions always come first in the sentence, as in 'What have you?' In Chinese, however, a question-word always has the same position in the question as the word which replaces it in the answer. This is illustrated in the next paragraph and in Lesson 10.
- b. The question-word *jǐ* 'how many' is used like a number: *dī-jǐ?* 'number how many?' *dī-yī* 'number one, the first.' The question made by using *jǐ* is generally answered by replacing *jǐ* with a number from 1 to 9: *jǐshí?* 'how many tens?' *lyòushí* 'six tens, 60'; *shíjǐ?* 'ten and how many?' *shílyòu* 'ten and six, 16.'

LESSON 10

MEASURES AND SPECIFIERS

Conversation: Martin does some sharp bargaining

- | | |
|--|---|
| C: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-yàu-mǎi-Yīng-gwo-shū-ma? | Mr. Martin, do you want to buy some English books? |
| M: Yàu-mǎi. | I'd like to buy some. |
| C: Yàu-'jǐbēn? | How many do you want? |
| M: Jǐ-yàu-mǎi-'yìbēn. | I just want to buy one. |
| C: Jèibēn-Yīnggwo-shū hěn-hǎu. | This English book is very good. |
| M: 'Nèibēn? | Which one? |
| C: 'Jèibēn. | This one. |
| M: 'Dwōshau-chyán? | How much? |
| C: Jèibēn-shū shr-lyǎngkwài-bāmáu-lyòufēn-chyán. Nǐ-gěi-lyǎngkwài-bā déle. | This book is \$2.86. Give me \$2.80 and that'll do. |
| M: Tàì-dwō. Jèibēn-shū buhěn-hǎu. Wǒ-gěi-lyǎngkwài-èr, nǐ-'mài-bu-mài? | Too much. This book isn't very good. I'll give you \$2.20, will you sell? |
| C: Hǎu. Nǐ-búshr-yě-yàu mǎi-nèibēn-shū-ma? | All right. Don't you want to buy that book too? |
| M: Nèibēn-shū 'dwōshau-chyán? | How much is that book? |
| C: Chikwài-wǔ. Rén-dōu-shwō nèibēn-shū hěn-hǎu. | Seven-fifty. Everyone says that book is very good. |

- M: Wǒ-bu yào mǎi-nèiběn-shū. Wǒ-jǐ-yǒu sù-wǔkwài-chyán. I don't want to buy that book. I have only four or five dollars.
- C: Wáng-Syānsheng-shwō tā-yǒu-chyán. Mr. Wáng says he has money.
- W: Wǒ-jǐ-yǒu chīmáu-wǔ. I have only seventy-five cents.
- M: Nǐ-gěi-'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide, 'hǎu-bu-hǎu? How about giving it to Manager Chyán?
- W: Hǎu. O. K.
- M: 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide, wǒ-gěi-nǐ-wǔ-kuài-chyán. 'Wáng-Syānsheng gěi-nǐ-chīmáu-wǔ. Manager Chyán, I'll give you \$5. Mr. Wáng will give you 75 cents.
- C: Jèi-lyǎngbēn-shū nǐ-jǐ-gěi wǔkwài-chīmáu-wǔ-ma? You're only giving \$5.75 for these two books?
- M: Dwèile. Nǐ-'mài-bumài? Right. Will you sell?
- C: Hǎu, mǎigei-ni. All right, I'll sell them to you.

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|-----------|--|--------------|---|
| 1. mài | TV: sell | 8. líng | NU: zero |
| 2. mǎigei | TV: sell to (mài 'sell' plus gěi 'give') | 9. jèi | SP: this |
| 3. bēn | M: volume (of books) | 10. nèi | SP: that |
| 4. kuài | M: lump (dollar) | 11. něi? | SP: which? |
| 5. máu | M: dime | 12. dwōshau? | PH: how many? how much?
(dwō 'many' plus shǎu 'few') |
| 6. fēn | M: division (cent) | 13. déle | PH: that will be enough,
that will do |
| 7. lyǎng | NU: two | | |

Substitution Tables

yī	-kuài	chyán	jèi	-bēn	shū	wǒ	yǒu	dwōshau	chyán
lyǎng			nèi			nǐ	yào		shū
.			něi			tā			mǎ
.									
.									

Drill I. Measures in Simple Phrases

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|---------------------|--------------|
| 1. yīfēn-chyán | one cent | 9. jǔbēn-shū | nine books |
| 2. lyǎngfēn-chyán | two cents | 10. shíbēn-shū | ten books |
| 3. sānfēn-chyán | three cents | 11. yí máu-chyán | ten cents |
| 4. sìfēn-chyán | four cents | 12. lyǎng máu-chyán | twenty cents |
| 5. wǔfēn-chyán | five cents | 13. sān máu-chyán | thirty cents |
| 6. lyòubēn-shū | six books | 14. sì máu-chyán | forty cents |
| 7. chībēn-shū | seven books | 15. wǔ máu-chyán | fifty cents |
| 8. bābēn-shū | eight books | 16. lyòukwài-chyán | six dollars |

Drill I (cont.)

17. chīkwài-chyán	seven dollars	24. jèi-sānběn-shū	these three books
18. bākwài-chyán	eight dollars	25. nèi-szběn-shū	those four books
19. jyōkwài-chyán	nine dollars	26. 'nèi-wüběn-shū?	which five books?
20. shfkwài-chyán	ten dollars	27. jèi-lyòufēn-chyán	this six cents
21. jèiběn-shū	this book	28. nèi-chīmáu-chyán	that seventy cents
22. nèiběn-shū	that book	29. 'nèi-bākwài-chyán?	which eight dollars?
23. nēiběn-shū?	which book?	30. jèi-shfkwài-chyán	this ten dollars

Drill II. Use of èr and lyǎng

1. lyǎngbēn-shū	two books	8. lyǎngmáu-lyǎngfēn (-chyán)	.22
2. lyǎngkwài-chyán	two dollars	9. èrmáu-èrfēn (-chyán)	.22
3. lyǎngmáu-chyán	twenty cents	10. lyǎngmáu-èrfēn (-chyán)	.22
4. èrmáu-chyán	twenty cents	11. èrmáu-èr	.22
5. lyǎngfēn-chyán	two cents	12. lyǎngmáu-èr	.22
6. èrfēn-chyán	two cents	13. lyǎngkwài-èr	\$2.20
7. dì-èrbēn-shū	the second book	14. lyǎngkwài-líng-èrfēn (-chyán)	\$2.02

Drill III. Bargaining Expressions

1. Jèi-sānběn-shū 'dwōshau-chyán?	How much for these three books?
2. Nèiběn-Jūnggwo-shū shr-lyǎngkwài-chīmáu-chyán.	That Chinese book is \$2.70.
3. Sānkwài-chyán, nǐ-'yàu-buyàu?	Do you want it for \$3?
4. Shfkwài-chyán, wǒ-buyàu.	I don't want it for \$10.
5. Wūkwài-chyán nǐ-'mài-bumài?	Will you sell it for \$5?
6. Wǒ-gěi-lyǎngkwài-èr, nǐ-'mài-bumài?	I'll give you \$2.20. Will you sell?
7. Nèiběn-shū wǒ-gěi-szkwài-chyán.	I'll give you \$4 for that book.
8. Nǐ-gěi-èrshfkwài-chyán déle.	Give me \$20 and that'll do.
9. Nǐ-gěi-shfwūkwài-chyán, wǒ-màigei-ni.	Give me \$15 and I'll sell it to you.
10. Tā-buyàu màigei-'Mǎ-Syānsheng.	He doesn't want to sell it to Mr. Martin.

Drill IV. Questions and Answers

1. Nǐ-yàu-jèiběn-Jūnggwo-shū-ma?	Do you want this Chinese book?
2. Wǒ-buyàu-nèiběn-Jūnggwo-shū.	I don't want that Chinese book.
3. Nǐ-yàu-'jībēn-shū?	How many books do you want?
4. Wǒ-yàu-'lyǎngbēn-shū.	I want two books.
5. Tā-yǒu-'dwōshau-chyán?	How much money does he have?
6. Tā-yǒu jyōkwài-wūmáu-chyán.	He has \$9.50.
7. Nǐ-yàu jèi-szbēn-Ābēn-shū-ma?	Do you want these four Japanese books?

Drill IV (cont.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 8. Wǒ-bu yào nèi-sìběn-Rìběn-shū. | I don't want those four Japanese books. |
| 9. Nǐ-mǎi 'nèiběn-Yīngwǒ-shū? | Which English book are you buying? |
| 10. Wǒ-mǎi 'nèiběn-Yīngwǒ-shū. | I'm buying that English book. |
| 11. Tāmen-mài-'bào-bumài? | Do they sell newspapers? |
| 12. Tāmen-mài-shū, bumài-bào. | They sell books, not newspapers. |
| 13. Jèi-lyǎngběn-Yīngwǒ-shū 'dwōshāu-chyán? | How much for these two English books? |
| 14. Nǐ-gěi-lyǎngkwài-líng-wūfēn déle. | Give me \$2.05 and that'll be enough. |
| 15. Jèi-sānběn-shū dōu-shr-Rìběn-shū-ma? | Are all three of these books Japanese books? |
| 16. Budōu-shr. 'Lyǎngběn shr-'Jūngwǒ-shū. 'Yìběn shr-'Rìběn-shū. | No. Two are Chinese books and one is a Japanese book. |
| 17. Wǒ-gěi-èrshr-wūkwài-chyán, nǐ-'mài-bumài? | I'll give you \$25. Will you sell? |
| 18. Hǎu. Nǐ-gěi-èrshr-wūkwài-chyán, wǒ-màigei-ni. | All right. Give me \$25 and I'll sell it to you. |
| 19. Nǐ-'yào-bu yào kàn-jèiběn-Yīngwǒ-shū? | Would you like to read this English book? |
| 20. 'Nèiběn-Yīngwǒ-shū? | Which English book? |

Drill V. Model Sentences

- | | |
|--|---|
| *1. Wǒ-yǒu-shū. | I have a book, I have some books. |
| *2. Wǒ-yǒu-yìběn-shū. | I have one book. |
| *3. Wǒ-yào-jèiběn-Yīngwǒ-shū. | I want this English book. |
| *4. Nǐ-yǒu-'jǐběn-shū? | How many books have you? |
| *5. Nǐ-yào-'nèiběn-shū? | Which book do you want? |
| *6. Wǒ-yào-jèi-sānběn-Jūngwǒ-shū. | I want these three Chinese books. |
| *7. Wǒ-gěi-yìkwài-líng-wǔ, nǐ-'mài-bumài? | I'll give you \$1.05. Will you sell? |
| *8. Nǐ-gěi-lyǎngkwài-èr déle. | Give me \$2.20 and that'll do. |
| *9. Jèiběn-shū 'dwōshāu-chyán? | How much is this book? |
| *10. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng yào-gěi-ta bā-jyǒukwài-chyán. | Mr. Martin wants to give him eight or nine dollars. |
| 11. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide yào-chìkwài-wǔmáo-èr. | Manager Chyán wants \$7.52. |
| 12. 'Wáng-Syānsheng buyào mǎi-nèiběn-shū. | Mr. Wáng doesn't want to buy that book. |
| 13. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng yào-kàn-nèiběn-Yīngwǒ-shū-ma? | Does Mr. Martin want to read that English book? |
| 14. Wáng-Tàitai-shwō jèiběn-shū hěnhǎu. | Mrs. Wáng says this book is very good. |
| 15. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide bumàigei-wo. | Manager Chyán isn't selling it to me. |

Drill VI. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Wō-gěi-nǐ-wúkwài-chyán, nǐ-'mài-bu-mài? | 12. Sānkwài-wǔ tài-shǎu. |
| 2. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng yàu-mǎi-'jìběn-shū? | 13. Jèiběn-Yīnggwo-shū buhěn-hǎu. |
| 3. 'Wáng-Syānsheng 'yàu-buyàu mǎi-nèiběn-shū? | 14. 'Wáng-Syānsheng jǐ-yǒu chīmáu-wūfēn-chyán. |
| 4. Jèiběn-Jūnggwo-shū yě-hěn-hǎu. | 15. 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nǐ-'yàu-buyàu kàn-jèiběn-Jūnggwo-shū? |
| 5. Wūshr-sàkwài-chyán budwō-ma? | 16. Nǐ - yàu - gěi - 'Chyán - Jǎnggwèide 'dwōshau-chyán? |
| 6. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng yàu-gěi-ta 'dwōshau-chyán? | 17. Jèi-lyǎngběn-Āběn-shū 'dwōshau-chyán? |
| 7. Jūnggwo-rén dōu-yàu-kàn-jèiběn-shū. | 18. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide-shwō tā-méi-yǒu-nèiběn-Yīnggwo-shū. |
| 8. 'Nèiběn-shū shr-bākwài-chyán? | 19. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng-shwō tā-yàu-mǎi-'jìběn-shū? |
| 9. Tā-yàu-gěi-nǐ jèiběn-shū. | 20. Jèiběn-shū 'dwōshau-chyán? |
| 10. Nǐ-gěi-wō-bào, wǒ-gěi-nǐ-shū. | |
| 11. 'Wáng-Syānsheng yě-yàu-gěi-ta lyòu-chīkwài-chyán. | |

NOTES

1. *Measures* (M) are words which can follow a number. They resemble English units of measurement such as 'pound' in 'one pound of rice' and 'lump' in 'two lumps of sugar': *Yīkwài-chyán* 'one lump of money, one dollar.' (The measure *kwài* 'lump' originally referred to a coined silver dollar; it was later used for paper money as well.)
2. a. *Nouns* (N) are words which can follow a measure. They resemble the English words 'rice' in 'one pound of rice' and 'sugar' in 'two lumps of sugar.' The noun *chyán* 'money' appears after the measure *kwài* 'lump' in the phrase *yīkwài-chyán* 'one lump of money, one dollar.'
 b. All Chinese nouns are like the English nouns 'rice,' 'sugar,' and 'money' in being neither singular nor plural. The number or quantity of a Chinese noun is expressed not by a change in the noun itself but by the use of different expressions of amount before the noun, much as one occasionally hears in English 'one ton of coal,' 'two ton of coal': *yìběn-shū* 'one volume of book, one book,' *sānběn-shū* 'three volume of book, three books.' A measure always comes between the number and the noun; Chinese says *yìběn-shū*, never without the measure, such as *běn*.
 c. Chinese often uses different measures with the same noun, just as we say in English 'one grain of rice,' 'two bowls of rice,' 'three pounds of rice.' Thus, the noun *chyán* is preceded not only by the measure *kwài* 'dollar' but also by the measures *máu* 'dime' and *fēn* 'cent': *chīkwài-chyán* 'seven dollars,' *bāmáu-chyán* 'eight dimes, eighty cents,' *jyǒufēn-chyán* 'nine cents,' *chīkwài-bāmáu-jyǒufēn-chyán* '\$7.89.'
3. a. The simple number 'two' before a measure is most often *lyǎng* 'a couple': *lyǎngběn-shū* 'two books,' *lyǎngkwài-chyán* 'two dollars.'
 b. The number *èr* 'two' preceded by *dì* is used before a measure as the ordinal: *dì-èrběn-shū* 'the second book.'

- c. The number *èr* 'two' is used before a measure when it forms part of another number: *èrshr-èrběn-shū* 'twenty-two books.'
- d. The number *èr* is interchangeable with *lyǎng* before *máu* 'dime' and *fēn* 'cent': *èrmáu-chyán*, *lyǎngmáu-chyán* 'twenty cents'; *èrfēn-chyán*, *lyǎngfēn-chyán* 'two cents.'
- e. The Chinese equivalent of expressions like 'two or three books' does not use any word for 'or': *lyǎng-sānběn-shū* 'two or three books,' *sè-wǔkwài-chyán* 'four or five dollars.'
- f. In expressions of dollars and cents, Chinese uses *líng* 'zero' before the expression for cents if it is less than ten cents: *wǔkwài-líng-sānfēn-chyán* '\$5.03.'
4. a. A noun is sometimes omitted after a measure if it can be understood from the context: *Nǐ-yàu-'jǐbēn-shū?* 'How many books do you want?', *Wǒ-yàu-sānběn* 'I want three.'
- b. The noun *chyán* 'money' is often omitted in expressions of amount of money: *bāmáu* 'eighty cents.' In addition, when the measures *kwài* 'dollar,' *máu* 'dime,' and *fēn* 'cent' are used together in the same expression, the last measure is very often omitted: *bāmáu-jyǒu* '\$.89,' *chīkwài-bāmáu-jyǒu* '\$7.89,' *chīkwài-bā* '\$7.80,' *chīkwài-líng-bā* '\$7.08.' *Lyǎng* 'two' is replaced by *èr* when the measure is omitted: *chīkwài-bāmáu-èr* '\$7.82,' *chīkwài-líng-èr* '\$7.02.'
5. *Specifiers* (SP) are words which can precede or replace a number before a measure. They include *jèi* 'this,' *nèi* 'that,' and the question-word *něi?* 'which?': *jèibēn-shū* 'this book,' *nèibēn-shū* 'that book,' *něibēn-shū?* 'which book?' *jèi-lyǎngbēn-shū* 'these two books,' *nèi-sānbēn-shū* 'those two books.'
6. a. The phrase *dwōshau*, made up of the stative verbs *dwō* 'be many, much' and *shǎu* 'be few, little,' is a question-word which means 'how many? how much?' and is used before a noun. In its meaning of 'how many?' *dwōshau* differs from *jǐ?* 'how many?' in that it suggests a large number. Thus *'jǐbēn-shū?* 'how many books?' suggests less than ten but *'dwōshau-shū?* 'how many books?' suggests a large and indefinite number. In its meaning of 'how much?' *dwōshau* is also used before a noun to avoid the need of using a specific measure: *dwōshau-chyán?* 'how much money?'
- b. *Dwōshau* is often used alone if the noun which would otherwise follow it can be understood from the context: *Tā-yǒu-dwōshau?* 'How many does he have? How much does he have?'
7. The phrase *déle*, made up of a verb *dé* 'to get' and the particle *le* indicating completed action, has the meaning of 'that's enough, that'll do.' It is often used as an exclamation, as for example by someone trying to stop a quarrel or by a guest attempting to stop his host from piling too much food on his plate. In such cases it is often said twice: *Déle! Déle!* 'Enough! Enough!' It is also used after a suggested action to give the idea 'Do this and there will be an end to it, It will be enough to do this': *Gěi-sānkwài-chyán déle* 'Give three dollars and that'll be all.' The general effect of *déle* is to turn a statement into a plea.
8. The verb *shr* (be) is sometimes used for emphasis, as in the phrase (see Conversation) *Nǐ-búshr-yě-yàu*. . . ., which has the force of 'Isn't it so that you also want. . . .' This point will be elaborated in Lesson 23, Note 5.

LESSON 11

SUBORDINATION OF NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND PLACE-WORDS

Conversation: Martin learns a new word

- M: 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide, jèi-shr-'shémma-shū? Manager Chyán, what book is this?
- C: Nèi-shr-Jǔnggwo-shū. Nǐ-yàu-mǎi-ma? That is a Chinese book. Would you like to buy it?
- M: Wǒ-buhwèi kàn-Jǔnggwo-shū. Jǐ-hwèi kàn-Yǐnggwo-shū. I can't read Chinese books. I can only read English books.
- C: 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nǐ-yàu-buyàu-mǎi? Mr. Wáng, would you like to buy it?
- W: Buyàu. Wǒ-péngyou-shwǒ nèiběn-shū méiyǒu-yìsz. Wǒ-tàitai-yě-shwǒ nèiběn-shū méiyǒu-yìsz. No. My friend says that that book isn't interesting. My wife also says that that book is uninteresting.
- C: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-búshr-yàu-mǎi-jǐ-ma?¹ Wouldn't you like to buy some *jǐ*, Mr. Martin?
- M: 'Jǐ'-shr-'shémma-yìsz? What does *jǐ* mean?
- C: 'Jǐ'-shr-'jǐ'-de-yìsz. Nǐ-budǔng-ma? *Jǐ* means *jǐ*. Don't you understand?
- M: Wǒ-budǔng. 'Wáng-Syānsheng, 'jǐ'-shr-'shémma-yìsz? I don't understand. Mr. Wáng, what does *jǐ* mean?
- W: 'Jǐ'-shr-'paper'-de-yìsz. *Jǐ* means 'paper.'
- M: 'Bàu'-buyě-shr-'paper'-de-yìsz-ma? Doesn't *bàu* mean 'paper' too?
- W: Búshr. 'Bàu'-shr-'newspaper.' 'Jǐ'-shr-'paper.' Wǒmen-néng-kàn-'bàu,' bunéng-kàn-'jǐ.' No. *Bàu* means 'newspaper.' *Jǐ* means 'paper.' We can read 'newspapers' but we can't read 'paper.'
- M: 'Only' Jǔnggwo-hwà 'dzěmma-shwǒ? How do you say 'only' in Chinese?
- W: 'Only' Jǔnggwo-hwà shr-'jǐ.' 'Only' in Chinese is *jǐ*. There are not a few Chinese words *jǐ*. One means 'paper,' Jǔnggwode-'jǐ'-dǐ bushǎu. Yíge shr-'paper'-de-yìsz. Yíge shr-'only'-de-yìsz. another means 'only.'
- M: Óu! Wǒ-dǔngle. Oh! I understand.
- C: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-bumǎi-jǐ-ma? Mr. Martin, won't you buy some paper?
- M: Méiyǒu-chyán-le. I don't have any more money.

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|------------|-----------------|------------|--------------------|
| 1. néng | AV: able to | 4. shémma? | N: what? |
| 2. hwèi | AV: know how to | 5. dǐ | N: character, word |
| 3. péngyou | N: friend | 6. yìsz | N: meaning |

1. See Lesson 10, note 8.

Vocabulary (*cont.*)

7. jǐ	N: paper	10. de	GP: subordinating particle
8. dzěmma?	AD: how?	11. òu!	INT: oh!
9. ge	M: unit, piece	12. dǔngle	PH: (I) understand

Substitution Tables

wǒ	-de	chyán	wǒmen	-de	péngyou	wǒ	(bu-)	néng	kàn	shū
nǐ		shū	nǐmen		yìsz	nǐ		hwèi	mǎi	bàu
tā		dè	tāmen		mǎ	tā		yàu		

Drill I. Subordination with de

1. wǒde-shū	my book
2. nǐde-yìsz	your meaning
3. tāde-bàu	his newspaper
4. wǒmende-mǎ	our horse
5. nǐmende-chyán	your money
6. tāmende-shū	their books
7. Mǎ-Syānshengde-bàu	Mr. Martin's newspaper
8. Chyán-Tàिताide-shū	Mrs. Chyán's book
9. Wáng-Syānshengde-tàitai	Mr. Wáng's wife
10. jèige-rénde-mǎ	this man's horse
11. nèige-Yīnggwo-rénde-shū	that Englishman's book
12. wǒ-péngyoude-jǐ	my friend's paper
13. Yīnggwode-gwówáng	the king of England
14. tāmende-péngyou	their friends
15. Mǎ-Syānshengde-chyán	Mr. Martin's money
16. Jūnggwode-péngyou	friends of China
17. tāmende-gwówáng	their king
18. nǐ-tàिताide-shū	your wife's book
19. nèige-rénde-yìsz	that man's meaning
20. nèige-syānshengde-shū?	which gentleman's book?

Drill II. Questions and Answers

1. Yīnggwode-gwówáng 'gāu-bugāu?	Is the king of England tall?
2. Yīnggwode-gwówáng buhěn-gāu.	The king of England isn't very tall.
3. Nǐ-tàitai yàu-shū-ma?	Does your wife want a book?
4. Wǒ-tàitai buyàu-shū.	My wife doesn't want a book.
5. Jèi-shr-Mǎ-Syānshengde-'shū-bushr?	Is this Mr. Martin's book?
6. Nèi-búshr-Mǎ-Syānshengde-shū.	That isn't Mr. Martin's book.
7. Nǐ-hwèi-kàn-Jūnggwo-shū ma?	Can you read Chinese?
8. Wǒ-buhwèi-kàn-Jūnggwo-shū.	I can't read Chinese.
9. Jèige-shr-nǐde-ma?	Is this yours?
10. Nèige-búshr-wǒde.	That isn't mine.

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 11. 'Òu' Yínggwo-hwà 'dzëm-ma-shwō? | How do you say <i>ou</i> in English? |
| 12. 'Òu' Yínggwo-hwà yě-shr-'òu.' | <i>Òu</i> is also 'oh' in English. |
| 13. Nèige-Měigwo-rén 'hwèi-buhwèi shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà? | Can that American speak Chinese? |
| 14. Nèige-Měigwo-rén buhwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà. | That American cannot speak Chinese. |
| 15. Ní-mài-shém-ma? | What do you sell? |
| 16. Wō-mài-Jūnggwo-bào. Ní-yàu-buyàu-mǎi? | I sell Chinese newspapers. Do you want to buy any? |
| 17. Jǎnggwèide yàu-'dwōshau-chyán? | How much money does the manager want? |
| 18. Jǎnggwèide-shwō gěi-lyǎngkwài-líng-wǔ déle. | The manager says to give \$2.05 and that'll do. |
| 19. Nímende-Jūnggwo-péngyou shwō-shém-ma? | What is your Chinese friend saying? |
| 20. Tā-shwō: "'Tán-hwà' shr-'shém-ma-yìsz?'" | He says: "What does <i>tán-hwà</i> mean?" |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|--|--|
| *1. Jèi-shr-níde-chyán-ma? | Is this your money? |
| *2. Nèi-búshr-níde-ma? | Isn't that yours? |
| *3. Jèi-shr-shém-ma? | What is this? |
| *4. Tā-buhwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà. | He can't speak Chinese. |
| *5. Wáng-Syānshengde-tàitai hěn-lèi. | Mr. Wáng's wife is very tired. |
| *6. Nèige-dz Yínggwo-hwà 'dzëm-ma-shwō? | How do you say that word in English? |
| *7. 'Dzëm-ma' shr-'shém-ma-yìsz? | What does <i>dzëm-ma</i> mean? |
| *8. Měigwo shr-Jūnggwode-péngyou. | America is a friend of China. |
| 9. Tā-shwō nèiběn-shū hěn-méiyōu-yìsz. | He says that that book is very uninteresting. |
| 10. 'Jǐ'-búshr-'bào'-de-yìsz. | 'Paper' doesn't mean 'newspaper.' |
| 11. Tā-tàitai-shwō tā-bunéng-gěi-nǐ-chyán. | His wife says she can't give you any money. |
| 12. Nèi-lyǎngge-rén dōu-hěn-yōu-chyán. | Both those men [those two men all] are very wealthy. |
| 13. Òu! Wō-dōu-dǔng. | Oh! I understand it all. |
| 14. Jèi-shr-'shém-ma-shū? | What book is this? |
| 15. Wōde-péngyou syèsye-ni. | My friend thanks you. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. Wō-méiyōu-chyán. 'Dzëm-ma-néng mǎi-shū? | 4. Wōde-chyán tài-shǎu. |
| 2. Nèige shr-níde? | 5. Nèige-rén shr-bushr-Ĭbēn-rén? |
| 3. Wō-bunéng-gěi-ta jèibēn-shū. | 6. Wō-budǔng nèige-dzde-yìsz. |
| | 7. Jèi-lyǎngge-rén dōu-hěn-gāu. |

Drill IV (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 8. Nǐde-Měigwo-péngyou 'hwèi-buhwèi shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà? | 13. Tā-tàitai yàu-mǎi-jǐ. |
| 9. Tā-shwō Měigwo-rén dōu-hěn-yōu-chyán. | 14. 'Něige-rén shr-Rbèn-rén? |
| 10. 'Mǎ'-shr-'shémma-yisz? | 15. Wō-péngyou yě-shr-Měigwo-rén. |
| 11. 'Syèsye' Yīnggwo-hwà 'dzémma-shwō? | 16. Nèige-gwówáng hěn-yōu-chyán. |
| 12. Nǐde-syānsheng 'hwèi-buhwèi shwō-Yīnggwo-hwà? | 17. Nèige-rén yàu-gěi-jānggwèide wūshf-kwài-chyán. |
| | 18. Tā-yōu-shémma? |
| | 19. Jèi-shr-wō-péngyou. |
| | 20. Wō-méiyōule. 'Dzémma-néng-gěi-ni? |

NOTES

1. a. In English we often qualify a word by putting something before or after it. Thus, 'my' qualifies 'book' in 'my book' and 'of the month' qualifies 'book' in 'book of the month.' In these examples 'book' is the chief word and 'my' and 'of the month' are secondary or subordinate expressions. We shall refer to the use of subordinate expressions of this sort as *subordination*.
 - b. In Chinese subordination is shown either directly by the order in which words occur or indirectly by the use of grammatical particles. The first, subordination by word-order, can be illustrated in English by the expressions 'good book' and 'Oregon trail,' in which 'good' and 'Oregon' respectively qualify and are subordinate to the words, 'book' and 'trail.' This kind of subordination is seen in Chinese in expressions like *Yīnggwo-rén* 'England-men, Englishmen', *Rbèn-hwà* 'Japan-talk, Japanese language,' *Jūnggwo-shū* 'China-book, a Chinese book.' In such phrases the first word is always subordinate to the one that follows.
 - c. Subordination by the use of grammatical particles is similar to the use in English of the possessive 's, the preposition *of*, and other forms, as in 'John's book,' 'a friend of mine.' The most widely used subordinating particle in Chinese is *de*. When this particle is used, what precedes it is always subordinate to what follows it: *Wáng-Syānshengde-shū* 'Mr. Wáng's book,' *Yīnggwode-gwówáng* 'the king of England.'
2. a. When one Chinese noun directly precedes and is subordinate to another noun, the two nouns form compounds like *streetcar*, *newspaper*, and *fireman* in English. Thus, *bào* 'newspaper' when subordinated to *jǐ* 'paper' forms the compound *bàujǐ* 'newsprint, the paper on which a newspaper is printed.' We write such compounds as one word and list them in the vocabulary.

When one Chinese noun is subordinated to another with *de* in between, the phrase which is created is looser than the compounds like *bàujǐ* 'newsprint.' The particle *de* connects nouns in the same way that 's and *of* do in English: *Wáng-Syānshengde-tàitai* 'Mr. Wáng's wife, the wife of Mr. Wáng.'

- b. When a place-word, such as *Yīnggwo* 'England,' is subordinated to a noun, there is sometimes a difference in meaning or emphasis between the forms with *de* and the one without. Thus, there is a difference in emphasis between *Yīnggwo-gwówáng* 'English king' and *Yīnggwode-gwówáng* 'the king of England.' There

11. SUBORDINATION OF NOUNS, PRONOUNS, PLACE-WORDS 37

- is a difference in meaning between *Jūnggwo-péngyou* 'Chinese friends' and *Jūnggwode-péngyou* 'friends of China.'
- c. When a pronoun is subordinated to a noun, the particle *de* is generally used between the pronoun and the noun: *wōde-shū* 'my book.' In some cases, as when the noun expresses a personal relationship or is itself closely followed by *de*, this particle is often omitted after the pronoun: *wō-péngyou* 'my friend,' *wō-syānshengde-shū* 'my teacher's book.'
- d. The noun after *de* is often omitted when it is clear from the context: *Jèibēn-shū shr-wōde* 'This book is mine,' *Nèibēn-shū shr-Mǎ-Syānshengde* 'That book is Mr. Martin's.'
3. a. The measure is often omitted after *jèi* and *nèi* when these precede the verb *shr* 'to be': *Jèi-shr-wōde* 'This is mine,' *Nèi-shr-nǐde* 'That is yours.'
- b. The measure *ge* 'unit, piece' is the most widely used of all Chinese measures. It is used before the following nouns which we have had so far: *rén*, 'person,' *gwó* 'country,' *gwówáng*, 'king,' *chýán* 'money,' *mǎ* 'horse,' *tàitai* 'married lady,' *syānsheng* 'gentleman,' *jānggwèide* 'manager': *yíge-rén* 'one person,' *nèige-mǎ* 'that horse.'
4. *Interjections* (Int) are words which do not enter into constructions with other words. They are used alone like 'huh!' and 'hello!' in English. Thus the interjection *ou* is used like 'oh!' in English to express surprise, sudden understanding, sudden recollection, etc.: *Ôu! Dwèile!* 'Oh! That's right!'
5. a. The verb *yǒu* 'to have' combined with *yìsz* 'meaning' forms the phrases *yǒu-yìsz* 'to be interesting' and *méiyǒu-yìsz* 'to be uninteresting.' Combined with *chýán* 'money' it forms the phrase (*hěn-*)*yǒu-chýán* 'to be rich.'
- b. The verb *méiyǒu* 'not have' when it occurs in a sentence which ends in the particle *le* means 'to have no longer': *Wō-méiyǒu-chýán-le* 'I no longer have any money.' If *méiyǒu* is the last word in the sentence the particle is added directly to it: *Wō-méiyǒule* 'I don't have any more.' This use of *le* will be discussed in Lesson 24.
6. The expression *dǔngle*, made up of *dǔng* 'to understand' plus the perfective particle *le* (see Lesson 6, Note 6b), is roughly equivalent to English 'I've got it now, Now I understand.'
7. The auxiliary verbs *hwèi* and *néng* are both translated as 'can, be able to' but have somewhat different meanings. *Hwèi* implies that one is able to do something because one has learned how or has acquired the ability. *Néng* implies that one is able to do something because one has the physical strength or ability or because the situation or conditions permit. Thus, *Tā-hwèi-kàn-shū* 'He is able to read' implies that this ability, which is not a natural one, has been acquired. On the other hand, *Tā-néng-kàn-shū* 'He is able to read' may imply, according to the context, that one's eyesight is good enough, that there is enough light, that one has the leisure, and so on.
8. Note the following useful patterns:
- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Shū shr-'shémma-yìsz? | What does <i>shū</i> mean? |
| Shū shr-'book' (-de-yìsz). | <i>Shū</i> means 'book.' |
| 'Book' Jūnggwo-hwà 'dzémma-shwō? | How do you say 'book' in Chinese? |
| 'Book' Jūnggwo-hwà shr-shū. | 'Book' is <i>shū</i> in Chinese. |

LESSON 12

SUBORDINATION OF STATIVE VERBS

Conversation: Martin learns a Chinese proverb

- M: 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide, wǒ-hái-yàu-mǎi-dūngsi, kěshr-méiyǒu-chyán-le. Yàushr-méiyǒu-chyán, 'dzěmma-néng mǎi-dūngsi-ne? Manager Chyán, I'd like to buy some more things, but I don't have any more money. If I don't have any money, how can I buy things?
- C: Nimen-lyǎngge-rén dōu-méiyǒu-chyán-le-ma? Are both of you out of money?
- M: Wǒ-syàndzài yíge-chyán yě-méiyǒule. I don't have even a cent now.
- W: Wǒ-kàn wǒ-hái-yǒu-'chyán-méiyǒu. . . . Ōu! Hái-yǒu, hái-yǒu. I'll see if I have any more money. Oh! I do have some more.
- M: Yǒu-dwōshau? How much do you have?
- W: Chyán-bushǎu. Hái-yǒu-èrshr-dwō-kwài-chyán-ne. Ōu! Budwèi! Sān-shrkwài-chyán. Quite a bit. I still have more than twenty dollars. Oh! I'm wrong! Thirty dollars.
- M: Nǐ-'néng-bunéng gěi-wǒ-shfkwài-chyán? Can you give me ten?
- W: Néng. I can.
- M: Syèsye. Thanks.
- C: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-buyàu-mǎi-jǐ-ma? Mr. Martin, wouldn't you like to buy some paper?
- M: Buyàu-mǎi-jǐ. Jǎnggwèide yǒu-jwōdz-méiyǒu? I don't want to buy any paper. Do you have any tables, manager?
- C: Jwōdz-hěn-dwō. Yǒu-dàde, yǒu-syǎude, yǒu-budà-busyǎude. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, yàu-dàde yàu-syǎude? Lots of tables. There are big ones, small ones, medium-sized ones. Mr. Martin, would you like a big one (or) a small one.
- M: Buyàu-dà-jwōdz, yàu-syǎude. Yǒu-hǎude-ma? I don't want a big one but a small one. Do you have a good one?
- C: Yǒu. Jèige-jwōdz hěn-hǎu, yě-budà. I have. This table is very good, and it isn't big either.
- M: Nèige-jwōdz 'dwōshau-chyán? How much for that table?
- C: Jèige-jwōdz sžshrkwài-chyán. This table is \$40.
- M: Tàì-gwèi-a. Too expensive.
- C: Bugwèi, hěn-jyàn. Jèige-jwōdz-hěn-hǎu. Wōmen-Jūnggwo-rén shwō: "Gwèide-bugwèi, jyànde-bujyàn." It's not expensive. It's very cheap. This table is very good. We Chinese say: "Expensive is not expensive, cheap is not cheap."
- M: 'Dzěmma-néng-shwō gwèide-dūngsi-bugwèi-ne? Sžshrkwài-chyán búshr-sžshrkwài-chyán-ma? How can one say that expensive things aren't expensive? \$40 is \$40, isn't it?

W:	'Gwèide-bugwèi' shr-'chyán-dwō, kěshr-dūngsi-hǎu'-de-yisz. 'Jyànde-bujyàn' shr-'chyán-budwō, kěshr-dūngsi-buhǎu.'	'Expensive is not expensive' means 'It costs a lot, but the thing is very good.'
M:	Wō-dūngle. Kěshr-wō-méiyōu sžshrkwài-chyán.	'Cheap is not cheap' means 'It doesn't cost much, but the thing is no good.'
C:	Nĭ-gěi-sānshrkwài-chyán déle.	I understand. But I don't have \$40.
M:	Wō-jĭ-yōu shĭkwài-chyán. 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nĭ-yōu-chyán. Nĭ-'néng-bunéng. . . .	Give (me) \$30 and that'll do.
W:	Hǎu, wō-gěi-nĭ èrshrkwài-chyán.	I have only \$10. Mr. Wáng, you have money. Can you. . . .
M:	'Chyán-Jānggwèide sānshrkwài-chyán wō-mǎi-nèige-jwōdz.	O.K. I'll give you \$20.
C:	Hǎu, wō-màigei-nĭ. 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nĭ-bumǎi-dūngsi-ma?	Manager Chyán, for \$30 I'll buy that table.
W:	'Dzēmna-néng-mǎi? Wō-syàndzài yige-chyán yě-méiyōule.	Fine, I'll sell it to you. Mr. Wáng, aren't you buying things?
		How can I? I don't have even a cent left now.

Vocabulary

1. syǎu	SV: be small	7. jyòu	AD: then, immediately
2. gwèi	SV: be expensive	8. yīnwei	SM: because
3. jyàn	SV: be cheap	9. yàushr	SM: if
4. dūngsi	N: (concrete) thing	10. kěshr	SM: but, however
5. jwōdz	N: table	11. swóyi, 'swóyĭ	SM: therefore, so
6. hái	AD: still, additionally	12. syàndzài	TE: now, at present
		13. ne	GP: <i>final particle</i> (see Note 6)

Substitution Tables

hěn-dwō	syānsheng	hěn-dwō	-de	syānsheng
syǎu	péngyou	hǎukàn		péngyou
hǎu	tàitai	hěn-hǎu		tàitai
dà	rén	bushǎu		rén

Drill I. Stative Verbs without de

1. hěn-dwō-rén	many people	6. hǎu-péngyou	good friends
2. dà-gwō	a big country	7. hǎu-rén	a nice person
3. syǎu-péngyou	little friend	8. syǎu-shū	a small book
4. hǎu-jwōdz	a good table	9. dà-jwōdz	a big table
5. hěn-dwō-dūngsi	many things	10. hǎu-dūngsi	good things

Drill II. Stative Verbs with de

1. hǎukànde-tàitai	a good-looking wife
2. bushǎude-rén	not a few people

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 3. hěn-dwōde-shū | many books |
| 4. hěn-mángde-rén | very busy people |
| 5. tài-syǎude-jwōdz | too small a table |
| 6. hěn-buhǎukànde-péngyou | a very ugly friend |
| 7. buhǎude-rén | a bad person |
| 8. budà-busyǎude-dūngsi | a medium-sized thing |
| 9. hěn-gwèide-shū | a very expensive book |
| 10. hěn-jyànde-dūngsi | very cheap things |

Drill III. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Hǎu-dūngsi dōu-gwèi-ma? | Are all good things expensive? |
| 2. Hǎu-dūngsi budōu-shr-gwèide. | Not all good things are expensive. |
| 3. Yàushr-nǐ-yǒu-chyán, nǐ-jyòu-mǎi-shémma? | What would you buy if you had money? |
| 4. Wǒ-yàushr-yǒu-chyán, wǒ-jyòu-mǎi yībēn-shū. | If I had money, I'd buy a book. |
| 5. Nǐ-yǒu-èrshr-'jīkwài-chyán? | You've twenty and how many dollars? |
| 6. Wǒ-yǒu-èrshr-'sānkwài-chyán. | I have \$23. |
| 7. Nǐ-syàndzài kàn-shū-ma? | Are you reading now? |
| 8. Wǒ-syàndzài bukàn-shū. | I'm not reading now. |
| 9. Nǐ-hái-yǒu-chyán-ma? | Do you have any more money? |
| 10. Wǒ-syàndzài yíge-chyán-yě-méi-yǒule. | Now I don't have even a cent left. |
| 11. Nǐ-yǒu-'dwōshau-Jūnggwo-shū-ne? | How many Chinese books <i>do</i> you have? |
| 12. Wǒ-yībēn-Jūnggwo-shū dōu-méiyǒu. | I don't have a single Chinese book. |
| 13. Nèige-rén búshr-Yínggwo-rén-ma? | Isn't that man an Englishman? |
| 14. Búshr. Tā-shr-Měiggwo-rén. | No. He's an American. |
| 15. Jèibēn-Jūnggwo-shū sānkwài-chyán. Nǐ-'mǎi-bumǎi? | This Chinese book is \$3. Will you buy it? |
| 16. Hǎu. Sānkwài-chyán wǒ-mǎi. | All right. For \$3 I'll buy it. |
| 17. Wúkwài-chyán tài-dwō. Sǎkwài-chyán nǐ-'mǎi-bumǎi? | \$5 is too much. Will you sell it for \$4? |
| 18. Nǐ-gěi-sǎkwài-wū déle. | Give me \$4.50 and that will be enough. |
| 19. Tā-búshr-yàu-mǎi-dūngsi-ma?¹ | Doesn't he want to buy things? |
| 20. Yàu-mǎi, kěshr-syàndzài tā-méiyǒu-chyán-le. | He wants to buy, but he doesn't have any more money now. |

Drill IV. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| *1. Dà-jwōdz dōu-hěn-gwèi. | Big tables are all very expensive. |
| *2. Hěn-dwō-rén buhwèi-kàn-shū. | Many people can't read. |
| *3. Tā-yàu-hǎukànde-tàitai. | He wants a good-looking wife. |
| *4. Nèi-shr-hěn-syǎude-jwōdz. | That is a very small table. |

1. See Lesson 10, note 8.

Drill IV (cont.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| *5. Jèi-yě-shr-hěn-hǎude. | This is also a very good one. |
| *6. Wǒ-syàndzài bunéng-kàn-bào. | I can't read the newspaper now. |
| *7. Yàushr-nǐ-méiyǒu-chyán, wǒ-jyòu-gěi-ni. | If you don't have any money, then I'll give you some. |
| *8. Tā-yībēn-shū yě-méiyǒu. | He doesn't have even one book. |
| 9. Tā-hwèi kàn-Jūnggwo-shū, kěshr-tā-buhwèi shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà. | He can read Chinese, but he can't speak it. |
| 10. Nèige-rén yǒu-wúshr-dwōge-péng-you. | That man has more than fifty friends. |
| 11. Yīnwei-jèibēn-shū méiyǒu-yìsz, swóyi-wǒ-buyàu-mǎi. | I don't want to buy this book because it's uninteresting. |
| 12. Jèige-dūngsi hěn-jyàn, swóyi-wǒ-néng-mǎi. | This thing is very cheap, so I can buy it. |
| 13. Nǐ-yàu-dàde-ma? | Do you want a big one? |
| 14. Hěn-dwōde-Jūnggwo-rén hěn-hǎu-kàn. | Many Chinese are very good-looking. |
| 15. Yàushr-buhwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà, 'dzemma-néng-kàn-Jūnggwo-shū-ne? | If one can't speak Chinese how can one read it? |

Drill V. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Yàushr-tā-gěi-wo, wǒ-jyòu-gěi-ni. | 12. Yàushr-wǒ-mǎi-lyǎngbēn-Jūnggwo-shū, wǒ-jyòu-gěi-nǐ-yībēn. |
| 2. Yǒu-hǎukànde, yǒu-buhǎukànde. | 13. Shr-dàde shr-syǎude? |
| 3. Dà-gwó yǒu-hěn-dwō-rén. | 14. Syàndzài-wǒ-buyàu. |
| 4. Mǎ-Syānsheng-shwō 'Wáng-Tàitai hěn-hǎukàn. | 15. Nèige-Rbēn-rén yībēn-shū yě-méiyǒu. |
| 5. Hěn-dwō-Měigwo-rén yàu-mǎi-Jūnggwo-shū. | 16. Jūnggwo méiyǒu-gwówáng. |
| 6. Rbēn shr-syǎu-gwó. Jūnggwo shr-dà-gwó. | 17. Yīnwei-tā-búshr-hǎu-rén, swóyi-wǒ-buyàu-gěi-tā-jèige-dūngsi. |
| 7. Dàde budōu-shr-gāude. | 18. Nèi-lyǎngge-rén-dōu-shwō 'Wáng-Tàitai hěn-hǎukàn. |
| 8. Wǒ-yíge-pényou yě-méiyǒu. | 19. Nèige-Jūnggwo-jwōdz buhěn-jyàn. |
| 9. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng syàndzài-méiyǒu-chyán-le. | 20. Yàushr-tā-syàndzài-méiyǒu-chyán, nǐ-'néng-bunéng gěi-tā-shfkwài-chyán? |
| 10. 'Wáng-Syānsheng shr-Mǎ-Syānshengde-hǎu-pényou. | |
| 11. Tāmen-budōu-shr-Yīnggwo-rén. | |

NOTES

- Some compound stative verbs are made by putting the stative verb *hǎu* 'good' before other verbs: *hǎukàn* 'good-looking.'
- a. A stative verb of only one syllable and not modified by an adverb is used without *de* before a noun: *hǎu-shū* 'a good book,' *dà-gwó* 'a great country.'

- b. A compound stative verb is most often followed by *de* before a noun: *hǎukànde-rén* 'a good-looking person.'
- c. A stative verb preceded by an adverb is nearly always followed by *de* before a noun: *hěn-hǎude-shū* 'a very good book.'
- d. The stative verbs *dwō* 'many, much' and *shǎu* 'few, little' are always preceded by an adverb before a noun: *hěn-dwōde-rén* 'very many people,' *hěn-shǎude-rén* 'very few people.'
- e. The stative verb *dwō* 'many, much' and the adverb which precedes it are often used without *de* before a noun: *hěn-dwōde-rén*, *hěn-dwō-rén* 'very many people.'
- f. The nouns which ordinarily follow stative verbs are often omitted. When these nouns are not expressed the particle *de* always follows the stative verb: *hěn-hǎude* 'a very good one,' *dàde* 'a big one.'
3. *Time-expressions* (TE) are used before or after the subject. They may serve as modifiers, and be followed by the subordinating particle *de*. They express time and are similar in meaning, though not in position, to expressions like 'today,' 'next year,' 'at present' in English: *Syàndzài-wō-buyàu*, *Wō-syàndzài-buyàu* 'I don't want it now,' *syàndzàide-gwówáng* 'the present king.'
4. *Sentence modifiers* (SM) are words which come before or after the subject but are never followed by the subordinating particle *de*. They refer to the sentence as a whole and are similar to expressions like 'suddenly,' 'of course,' 'if' in English. Some sentence modifiers are like conjunctions in English. They generally appear in the first clause in the sentence and are paired with another sentence modifier or adverb in the following clause. Thus, *yàushr* 'if' is frequently paired with the adverb *jyòu* 'then': *Yàushr-nǐ-méiyǒu-chyán* (or *Nǐ-yàushr-méiyǒu-chyán*), *wō-jyòu-gěi-nǐ* 'If you don't have any money, then I'll give you some.' Similarly, *yīnwei* 'because' is frequently paired with the sentence modifier *swóyi* 'therefore': *Yīnwei-nǐ-gěi-tā-chyán*, *swóyi-tā-néng-mǎi-dūngsi* 'Because you give him money, therefore he is able to buy things.'
5. a. The object of a verb is often shifted to a position before the verb for greater emphasis, much as we say in English 'This I like, that I don't': *Jèige wō-buyàu* 'This one I don't want, I don't want this one.'
- b. The adverbs *yě* 'also' and *dōu* 'all' are translated as 'even' when used with a verb whose object has been placed before the verb: *Wō-yìběn-shū yě-buyàu*, *wō-yìběn-shū dōu-buyàu* 'I one book even don't want, I don't want even one book.'
- c. The expression *yíge-chyán*, literally 'one piece of money,' is used like English 'farthing' in the sentence 'He doesn't have a farthing': *Tā-yíge-chyán-dōu-méiyǒu* 'He one piece of money even doesn't have, He doesn't have a cent.' In earlier days, a coin existed called *yíge-chyán*, known in English as 'a cash.'
6. The final particle *ne* is added to a sentence to mark a continuing state of affairs. This may often express surprise, insistence, annoyance, and other emotions. It is especially common after sentences which use the adverb *hái* 'still' or contain question-words like *dzěmma?* 'how? how come?': *Tā-hái-buhwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà-ne*, 'He still doesn't know how to speak Chinese,' *Tā-'dzěmma-hái-buhwèi-ne?* 'Why is he still unable to?'

LESSON 13

SUBORDINATION OF NON-STATIVE VERBS

Conversation: Martin learns a guerrilla song

- M: 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide, jèi-shr-
'shémma-shū? Manager Chyán, what book is this?
- C: Nèi-shr-hěn-hǎude-shū. Mǎi-nèi-
běn-shūde-rén dōu-shwō hěn-yǒu-
yìsz. Nǐ-yào-buyàu-mǎi? That is a very nice book. The people who
buy that book all say that it's very inter-
esting. Do you want to buy it?
- W: Nèiběn-shū búshr-'Jūnggwo-shū-
ma? Wǒ-pà-'Mǎ-Syānsheng hái-
buhwèi-kàn-Jūnggwo-shū-ne. Isn't that book a Chinese book? I'm
afraid Mr. Martin can't read Chinese yet.
- C: Nèiběn-'shì-Jūnggwo-shū, kěshr-
yǒu-hěn-dwō-gēr. Buhwèi-kàn-Jūng-
gwo-shūde-rén yě-néng-chàng. That one is a Chinese book, but it has a
lot of songs. People who can't read Chi-
nese can also sing them.
- M: Jèiběn-shū yǒu-'shémma-gēr? What songs does this book have?
- C: Yǒu-'Jūnggwo-gēr. It has Chinese songs.
- M: Yǒu-hǎutíngde-'gēr-méiyóu? Does it have any melodious songs?
- C: Yǒu. Nǐmen-hwèi-chàng-gēr-ma? It has. Can you sing? This song is very
'Jèige-gēr hěn-hǎu. good.
- M: 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nǐ-hwèi-chàng-
gēr-ma? Mr. Wáng, can you sing?
- W: Wǒ-buhěn-hwèi-chàng-gēr. I can't sing very well.
- M: Nǐ-chàng-jèige-gēr, 'haǔ-buhǎu? How about singing this song?
- W: Hǎu. Wǒ-chàng . . . Nǐ-tīng: All right. I'll sing it . . . Listen:
Shéi-yào-pà-nèige-dà-láuhǔ,
 big bad wolf,
 big bad wolf?
Shéi-yào-pà-nèige-dà-láuhǔ? Who's afraid of the big bad wolf?
 la la la la la.
Wǒmen-bupà-nèige-dà-láuhǔ,
 big bad wolf,
 big bad wolf.
Wǒmen-bupà-nèige-dà-láuhǔ, We're not afraid of the big bad wolf,
 la la la la la.
 la la la la la.
- M: Ōu! Nèi-'búshr-Jūnggwo-gēr. Shr-
Měigwode. Oh! That isn't a Chinese song. It's
American.
- W: Běnlái-shr-Měigwo-rén-syède, kěshr-
yǐnwei-jèige-gēr hěn-hǎutíng, swóyi-
Jūnggwo-rén yě-chàng. It was originally written by an American,
but this song is very nice, and so Chinese
also sing it.

1. For metrical reasons the Chinese version uses the two-syllable word *láuhǔ* 'tiger' in place of the one-syllable word for 'wolf.' The phrase *shéi-yào-pà* for 'who's afraid?' is close to English 'who would be afraid? who'd be afraid?'

- C: Měigwo-rén syàndzài hái-chàng- jèige-gēr-ma? Do Americans still sing this song now?
- M: Hái-chàng. Yes.
- W: Jūnggwo-yóujidwèi yě-chàng-jèige-gēr, kěshr-tāmen-bushwō -'dà-láuhǔ.' The Chinese guerrillas also sing this song, but they don't say *dà láuhǔ*.
- M: Tāmen-'dzēm-ma-chàng-ne? How do they sing it?
- W: Wǒ-chàng . . . Nǐ-tīng: I'll sing it. . . . Listen:
Shéi-yàu-pà-nèige-syǎu-Ābēn, Who's afraid of little Japan,
syǎu-Ābēn, little Japan,
syǎu-Ābēn? little Japan?
Shéi-yàu-pà-nèige-syǎu-Ābēn? Who's afraid of little Japan?
la-la-la-la-la. la la la la la.
- Wǒmen-bupà-nèige-syǎu-Ābēn, We're not afraid of little Japan,
syǎu-Ābēn, little Japan,
syǎu-Ābēn. little Japan.
- Wǒmen-bupà-nèige-syǎu-Ābēn, We're not afraid of little Japan,
la-la-la-la-la. la la la la la.
- M: 'Hěn-hǎu! 'Hěn-hǎu! Very good! Very good!

Vocabulary

1. chàng	TV: sing	8. yóujidwèi	N: guerrilla force, guerrillas (<i>yóu</i> 'travel' plus <i>jǐ</i> 'attack' plus <i>dwèi</i> 'detachment')
2. syě	TV: write		
3. tīng	TV: listen (to)		
4. pà	TV: fear, be afraid	9. shéi, shwéi?	PR: who?
5. lǎu	SV: be old	10. běnlái	TE: originally (<i>běn</i> 'origin' plus <i>lái</i> 'come')
6. láuhǔ, láuhu	N: tiger (<i>lǎu</i> 'old' plus <i>hǔ</i> 'tiger')		
7. gēr, gē	N: song		

Substitution Tables

gěi-nǐ-chyán	-de	rén	Mǎ-Syānsheng-yàu-mǎi	-de	dūngsi
yàu-mǎi-shū			tā-gěi-nǐ		jwōdz
chàng-gēr			wǒ-yàu		mǎ
hwèi-syě-dz			syānsheng-mǎi		shū
mǎi-dūngsi			nèige-rén-yàu		bàu

Drill I. Subordinated Clauses

1. chàng-gērde-rén people who sing
2. shwō-hwàde-nèige-tàitai the (married) woman who is talking
3. Wáng-Syānsheng-syède-dz characters which Mr. Wáng wrote

Drill I (cont.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. budǔng-Jǔnggwo-hwàde-rén | people who don't understand Chinese |
| 5. yàu-mǎi-shūde-nèige-rén | the man who wants to buy the books |
| 6. gěi-tā-chyánde-rén | people who give him money |
| 7. wǒ-chàngde-gēr | the song(s) which I'm singing |
| 8. tā-gěi-níde-chyán | the money which he gives you |
| 9. nèige-Měigwo-rén-shwōde-hwà | the words which that American speaks |
| 10. syānsheng-gěi-tāde-dǔngsi | the things which the gentleman gives to him |
| 11. wǒ-syàndzài-yàu-mǎide-nèiběn-shū | the book which I want to buy now |
| 12. níde-pényou-syēde-dǔ | the characters which your friend writes |
| 13. méiyǒu-chyánde-rén | people who don't have money |
| 14. Chyán-Jǎnggwèide-gěi-níde-nèige-bào | the newspaper which Manager Chyán gave you |
| 15. yàu-gěi-tā-chyánde-nèige-rén | the person who wants to give him money |

Drill II. The Passive Construction

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Jèi-shr-'wǒ-syēde. | This was written by me. |
| 2. Nèige-jwōdz shr-'tā-mǎide. | That table was bought by him. |
| 3. Jèige-gēr shr-'shéi-chàngde? | By whom was this song sung? |
| 4. Jèiběn-shū búshr-'Wáng-Syānsheng syēde. | This book was not written by Mr. Wáng. |
| 5. Nèige-dǔngsi yě-shr-'tā-mǎide-ma? | Was that thing also bought by him? |

Drill III. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nèige-Měigwo-rén-shr-shéi? | Who is that American? |
| 2. Nèige-Měigwo-rén shr-wōde-lǎu-pényou. | That American is an old friend of mine. |
| 3. Nèige-dǔ shr-'shéi-syēde? | By whom was that character written? |
| 4. Nèige-dǔ shr-'Mǎ-Syānsheng-syēde. | That character was written by Mr. Martin. |
| 5. Tā-chàngde shr-'shémma-gēr? | What songs is he singing?
[What he sings are what songs?] |
| 6. Tā-chàngde dōu-shr-'Jǔnggwo-gēr. | He's singing all Chinese songs. |
| 7. Tā-yàu-'dwōshau-chyán-ne? | How much money does he want? |
| 8. Tā-shwō ní-gěi-wǔkwài-chyán tā-jyòu-màigei-ni. | He says he'll sell it to you for \$5. |
| 9. Jǔnggwode-yóujidwèi dōu-shr-Jǔnggwo-rén-ma? | Are the guerrillas of China all Chinese? |
| 10. Jǔnggwode-yóujidwèi dōu-shr-Jǔnggwo-rén. | The guerrillas of China are all Chinese. |
| 11. Nèige-lǎu-rén shwō-shémma? | What does that old man say? |
| 12. Jèige-lǎu-rén-shwō tā-méiyǒu-dà-jwōdz, swóyi-bunéng-gěi-ni. Ní-yàu-buyàu-syǎude? | This old man says he doesn't have any big tables, so he can't give you any. Do you want any small ones? |

Drill III (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 13. Nímen-syàndzài yàu-buyàu-chàng-gēr? | Do you want to sing now? |
| 14. Syàndzài-buyàu. Wōmen-dōu-tài-lèi. | We don't want to now. We're all too tired. |
| 15. Nǐ-yàu-tīng-tā-chàng-gēr-ma? | Do you want to hear him sing? |
| 16. Buyàu. Tā-chàngde-gēr hěn-bu-hǎutīng. | No. The songs he sings are very bad [bad listening]. |
| 17. 'Shéi-hwèi-shwō-Yīnggwo-hwà? | Who can speak English? |
| 18. Nèi-lyǎngge-rén-dōu-shwō tāmen-hwèi-shwō-Yīnggwo-hwà. | Those two men both say they can speak English. |
| 19. Nǐ-yàu-mǎide-nèiběn-shū 'dwōshau-chyán? | How much is the book you want to buy? |
| 20. Wō-yàu-mǎide-jèiběn-shū shr-yíkwài-líng-wǔ. | The book I want to buy is \$1.05. |

Drill IV. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|---|
| *1. Wǒ-budǔng-tā-shwōde-hwà. | I don't understand what he is saying. |
| *2. Yǒu-chyánde-rén 'dwō-budwō? | Are there many rich people? |
| *3. Jèi-shr-hěn-yǒu-yìszde-shū. | This is a very interesting book. |
| *4. Chàng-gēde-rén shr-shéi? | Who is the man who is singing? |
| *5. Wǒ-gěi-tāde-chyán budwō. | The money I'm giving him isn't much. |
| *6. Jèiběn-shū shr-'shéi-syēde? | By whom was this book written? |
| 7. Nèige-hěn-lǎude-láuhǔ hěn-dà. | That old tiger is very big. |
| 8. Běnlái-Ābēn-rén bupà-Jūnggwo-yóu-jidwèi. | Originally the Japanese were not afraid of Chinese guerrillas. |
| 9. 'Shéi-hwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà? | Who can speak Chinese? |
| 10. Hwèi-kàn-Jūnggwo-shūde-rén hěn-shǎu. | Very few people can read Chinese. |
| 11. Wǒ-buyàu-tīng-tā-chàng-gēr. | I don't want to listen to him sing. |
| 12. Yàushr-ní-bugěi-jǎnggwèide-chyán, tā-jyòu-bumàigei-nǐ-dūngsi. | If you don't give the manager money, then he won't sell you things. |
| 13. Tā-syē-dz. | He is writing characters. |
| 14. Nèige-rén shr-shéi? | Who is that man? |
| 15. Yīnwei-wǒ-méiyǒu-chyán, swóyi-bunéng-mǎi-jèige-dūngsi. | Since I don't have any money, I can't buy this thing. |

Drill V. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng 'búshr-yǒu-chyánde-rén. | 6. Tā-mǎide-dūngsi buhěn-gwèi. |
| 2. Méiyǒu-bupà-láuhūde-rén. | 7. Mǎ-Syānsheng-shwō chàng-gēde-rén dōu-shr-tāde-péngyou. |
| 3. Jèiběn-shū búshr-'tā-syēde-ma? | 8. Tā-gěi-jǎnggwèide wúshr-dwōkwài-chyán. |
| 4. Nèige-hěn-gāude-rén shr-shéi? | 9. Wáng-Syānsheng-syēde-dz hěn-hǎu-kàn. |
| 5. Hwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwàde-rén bushǎu. | |

Drill V (cont.)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 10. Tā-shwō yàu-mǎi-mǎide-nèige-rén méiyǒu-chyán. | 15. Tā-gěi-nǐde-chyán 'búshr-tāde. |
| 11. Nèige-Jūnggwo-rén shr-wǒ-syān-sheng. | 16. Wǒ-yàu-mǎide-shū shr-bākwài-sān-máu-èrfēn-chyán. |
| 12. Wáng-Syānsheng-kànde-nèiběn-shū hěn-yǒu-yisz. | 17. Jèi-lyǎngběn-shū dōu-shr-'tā-syēde. |
| 13. Wǒ-yàu-mǎi-shū, kěshr-méiyǒu-chyán. | 18. Jūnggwo-yóujidwèi hwèi-chàng-hěn-hǎutíngde-gēr. |
| 14. Yàushr-nǐ-péngyou buhwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà, tā-'dzěmma-néng-chàng-Jūnggwo-gēr-ne? | 19. Di-yíge-rén shr-wǒ-péngyou. |
| | 20. Wǒ-hěn-máng, swóyi-syàndzài wǒ-bunéng-chàng-gēr. |

NOTES

1. a. A non-stative verb subordinated to a noun is always followed by the particle *de*. The resulting phrase generally translates as a relative clause. When it is desired to specify the number of the noun, a specifying expression (Lesson 10, Note 5) is included.
- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| bupàde-rén | people who do not fear |
| pà-láuhūde-rén | people who fear tigers |
| gěi-nǐ-chyánde-rén | people who give you money |
| buyàu-mǎi-shūde-rén | people who don't want to buy books |
| pà-rénde-mǎ | the horse which fears people |
| wǒ-pàde-rén | the people whom I fear |
| wǒ-pàde-mǎ | the horse which I fear |
| wǒ-gěi-nǐde-chyán | the money which I give you |
| wǒ-yàu-mǎide-shū | the book which I want to buy |
- b. The position of the specifier determines whether the subordinate expression is restrictive or non-restrictive. For example:
- non-restrictive: *nèige-kàn-shūde-rén* 'that man, who (incidentally) is reading a book, . . .'
- restrictive: *kàn-shūde-nèige-rén* 'the man who (is distinguished from the rest by the fact that he) is reading a book . . .'
2. a. The noun following *de* after a non-stative verb is sometimes omitted, as in *wǒ-yàu-mǎide* '(the one) which I want to buy,' *Hwèi-shwō-Yínggwo-hwàde budwō* '(Those) who can speak English aren't many.'
- b. Some occupational designations, such as *jǎnggwèide* 'manager,' are made up of a verb, its object, and the particle *de* without a following noun. The word *jǎnggwèide* includes the verb *jǎng* 'to manage' and its object *gwèi* 'a till' plus the particle *de*, so that it literally means 'the one who manages the till.' Such terms are similar to English 'bookseller,' 'storekeeper,' 'shoemaker,' but whereas English says *book-sell-er* Chinese has the order *sell-book-er*.
- c. A special case of *de* preceded by a non-stative verb but not followed by a noun is seen in sentences like *Jèi-shr-'wǒ-mǎide* 'This was bought by me.' Here we have *jèi* 'this' as subject of the main verb *shr* 'is'; on the other side of *shr* is the phrase

wō-mǎide 'the one which I bought.' Literally the whole sentence seems to be 'This is (the one) which I bought,' but actually it means 'This was bought by me,' with *mǎi*, the verb before *de*, being translated as a past tense passive and *wō*, the subject of *mǎi*, as the agent. Other examples: *Nèige-dà búshr-'tā-syēde* 'That character wasn't written by him,' *Jèige-jwōdz shr-'shéi-mǎide?* 'By whom was this table bought?'

LESSON 14

PLACE-WORDS AND LOCATION

Conversation: Martin locates his purchases

- M: 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide, wō-mǎide-jwōdz dzài-nǎr? Hái-dzài-jèr-ma? Manager Chyán, where is the table I bought? Is it still here?
C: Búdzai-jèr. It's not here.
M: Dzài-nǎr? Búdzai-'pùdzli-ma? Where is it? Isn't it in the store?
C: Búdzai-pùdz-lítou. Dzài-wàitou. It's not inside the store. It's outside.
M: Dzài-pùdz-chyántou-ma? Is it in front of the store?
C: Búdzai-chyántou. Dzài-pùdz-hòutou. It's not in front. It is in back of the store.
M: Dzài-pùdz-hòutoude-jwōdz dōu-shr-dàde. Wōde-syǎu-jwōdz 'búdzai-wàitou. The tables in back of the store are all big ones. My little table isn't outside.
C: Níde-syǎu-jwōdz 'dzài-wàitou. Your little table is outside. It's in front of that big table.
M: Dwèile, dwèile. Wō-mǎide-shū yě-dzài-nèr-ma? You're right. Are the books that I bought also there?
C: Nǐ-mǎide-shū búdzai-nèr. Dōu-dzài-pùdzli, dzài-nèige-jwōdzshang. The books you bought aren't there. All of them are in the store on that table.
M: Wō-mǎide-bàu yě-dzài-nèr-ma? Is the newspaper I bought also there?
C: Nǐ-mǎide-bàu yě-dzài-nèige-jwōdzshang, dzài-nèiběn-dà-shū-shàngtou. The paper you bought is also on that table, on top of that big book.
M: Nèige-jwōdzshangde-shū búshr-wōde. The books on that table aren't mine.
C: 'Búshr-nèige-jwōdz. Shr-jèige-'dà-jwōdz. Jèige-jwōdzshangde-shū búshr-níde-ma? It's not that table. It's this big table. Aren't the books on this table yours?
M: Búshr-wōde. Jèige-jwōdzshangde-shū dōu-shr-Jūnggwo-shū. They're not mine. All the books on this table are Chinese books.
C: Budōu-shr-Jūnggwo-shū. Shàng-toude shr-Jūnggwo-shū, kěshr syà-toude shr-Yīnggwo-shū. They're not all Chinese books. The top ones are Chinese books, but the bottom ones are English books.
M: Dwèile. Wō-mǎide-bàu yě-dzài-jèr. Wōmen-lyǎngge-rén-mǎide-dūngsi That's right. The paper I bought is also here. The things that both of us bought are all here.

Vocabulary

1. dzài	TV: occupy, be at	7. lítou	PW: inside
2. pùdz	N: store	8. wàitou	PW: outside
3. wàigwo	PW: foreign country, foreign (wài 'outside' plus gwó 'country')	9. shàngtou	PW: top
4. jèr	PW: here	10. syàtou	PW: bottom
5. nèr	PW: there	11. chyántou	PW: front
6. nǎr?	PW: where?	12. hòutou	PW: rear

Substitution Tables

wǒ	dzài	jèr	dzài	jwōdz	shàngtou
nǐ		nèr		shū	syàtou
tā		nǎr		pùdz	chyántou
wǒmen		lítou		mǎ	hòutou
nǐmen		wàitou			

Drill I. Simple Sentences

1. Wǒ-dzài-lítou.	I'm inside.	6. Tā-dzài-syàtou.	He is below.
2. Tā-dzài-wàitou.	He's outside.	7. Wǒ-dzài-jèr.	I am here.
3. Nǐ-dzài-chyántou.	You're in front.	8. Nǐ-dzài-nèr.	You are there.
4. Tā-dzài-hòutou.	He is behind.	9. Tā-dzài-nǎr?	Where is he?
5. Wǒ-dzài-shàngtou	I am on top.	10. Tā-dzài-wàigwo.	He is abroad.

Drill II. Nouns Subordinated to Place-Words

1. Tā-dzài-pùdz-lítou.	He is inside the store.
2. Tā-dzài-pùdzli.	He is in the store.
3. Shū-dzài-jwōdz-shàngtou.	The book is on top of the table.
4. Shū-dzài-jwōdzshang.	The book is on the table.
5. Rén-dzài-pùdz-wàitou.	The people are outside the store.
6. Bào-dzài-jwōdz-syàtou.	The newspaper is underneath the table.
7. Tā-dzài-pùdz-chyántou.	He is in front of the store.
8. Láu-hǔ-dzài-nèige-mǎ-hòutou.	The tiger is behind that horse.

Drill III. Place-Words Subordinated to Nouns

1. dzài-pùdz-lítoude-rén	the people who are inside the store
2. pùdz-lítoude-rén	the people who are in the store
3. shū-shàngtoude-bào	the newspaper on the book
4. dzài-jwōdzshangde-shū	the book which is on the table
5. jèrde-ren	the people here
6. wàitoude-mǎ	the horses outside
7. dzài-chyántoude-rén	the man in front
8. hòutoude-mǎ	the rear horse
9. pùdzlide-jwōdz	the tables in the store
10. jwōdzshangde-chyán	the money on the table

Drill IV. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. 'Shéi-dzài-wàitou? | Who's outside? |
| 2. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide dzài-wàitou. | Manager Chyán is outside. |
| 3. Tāmen-dōu-dzài-lítou-ma? | Are they all inside? |
| 4. Budōu-dzài-lítou. | They are not all inside. |
| 5. Wǒ-gěi-nǐde-shū dzài-nǎr? | Where is the book I gave you? |
| 6. Nǐ-gěi-wǒde-shū dzài-nèige-syǎu-jwōdzshang. | The book you gave me is on that small table. |
| 7. Nǐde-péngyou hái-dzài-Yīnggwo-ma? | Is your friend still in England? |
| 8. Búdai-Yīnggwo. Tā-syàndzài dzài-Měigwo. | He's not in England. He's now in America. |
| 9. Nèige-pùdzlide-rén shr-shéi? | Who are the people in that store? |
| 10. Nèige-pùdzlide-rén dōu-shr-Āběn-rén. | The people in that store are all Japanese. |
| 11. Hwèi-shwō-Yīnggwo-hwàde-rén dzài-nǎr? | Where are the people who can speak English? |
| 12. Hwèi-shwō-Yīnggwo-hwàde-rén dōu-dzài-hòutou. | The people who can speak English are all in the rear. |
| 13. Chyántoude-rén búshr-wàigwo-rén-ma? | Isn't the man in front a foreigner? |
| 14. Búshr. Tā-'yě-shr-Jūnggwo-rén. | No. He's Chinese too. |
| 15. Wǒ-mǎide-jǐ dzài-nǎr? | Where is the paper I bought? |
| 16. Nǐ-mǎide-jǐ dzài-nèige-dà-jwōdzshàngtou. | The paper you bought is on that big table. |
| 17. Jwōdzshangde-chyán búshr-nǐde-ma? | Isn't the money on the table yours? |
| 18. 'Búshr-wǒde. Shr-'Mǎ-Syānshengde. | It's not mine. It's Mr. Martin's. |
| 19. Jǎnggwèide dzài-nǎr? | Where is the manager? |
| 20. Tā-dzài-pùdzli. | He's in the store. |

Drill V. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|--|
| *1. Nǐ-dzài-nǎr? | Where are you? |
| *2. Shū-dzài-jwōdzshang. | The book is on the table. |
| *3. Rén-dōu-dzài-wàitou. | The people are all outside. |
| *4. Tā-'yě-dzài-pùdzli. | He's in the store too. |
| *5. Jwōdzshangde-shū dōu-shr-'wàigwo-shū. | The books on the table are all foreign books. |
| *6. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng shr-wàigwo-rén. | Mr. Martin is a foreigner. |
| 7. 'Wáng-Syānsheng syàndzài-dzài-nǎr? | Where is Mr. Wáng now? |
| 8. Nǐ-mǎide-bào dzài-nèige-syǎu-jwōdzsyàtou. | The newspaper you bought is under that little table. |
| 9. 'Mǎ-Syānshengdzài-chyántou, 'Wáng Syānsheng dzài-hòutou. | Mr. Martin is in front and Mr. Wáng behind. |
| 10. Tā-shwō wǒde-chyán-búdai-jèr. | He says my money isn't here. |
| 11. Pùdz-wàitoude-rén búshr-wǒde-péngyou. | The man outside the store isn't my friend. |

Drill V (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 12. Chyántoude-rén hěn-dà, hòutoude-rén hěn-syǎu. | The front man is very big, the rear man is very small. |
| 13. Nǐde-tàitai hái-dzài-Měigwo-ma? | Is your wife still in America? |
| 14. Dzài-dà-jwōdzshangde-shū shì-bushr-'Mǎ-Syānshengde? | Is the book on the big table Mr. Martin's? |
| 15. Nèi-lyǎngge-Āběn-rén hái-dzài-wàitou-ne. | Those two Japanese are still outside. |

Drill VI. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. 'Shéi-dzài-wàitou? | 12. Hòutoude-rén shr-shéi? |
| 2. Pùdz-lítoude-rén dōu-shr-Jūnggwo-rén. | 13. Nèige-wàigwo-rén yàu-mǎi-dūngsi, kěshr-tā-buhwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà. |
| 3. Mǎ-Syānshengde-shū dzài-nǎr? | 14. Yàushr-tā-búdzai-nèr, wō-'dzēmmanéng-gěi-ta-ne? |
| 4. Hwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwàde-rén dzài-jèr. | 15. 'Wáng-Tàitai hái-dzài-wàigwo. |
| 5. Tā-syēde-shū dzài-nèige-jwōdzshang. | 16. Jwōdzshangde-shū shr-nǐde-ma? |
| 6. Jèi-búshr-wōde, swóyi-wō-bunéng-gěi-ni. | 17. Yóujidwèi hái-dzài-jèr-ma? |
| 7. Chàng-gēde-rén hái-dzài-jèr-ma? | 18. Tā-búdzai-jèr, swóyi-tā-bunéng-kàn-nǐmen. |
| 8. Dà-jwōdz dzài-nèige-syǎu-jwōdz-chyántou. | 19. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng dzài-nèige-syǎu-pùdzli. |
| 9. Tā-shwō wōde-shū-dzài-jwōdzshang. | 20. Nǐ-mǎide-dūngsi dōu-dzài-nèige-dà-jwōdz-shàngtou. |
| 10. Yóujidwèi syàndzài-dzài-nǎr? | |
| 11. Nǐ-tàitai búdzai-jèr-ma? | |

Drill VII. Sentence Pyramid¹

1. Dzài-shàngtou.
2. Shū dzài-shàngtou.
3. Shū dzài-jwōdz-shàngtou.
4. Syānshengde-shū dzài-jwōdz-shàngtou.
5. Mǎ-Syānshengde-shū dzài-jwōdz-shàngtou.
6. Mǎ-Syānsheng-mǎide-shū dzài-jwōdz-shàngtou.
7. Mǎ-Syānsheng-yàu-mǎide-shū dzài-jwōdz-shàngtou.
8. Mǎ-Syānsheng-yàu-mǎide-shū dzài-nèige-jwōdz-shàngtou.
9. Mǎ-Syānsheng-yàu-mǎide-shū dzài-nèige-dà-jwōdz-shàngtou.
10. Mǎ-Syānsheng-yàu-mǎide-shū dzài-nèige-hěn-dàde-jwōdz-shàngtou.
11. Mǎ-Syānsheng-yàu-mǎide-shū yě-dzài-nèige-hěn-dàde-jwōdz-shàngtou.
12. Mǎ-Syānsheng-yàu-mǎide-shū syàndzài yě-dzài-nèige-hěn-dàde-jwōdz-shàngtou.
13. Mǎ-Syānsheng-yàu-mǎide-shū syàndzài yě-dzài-nèige-hěn-dàde-jwōdz-shàngtou-ma?

NOTES

1. a. To state that a thing (N) is located at such-and-such a place (P), Chinese uses the construction *N dzài P* 'N is at P': *Shū dzài-jèr* 'The book is here,' *Nèiběn-shū dzài-shàngtou* 'That book is on top,' *Wō-mǎide-shū búdzai-jèr*. 'The book which I bought isn't here.' In this construction the thing talked about is always something definite; in English it is preceded by identifying words like *the, this, my*.

1. Go through these sentences several times, noting carefully the position and use of the new words (shown by italics) in each sentence.

- b. When location is expressed in a relative clause, as in 'the book which is on the table,' the verb *dzài* 'to be at' is often omitted in Chinese: *dzài-shàngtoude-shū*, *shàngtoude-shū* 'the book which is on top, the book on top.'
- c. The verb *dzài* generally becomes *búdzai* in the negative.
2. a. Nouns precede place-words without the particle *de* in between: *fwōdz-shàngtou* 'the table top, the top of the table,' *Shū dzài-fwōdz-shàngtou* 'The book is on top of the table,' *Rén dzài-pùdz-wàitou* 'The people are outside the store.'
- b. When the place-words *lītou* 'inside' and *shàngtou* 'top' come after a noun, they often are abbreviated to *li* and *shang*. They are then tacked onto the preceding noun: *fwōdzshang* 'the top of the table,' *Shū dzài-fwōdzshang* 'The book is on top of the table,' *Rén dzài-pùdzli* 'The people are in the store.'
3. a. A place-word coming before a noun is generally followed by the particle *de*; the place-word is sometimes preceded by the verb *dzài* 'to be at': *lītoude-rén*, *dzài-lītoude-rén* 'the people who are inside.' We have already mentioned this in Note 1b.
- b. Place-words are subordinated to nouns without an intervening *de* in more or less set phrases. We shall list such phrases in the vocabularies: *wàigwo* 'outside-country, a foreign country.'
4. The Pekingese place-words *jèr* 'here,' *nèr* 'there,' and *nǎr?* 'where?' appear respectively as *jèli*, *nàli*, and *nǎli* in their non-Pekingese forms.
5. The suffixes *tu*, *dz*, and *r* indicate that with rare exceptions the words of which they form part are some form of substantive, that is a noun, measure, place-word, or time-expression.

LESSON 15

PLACE-WORDS AND EXISTENCE

Conversation: Martin learns of China's beauty spots

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| M: | 'Wáng-Syānsheng, Jūngwo yōu-méiyōu-láuhǔ? | Mr. Wáng, are there any tigers in China? |
| W: | Jūngwo méiyōu-láuhǔ. | There aren't any tigers in China. |
| C: | Yōu, yōu! | Yes, there are! |
| W: | 'Nǎr-yōu-láuhǔ? | Where are there any tigers? |
| C: | Jèr-méiyōu, kěshr-Dūngsānshēng-shānli yōu-láuhǔ. | There aren't any here, but there are some tigers in the mountains of Manchuria. |
| M: | Láuhǔ 'dwō-budwō? | Are there many tigers? |
| C: | Budwō. Kěshr nèrde-rén dōu-pà-láuhǔ. | Not many. But the people there are all afraid of the tigers. |
| W: | Dwèile. Wō-Dūngsānshēngde-péng-you-shwō nèrde-Rběn-rén hěn-pà-nèige-difang. | That's right. My Manchurian friends say the Japanese there are very much afraid of that place. |
| M: | Tāmen-yě-pà-láuhǔ-ma? | Are they afraid of the tigers too? |
| W: | Bupà-láuhǔ. | They're not afraid of the tigers. |
| M: | Pà-shémma? | What are they afraid of? |

- W: Rbēn-rén hēn-pà-shānlide-Jūng-gwo-yóujidwèi.
C: Dwèile.
W: Dūngsānshēngde-chéngli yě-yóu-yóujidwèi, kěshr-syāndzài shānlide-yóujidwèi dzwèi-dwō.
C: Wō-jèr-yōu-yibēn-hēn-hǎude-shū. Shūshang-shwōde-shr Dūngsānshēng shémma-difang yōu-yóujidwèi, shémma-difang hǎukàn, shéma-difang . . .
M: Dūngsānshēng yōu-'shémma-hǎukānde-difang?
C: Shūshang-shwō Dūngsānshēng yōu-hēn-dwō-hǎukānde-difang. Yōu-dà-shān, yōu-dà-chéng, hái-yōu-hēndwōde-rén. Jèibēn-shū hēn-yōuyisz.
M: Nèibēn-shū dzài-nǎr?
C: Dzài-jèr. Dzài-jèige-jwōdzshang.
M: Jèi-búshr-'Jūnggwo-shū-ma?
C: Nèi-'shè-Jūnggwo-shū, kěshr-jwōdzshang yě-yōu-yibēn-Yīnggwo-shū. Shūshang-shwōde-shr Jūnggwo-hǎukānde-difang.
M: Jūnggwo-dzwèi-hǎukānde-difang dzài-nǎr? Dzài-Dūngsānshēng-ma?
W: Búdai-Dūngsānshēng. Jūnggwo yōu-lyǎngge-dzwèi-hǎukānde-difang. Yíge shr-Sūjou, yíge shr-Hángjou.
C: 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nǐ-búshr-Sūjourén-ma?
W: Wō-búshr-Sūjourén, yě-búshr-Hángjourén, kěshr-wō-tàitai shr-Sūjourén. Tā-shwō nèi-lyǎngge-chéng-litou yōu-hǎukānde-difang, wàitou yě-yōu-hǎukānde-difang.
C: Wàigwo-rén dōu-yào-kàn-nèi-lyǎngge-chéng.
M: Wō-yě-yào-kàn.
W: Jèi-lyǎngge-chéng shr-Jūnggwo-dzwèi-hǎukānde-difang. Swóyi Jūnggwo-rén-shwō:
"Shàng yōu-tyāntáng
Syà yōu-Sū-Háng."
- The Japanese are very much afraid of the Chinese guerrillas in the mountains.
That's right.
There are also guerrillas in the cities of Manchuria but at present the guerrillas in the mountains are most numerous.
I have a very good book here. What the book discusses is where in Manchuria there are guerrillas, what places are beautiful, where there are . . .
What beautiful places are there in Manchuria?
In the book it says that there are a great many beautiful places in Manchuria. There are big mountains, big cities, and lots of people. This book is very interesting.
Where is that book?
Here. It's on this table.
Isn't this a Chinese book?
That is a Chinese book, but there is also an English book on the table. What the book discusses is beauty spots in China.
Where are the nicest places in China? Are they in Manchuria?
They're not in Manchuria. China has two very beautiful places. One is Soochow, the other is Hangchow.
Mr. Wáng, aren't you a native of Soochow?
I'm a native of neither Soochow nor Hangchow, but my wife is from Soochow. She says there are beautiful places inside and outside both those cities.
All foreigners want to see those two cities.
I'd like to see them too.
These two cities are the most beautiful places in China. For that reason the Chinese say:
"Above is Heaven,
Below are Soochow and Hangchow."

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|------------------|--|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. shān | N: mountain, hill | 7. Sūjou | PW: Soochow (in Kiang-su Province) |
| 2. chéng | N: city | 8. Hángjou | PW: Hangchow (in Chekiang Province) |
| 3. dì | N: ground, earth, land | 9. Dūngsān- | PW: Manchuria (<i>tūng</i> |
| 4. dìfang N, PW: | place (<i>dì</i> 'earth' plus <i>fāng</i> 'direction') | shěng | 'east' plus <i>sān</i> |
| 5. tyān | PW: sky, heaven | | 'three' plus <i>shěng</i> |
| 6. tyāntáng | PW: heaven, paradise (<i>tyān</i> 'sky' plus <i>táng</i> 'chamber, hall') | 10. dzwèi | AD: most |

Substitution Tables

jèr	yǒu	rén	dzài	jwōdz	shàng	(méi-)	yǒu	dūngsi	(ma?)
nèr		shū		shū	syà			chyán	
nǎr		bàu		bàu				jī	

Drill I. Simple Sentences

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Jèr-yǒu-rén. | There are people here. |
| 2. Nèr-yě-yǒu-rén. | There are people there too. |
| 3. Jèr-méiyǒu-rén. | There isn't anyone here. |
| 4. 'Nǎr-yǒu-rén? | Where are there any people? |
| 5. Jèr-yǒu-shū-ma? | Are there any books here? |
| 6. Nèr-méiyǒu-shān. | There aren't any mountains there. |
| 7. Jèr-méiyǒu-jwōdz-ma? | Isn't there a table here? |
| 8. 'Nǎr-yǒu-jwōdz? | Where is there a table? |
| 9. Jèr-méiyǒu-mǎ. | There aren't any horses here. |
| 10. Nèr-yě-yǒu-dūngsi. | There are things there too. |

Drill II. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Jwōdzshang yǒu-shū-ma? | Are there any books on the table? |
| 2. Jwōdzshang yǒu-shū. | There are some books on the table. |
| 3. Shū dzài-jwōdzshang-ma? | Are the books on the table? |
| 4. Shū dzài-jwōdzshang. | The books are on the table. |
| 5. Dzài-Dūngsānshěng yǒu-méiyǒu-dà-chéng? | Are there any big cities in Manchuria? |
| 6. Dūngsānshěng yě-yǒu-dà-chéng. | There are big cities in Manchuria too. |
| 7. Hángjou dzài-'shémma-dìfang? | Where is Hangchow? |
| 8. Hángjou dzài-nèige-dà-shān-hòutou. | Hangchow is behind that big mountain. |
| 9. 'Nèr-yǒu-wàigwo-rén-méiyǒu? | Are there any foreigners there? |

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 10. 'Nèr-méiyōu-wàigwo-rén, kěshr-'jèr-yōu. | There aren't any foreigners there, but there are some here. |
| 11. Nèige-wàigwo-rénde-dūngsi dzài-nǎr? | Where are that foreigner's things? |
| 12. Nèige-wàigwo-rénde-dūngsi hái-dzài-jèr-ne. | That foreigner's things are still here. |
| 13. Nèige-syāu-pùdz-wàitou yōu-'jige-Řbēn-rén? | How many Japanese are there outside that little store? |
| 14. Nèige-syāu-pùdz-wàitou jǐ-yōu-'lyǎngge-Řbēn-rén. | There are only two Japanese outside that little store. |
| 15. Lyǎngge-Řbēn-rén dzài-'shémma-dìfang? | Where are the two Japanese? |
| 16. Lyǎngge-Řbēn-rén dōu-dzài-nèige-syāu-pùdz-wàitou. | The two Japanese are both outside that little store. |
| 17. Chéng-wàitou yě-yōu-pùdz-ma? | Are there also stores outside the city? |
| 18. 'Yě-yōu, kěshr-budwō. | There are some too, but not many. |
| 19. Dzwèi-hǎude-pùdz dzài-nǎr? | Where is the best store? |
| 20. Dzwèi-hǎude-pùdz dzài-chéngli. | The best store is in the city. |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|---|
| *1. Měigwo méiyōu-láuhǔ. | There are no tigers in America. |
| *2. Wàitou yōu-rén. | There are some people outside. |
| *3. Dzài-pùdzli yōu-lyǎngge-rén. | There are two people in the store. |
| *4. Shānli yōu-hēn-dwō-Jūnggwo-yóuji-dwèi. | There are a great many Chinese guerrillas in the mountains. |
| *5. Bàushang-shwō Řbēn-rén hái-dzài-Dūngsānshěng. | The newspaper says the Japanese are still in Manchuria. |
| *6. Jūnggwo-rén dzwèi-dwō. | Chinese are most numerous. |
| 7. Yinwei-nèige-chéngli méiyōu-pùdz, swóyi wōmen-bunéng-mǎi-dūngsi. | Since there aren't any stores in that city we can't buy anything. |
| 8. Shàng-yōu-tyān, syà-yōu-dì. | Above is heaven, below is the earth. |
| 9. Sūjou dzài-'shémma-dìfang? | Where is Soochow? |
| 10. Shūshang-shwō Hángjou shr-Jūnggwo-dzwèi-hǎukànde-dìfang. | The book says Hangchow is the most beautiful place in China. |
| 11. Tyāntáng dzài-'shémma-dìfang? | Where is Heaven? |
| 12. Nèige-pùdzli méiyōu-rén. | There isn't anyone in that store. |
| 13. Jèr-yōu-Jūnggwo-yóuji'dwèi-méiyōu? | Are there any Chinese guerrillas here? |
| 14. Jèr-'yōu-méiyōu hwèi-shwō-Yīnggwo-hwàde-rén? | Are there any people here who can speak English? |
| 15. Nèige-dà-jwōdzshang yōu-sānbēn-Jūnggwo-shū. | There are three Chinese books on that big table. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Shānli méiyǒu-chéng. | 11. 'Jèr-yǒu-Ābēn-rén-méiyǒu? |
| 2. Měigwō běnlái-méiyǒu-Jūnggwō-rén,
kěshr-syàndzài-yǒu. | 12. Nèige-shānshang méiyǒu-rén. |
| 3. Jèige-dìfangyǒu-méiyǒu-wàigwō-rén? | 13. Syàndzài nèige-chéngli méiyǒu-rén. |
| 4. Shūshang-shwō Hángjōu buhēn-dà. | 14. Nèige-shān-hòutou dzwèi-hǎukàn. |
| 5. Jūnggwō 'shémma-dìfang yǒu-shān? | 15. Jèr-méiyǒu-syǎu-jwōdz. |
| 6. Jwōdzshang yǒu-shémma? | 16. Yàu-mǎi-dà-jwōdzde-rén dzài-nǎr? |
| 7. Jèr yíge-Ābēn-rén-yě-méiyǒu. | 17. Nèige-chéngli yíge-pùdz-yě-méiyǒu. |
| 8. Nèrde-rén buhēn-dwō. | 18. Nèige-syǎu-jwōdz-syàtōu yě-yǒu-shū. |
| 9. Mǎ-Syānshengde-jwōdzshang yǒu-
sānbēn-Yīnggwō-shū. | 19. Jwōdzshang yǒu-'dwōshau-chyán? |
| 10. Nèige-shānshang yǒu-méiyǒu-rén? | 20. Nèige-chéng-wàitōu yǒu-hēn-dwō-
yóujidwèi. |

NOTES

- To state that at a place (P) there is such-and-such a thing (N), Chinese uses the construction: (*dzài*) *P yǒu N*. 'at P there is N': *Dzài-shàngtōu yǒu-shū*, *Shàngtōu yǒu-shū* 'On top there is a book, There's a book on top.' In this construction the thing talked about is always indefinite; in English it is preceded by such indefinite words as 'a,' 'an,' 'some.' In English the verb is generally a form like 'there is,' 'there are,' 'is there?' 'are there?' Other examples: *Dzài-wàitōu yǒu-rén*, *Wàitōu yǒu-rén* 'There are some people outside'; *Dzài-jwōdzshang yǒu-shū*, *Jwōdzshang yǒu-shū* 'There's a book on the table,' *Jèr-yǒu-rén-ma?* 'Are there any people here?'
 - We are now able to give a more precise definition for place-words than was possible when they were first mentioned in Lesson 8, Note 2a: Place-words are words which can follow *dzài* in the construction *dzài P yǒu N*.
- Place-words ending in the suffix *tōu* drop this ending in more or less fixed phrases. Such is the case in the sentence *Shàng-yǒu-tyāntáng* 'Above is heaven.'
- For English expressions like 'the book says that . . .' Chinese has *shūshang-shwō* . . . 'on the book it says that . . .', *bàushang-shwō* . . . 'on the newspaper it says that . . .': *Shūshang-shwō Jūnggwō hái-yǒu-láuhǔ* 'The book says there are still tigers in China,' *Shūshang-shwōde-shr Jūnggwō-hǎukànde-dìfang* 'That which is said on the book is China's pretty places, What the book deals with is China's beauty spots.'
- The adverb *dzwèi* 'most' is used to make a superlative: *dzwèi-hǎu* 'the best,' *Jèige-shr-dzwèi-hǎukànde* 'This is the prettiest one.' This superlative sometimes expresses not a genuine comparison but simply a strong 'very': *Jèige-dzwèi-hǎu!* 'This is very good! This is wonderful!'
- Paired or balanced phrases like *tyān-dì* 'heaven and earth' are even more common in Chinese than in English. Sometimes the paired expressions are full words, as in the case of *tyān-dì*, but often they are made up of combining forms, as in the case of *Sū-Háng* for the cities *Sūjōu* 'Soochow' and *Hángjōu* 'Hangchow.' This telescoping of geographical names is especially common. Other examples are *Píng-Hàn* for *Běipíng* 'Peiping' and *Hànkǒu* 'Hankow,' and *Jūng-Měi* 'Chinese-American, Sino-American' for *Jūnggwō* 'China' and *Měigwō* 'America.'

LESSON 16

THE COVERB OF LOCATION

Conversation: Chyán tells of his work in the store

- M: 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide, nǐ-'tyāntyān dzài-pùdzli dzwò-shṛ-ma? Manager Chyán, do you work in the store every day?
- C: Wǒ-měityān dzài-jèr dzwò-shṛ. I work here every day.
- M: Nǐ-'tyāntyān hěn-máng-ma? Are you always very busy?
- C: Yǒude-shṛhou wǒ-hěn-máng, yǒude-shṛhou bumáng. Sometimes I'm very busy, sometimes I'm not busy.
- M: Mǎi-shūde-rén 'dwō-budwō? Do many people buy books?
- C: Mǎi-shūde-rén hěn-dwō. Mǎi-jṛde-rén, mǎi-bàude-rén yě-bushǎu. Jèigerén yàu-mǎi-Jǔnggwō-bàu, nèigerén yàu-mǎi-Yǐnggwō-shū, kěshr-rénrén dōu-yàu-mǎi-jyànde. Lots of people buy books. There are also quite a few people who buy paper and newspapers [People who buy paper, people who buy newspapers are also not few]. This person wants to buy a Chinese newspaper, that person wants to buy an English book, but everyone wants to buy very inexpensive ones.
- M: Syàndzài mǎi-shūde-rén hěn-shǎu. There aren't many people buying books now [Now the people buying books are very few].
- C: Dwèile. Syàndzài mǎi-shūde-rén hěn-shǎu. Yǒu-nǐmen-lyǎngge-rén. Háiyǒu-yígerén. That's right. There aren't many people buying books now. There are the two of you and there is also one other person.
- M: Tā-dzài-nǎr? Where is he?
- C: Tā-dzài-wàitou. He's outside.
- M: Tā-dzài-nèr dzwò-shémma? What's he doing there?
- C: Tā-dzài-nèr kàn-shū. He's looking at some books there.
- M: Wàitou hái-yǒu-shū-ma? Are there other books outside?
- C: Pùdz-chyántou hái-yǒu-ne. There are other books in front of the store.
- M: Dōu-shr-'shémma-shū? What books are they all?
- C: Dōu-shr-'Jǔnggwō-shū. Nǐ-'yàubuyàu kàn-wàitoude-shū? They're all Chinese. Would you like to look at the books outside?
- M: Buyàu-kàn. Syàndzài-shr-chṛ-fànde-shṛhou. I don't want to look at them. It's time to eat now.
- C: Shṛ-ma? Is it?
- M: Nǐ-dzài-nǎr chṛ-fàn? Where do you eat?
- C: Yàushr-wǒ-tàitai-dzài-jyā, wǒ-jyòudzài-jyā chṛ-fàn, kěshr-syàndzài wǒde-tàitai búdzai-jyā, swóyi wǒ-búdzai-jyā-chṛ. If my wife is at home, I eat at home, but now my wife isn't at home, so I don't eat at home.

- M: Ní-syàndzài dzài-nǎr chī-fàn? Where do you eat now?
 C: Yǒude-shíhou dzài-pùdzli chī-fàn, Sometimes I eat in the store, sometimes
 yǒude-shíhou dzài-wǒ-péngyou- I eat at my friends' homes.
 jyāli chī-fàn.
- M: Ní-tàitai syàndzài dzài-nǎr? Where is your wife now?
 C: Wǒ-tàitai syàndzài dzài-Sūjou. My wife is now in Soochow.
- M: Tā-dzài-nèr dzwò-shémma? What is she doing there?
 C: Tā-dzài-nèr kàn-péngyou. She's visiting some friends there.
- M: Ní-tàitai yě-dzài-pùdzli dzwò-shì- Does your wife also work in the store?
 ma?
- C: Yǒude-shíhou tā-yě-dzài-pùdzli Sometimes she works in the store too.
 dzwò-shì.
- M: Pùdzli-dzài-shì tā-dōu-hwèi-dzwò-ma? Can she do all the things in the store?
 C: Budōu-hwèi. Yǒude-shì tā-hwèi- She can't do them all. Some things she
 dzwò, yǒude tā-buhwèi. Kěshì wǒ- can do, some she can't. But she is even
 buhwèi-dzwòde-shì, yǒude-tā-yě- able to do some of the things that I can't.
 hwèi-dzwò.

Vocabulary

1. chī	TV: eat	6. tyān	M: day
2. dzwò	TV: do	7. měi	SP: each, every
3. fàn	N: (cooked) food	8. shíhou	TE: time
4. shì	N: matter, affair, thing	9. yǒude	PH: a part of, some
5. jyā	N: home, house		

Substitution Table

nèige	Jūngwo-rén	dzài	shémma-difang	kàn-bào
jèige	Měigwo-rén		jyā-wàitou	chī-fàn
	Āběn-rén		pùdzli	syě-dz
	Yīngwo-rén		nǎr	shwō-hwà
	wàigwo-rén		nèige-difang	chàng-gē

Drill I. Simple Phrases

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. dzài-jyā chī-fàn | to eat at home |
| 2. dzài-wàitou kàn-bào | to read a newspaper outside |
| 3. dzài-nǎr chàng-gē? | to sing a song where? |
| 4. dzài-jèr tán-hwà | to converse here |
| 5. dzài-chéngli kàn-péngyou | to see friends in the city |
| 6. dzài-pùdzli mǎi-dūngsi | to buy things in the store |
| 7. dzài-chyántou shwō-hwà | to talk in front |
| 8. dzài-Měigwo kàn-péngyou | to see friends in America |
| 9. dzài-lítou dzwò-shì | to do things inside |
| 10. dzài-jyā-wàitou kàn-shū | to read a book outside the house |

Drill II. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ní-syàndzài yǒu-shì-ma? | Do you have things to do now? |
| 2. Wǒ-syàndzài méiyǒu-shì. | I don't have anything to do now. |
| 3. Ní-'tyāntyān chī-Měigwō-fàn-ma? | Do you eat American food everyday? |
| 4. Wǒ-bu-'tyāntyān chī-'Měigwō-fàn.
Yǒude-shíhou wǒ-yě-chī-'Jūnggwo-fàn. | I don't eat American food everyday.
Sometimes I also eat Chinese food. |
| 5. Tāmen-dzài-nǎr tán-hwà? | Where are they conversing? |
| 6. Tāmen-dzài-pùdzli tán-hwà. | They're conversing in the store. |
| 7. Jèige-fàn shr-'shéi-dzwođe? | By whom was this food cooked? |
| 8. Jèige-fàn shr-'Wáng-Tàitai-dzwođe. | This food was made by Mrs. Wáng. |
| 9. Yàushr-jyālide-rén tài-dwō, wǒmen-'néng-bunéng dzài-jèr chī-fàn? | If there are too many people in the house,
can we eat here? |
| 10. Dzài-jèr-chī-fàn yě-hǎu. | It'll be all right too to eat here. |
| 11. Tā-syàndzài dzài-chéngli dzwò-shémma? | What's he doing in the city now? |
| 12. Tā-syàndzài dzài-chéngli mǎi-dūngsi. | He's buying things in the city now. |
| 13. Dzài-nèr-syě-Jūnggwo-dzde-rén dōu-shr-wàigwo-rén-ma? | Are all the people writing Chinese characters there foreigners? |
| 14. Dzài-nèr-syě-Jūnggwo-dzde-rén bu-dōu-shr-'wàigwo-rén. Yǒude shr-'Jūnggwo-rén. | Not all the people writing Chinese characters there are foreigners. Some are Chinese. |
| 15. Ní-jyà-dzài-nǎr? | Where is your home? |
| 16. Wǒ-jyā-dzài-chéng-wàitou. | My home is outside the city. |
| 17. Ní-yàu-chī-shémma-fàn? | What (kind of) food do you want to eat? |
| 18. Wǒ-yàu-chī-'Jūnggwo-fàn. | I want to eat Chinese food. |
| 19. Nèige-pùdz mǎi-'jwōdz-bumài? | Does that store sell tables? |
| 20. Nèige-pùdz bumài-jwōdz. | That store doesn't sell tables. |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|--|---|
| *1. Tā-dzài-jyā. | He's at home. |
| *2. Tā-dzài-jyāli kàn-bào. | He's reading the newspaper at home. |
| *3. Tā-yě-yàu dzài-jyā chī-fàn. | He also wants to eat at home. |
| *4. Tā-'tyāntyān chī-Jūnggwo-fàn. | He eats Chinese food every day. |
| *5. Yǒude-hǎu, yǒude-buhǎu. | Some are good, some are bad. |
| *6. Jèi-lyǎngběn-shū wǒ-dōu-yǒu. | I have both [all two] of these books. |
| *7. Yǒude-shū wǒ-yàu, yǒude buyàu. | I'd like some of the books, but not others. |
| *8. Wǒ-měityān kàn-yiběn-shū. | I read one book every day. |
| 9. Wǒ-'tyāntyān dzài-jèr chī-fàn. | I eat here every day. |
| 10. Yàushr-ní-budzwò-shì, jǎnggwèide 'dzémma-néng-gěi-ní-chyán-ne? | If you don't do any work, how can the manager give you money? |
| 11. Nèige-shíhou tā-búdzai-jyā. | At that time he wasn't at home. |
| 12. Mǎ-Syānsheng-shwō tā-buhwèi-dzwò-Jūnggwo-fàn. | Mr. Martin says he can't cook Chinese food. |
| 13. Tā-shwō tā-buyàu-dzài-jèr dzwò-shì. | He says he doesn't want to work here. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 14. Wáng-Syānshengde-jyā dzài-nèige-shānshang. | Mr. Wáng's home is on top of that hill. |
| 15. Nèige-lǎu-rén dzài-pùdz-wàitou chàng-gēr. | That old man is singing outside the store. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Tā-'tyāntyān dzài-nèr chàng-gēr. | 11. Yǒude-Jūnggwo-rén buhwèi-syě-dz. |
| 2. Dzài-nèr-chī-fànde shr-shéi? | 12. Yóujidwèi dzài-shānli dzwò-shémma? |
| 3. Rénrén-dōu-shwō Wáng-Tàitai-dzwòde-fàn hěn-hǎuchī. | 13. Jūnggwo yě-yǒu-wàigwo-rén. |
| 4. Měige-rén yǒu-shíkwài-chyán. | 14. Wǒ-'tyāntyān kàn-Jūnggwo-bào. |
| 5. Nèige-jwōdz shr-'shéi-dzwòde? | 15. Nǐ-'shémma-shíhou yàu-chī-fàn? |
| 6. Yǒude-dūngsi tài-gwèi, swóyi-wǒ-bu-néng-mǎi. | 16. Yǒude-gēr wǒ-hwèi-chàng. Yǒude buhwèi. |
| 7. 'Wáng-Syānsheng-dzài-jyā-ma? | 17. Tā-yě-yàu dzài-chéngli mǎi-dūngsī |
| 8. Wǒmen-'shémma-shíhou chī-fàn? | 18. Gěi-nǐ-chyánde-rén dzài-nèige-pùdzl. mǎi-shū. |
| 9. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwěide 'tyāntyān dzài-pùdzli dzwò-shr. | 19. Jyāli yǒu-'dwōshau-rén? |
| 10. Měige-Jūnggwo-chéngli dōu-yǒu-dà-pùdz. | 20. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng dzài-pùdzli dzwò-shémma? |

Drill V. Sentence Pyramid

1. Dzài-jyā.
2. Dzài-jyāli.
3. Dzài-jyāli-chī.
4. Dzài-jyāli chī-fàn.
5. Rén dzài-jyāli chī-fàn.
6. Nèige-rén dzài-jyāli chī-fàn.
7. Nèige-Yīnggwo-rén dzài-jyāli chī-fàn.
8. Nèige-Yīnggwo-rén dzài-péngyoude-jyāli chī-fàn.
9. Nèige-Yīnggwo-rén dzài-wǒ-péngyoude-jyāli chī-fàn.
10. Nèige-Yīnggwo-rén dzài-wǒ-lǎu-péngyoude-jyāli chī-fàn.
11. Nèige-Yīnggwo-rén dzài-wǒ-lǎu-péngyoude-jyāli chī-Jūnggwo-fàn.
12. Nèige-Yīnggwo-rén yàu-dzài-wǒ-lǎu-péngyoude-jyāli chī-Jūnggwo-fàn.
13. Nèige-Yīnggwo-rén buyàu-dzài-wǒ-lǎu-péngyoude-jyāli chī-Jūnggwo-fàn.
14. Nèige-Yīnggwo-rén buyàu-dzài-wǒ-lǎu-péngyoude-jyāli chī-Jūnggwo-fàn-ma?

NOTES

1. a. *Coverbs* (CV) are transitive verbs which do not stand alone but precede and are secondary to the main verb of the sentence. Some coverbs are sometimes used as full verbs; a few are never anything but coverbs. All can be translated as prepositions in English.
- b. The verb *dzài* 'to be at' is used as a coverb to introduce the place where the ac-

tion of the main verb occurs: *Tā-dzài-pùdzli dzwò-shr̄*. 'He at the store does things, He works in the store.'

- c. The coverb *dzài* takes either a noun or a place-word as object. A noun emphasizes location at and a place-word emphasizes location inside, outside, etc.: *Tā-dzài-pùdz dzwò-shr̄* 'He is working at the store,' *Tā-dzài-pùdzli dzwò-shr̄* 'He is working in the store.'
 - d. If an auxiliary verb or an adverb occurs in a sentence which has a coverb, the auxiliary verb generally precedes the coverb and the adverb generally precedes the first verb in the sentence: *Tā-yě-yàu dzài-pùdzli dzwò-shr̄* 'He also wants to work in the store.' To identify the first verb in the sentence do not count those in the relative clauses but only those in the basic sentence. Thus, in *Syě-jèiběn-shūde-rén yě-yàu dzài-pùdzli dzwò-shr̄* 'The man who wrote this book also wants to work in the store,' the first verb in the basic sentence is *yàu* 'want.'
2. a. Some measures and a few nouns are doubled to show totality: *tyān* 'day,' *'tyān-tyān* 'every day, always,' *rén* 'person,' *'rénrén* 'everyone.'
 - b. Reduplicated expressions of the above type are often accompanied by the adverb *dōu* 'all, entirely' for further emphasis. The specifier *měi* is also accompanied by this adverb: *'Rénrén dōu-yàu dzwò-shr̄* 'Everyone wants to work,' *Měige-rén dōu-yōu-lyǎngkwài-chyán* 'Each person has two dollars.'
 - c. As pointed out in Lesson 4, Note 9, the stress in reduplicated expressions generally falls on the first syllable.
3. a. The phrase *yǒude* has the meaning of 'some' in the sense of 'some but not all.' It never follows a verb as object; when it is the object of a verb it is placed in front of the verb: *Yǒude wǒ-yàu*, *yǒude wǒ-buyàu* 'Some I want, some I don't.' Note: the English word 'some' means either 'a portion of' or 'a few.' In the former meaning it is generally emphasized, as in 'I like *some* kinds of fish, but not all.' In the latter meaning it is generally unemphasized, as in 'I'd like to have some fish today.' The former translates into Chinese with *yǒude*. The latter is not expressed in Chinese: *Wǒ-yàu-shū* 'I'd like some books.'
 - b. The direct object of a verb is always placed at the beginning of the sentence if the adverb *dōu* 'all' is used in reference to the object: *Jèi-sānběn-shū wǒ dōu-yàu* 'I want all three of these books.'
 - c. The direct object of a verb is placed at the beginning of the sentence if it is preceded by *yǒude* 'some': *Yǒude-shū wǒ-yàu*, *yǒude-shū wǒ-buyàu* 'Some books I want, some books I don't want.'
4. The noun *shr̄* 'matter, thing' when used as the object of the verb *yōu* 'to have,' forms a phrase meaning 'to have things to do': *Wǒ-yōu-shr̄* 'I have things to do, I'm busy,' *Nǐ-yōu-'shémma-shr̄?* 'What do you have to do?'
 5. The negative prefix *bu* 'not' is used before a time expression which has the idea of 'all' or 'every': *Wǒ-buměityān chī-Jūnggwō-fàn* 'I don't eat Chinese food every day.'

LESSON 17

THE COVERB OF DIRECTION

Conversation: Martin and Wáng leave the bookstore

- W: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, wōmen-syàndzài-chyù, 'hǎu-buhǎu? Mr. Martin, shall we go now?
- M: Woměn-dàu-nǎr-chyu? Where shall we go?
- W: Nǐ-'yàu-buyàu dàu-fàngwǎr-chyu? Do you want to go to a restaurant?
- M: Wōmen-dàu-fàngwǎr-chyu-chī-fàn yě-hǎu. It'll be fine, too, to go to a restaurant to eat.
- W: Wōmen-dàu-'něige-fàngwǎr-chyu chī-fàn? Which restaurant shall we go to to eat?
- M: Wǒ-bujrdàu 'něige-fàngwǎr dzwèi-hǎu. Nǐ-'jīrdàu-bujrdàu? I don't know which restaurant is best. Do you know?
- W: Chénglide-fàngwǎr wǒ-'dōu-jīrdàu. I know all the restaurants in the city.
- M: Tīngshwō Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn hěn-hǎu. I hear the Chinese-American Restaurant is very good.
- W: Dwèile. Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎnde-Jūnggwo-fān shr-chéngli-dzwèi-hǎude. That's right. The Chinese food at the Chinese-American Restaurant is the best in the city.
- C: 'Wáng-Syānsheng hěn-dwèi. Nèige-fàngwǎr shr-chéngli-dzwèi-hǎude. Mr. Wáng is quite correct. That restaurant is the best in the city.
- W: Dàu-nèr-chyu-chī-fānde-rén bushǎu. Quite a few people go there to eat.
- M: Wōmen-jyòu-dàu-Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn-chyu-ba. Then let's go to the Chinese-American Restaurant.
- W: Hǎu. Fine.
- M: Òu! 'Wáng-Syānsheng, wōmen-'dzēmmanéng chyù-chī-fàn? Syāndzài wōmen-yíge-chyán yě-méiyǒule. Oh! Mr. Wáng, how can we go eat? We don't have a cent left now.
- W: Méiyǒu-chyán buyàujǐn. It doesn't matter if we don't have any money.
- M: Nǐ-'dzēmmanéng-shwō méiyǒu-chyán buyàujǐn-ne? Yàushr méiyǒu-chyán wōmen-'dzēmmanéng dàu-fàngwǎr-chyu chī-fàn? How can you say not having money doesn't matter? If we don't have any money how can we go to a restaurant to eat?
- W: Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎnde-jǎnggwèide shr-wǒde-lǎu-péngyou, swóyi-dàu-nèr-chyu méiyǒu-chyán buyàujǐn. The manager of the Chinese-American Restaurant is an old friend of mine, so if we go there without any money it doesn't matter.
- M: Hǎu-ba. Wōmen-jyòu-dàu-nèr-chyu. Fine. Then let's go there.
- W: 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide, dzàijyàn-ba. Manager Chyán, good-bye.
- C: Dzàijyàn, dzàijyàn. See you again.
- M: Dzàijyàn. So long.

Vocabulary

1. lái	IV: come	8. fàngwǎr, fàngwǎn	N: restaurant (fàn 'food' plus gwǎn 'establishment.'
2. chyù	IV: go		Note that this word is composed of
3. jǐrdau	TV: know (that)		the syllables fàn and gwǎn, not fàng
4. tīngshwō	TV: hear (that)		and wǎn)
5. chǐng	TV: request, invite, please	9. jǐntyán	TE: today (jǐn 'now' plus tyán 'day')
6. dàu	CV: to	10. dzài	AV: again, further
7. yàujǐn	SV: to be important, to matter	11. dzàijyàn	PH: good-bye (dzài 'again' plus jyàn 'see')
		12. ba	GP: See Note 8.

Substitution Tables

dàu	fàngwǎr	chyu	Chyán-Jǎnggwèide	dàu	Jǔnggwō	chyu
	chéngli	lai	Wáng-Syānsheng		jyāli	lai
	pùdzli		tāde-tàitai		wàitou	
	jyāli		Mǎ-Syānsheng		Měigwo	
	wàitou		nèige-Měigwo-rén			

Drill I. Simple Phrases

1. dàu-Jǔnggwō-chyu	go to China	6. dàu-Sūjou-lai	come to Soochow
2. dàu-fàngwǎr-lai	come to the res- aurant	7. dàu-hòutou-chyu	go to the rear
3. dàu-nǎr-chyu?	go where?	8. dàu-chyántou-lai	come to the front
4. dàu-wàigwo-chyu	go abroad	9. dàu-pùdz-chyu	go to the store
5. dàu-chéngli-chyu	go into the city	10. dàu-pùdzli-lai	come into the store

Drill II. Questions and Answers

1. Ní-syàndzài dàu-nǎr-chyu?	Where are you going now?
2. Wō-dàu-fàngwǎr-chyu chǐ-fàn.	I'm going to the restaurant to eat.
3. Yàushr-ní-méiyǒu-shì, 'néng-bunéng dàu-wō-jyā-lai tántán-hwà?	If you don't have anything to do, can you come to my home to have a chat?
4. Ní-yàu-wo 'shémma-shíhou dàu-ní- jyā-chyu?	When do you want me to go to your home?
5. Tā-dzài-nǎr dzwò-shì, ní-jǐrdau-ma?	Do you know where he works?
6. Wō-bujǐrdàu tā-dzài-nǎr dzwò-shì.	I don't know where he works.
7. Nèige-syǎu-jwōdz ní-'néng-bunéng màigei-wo?	Can you sell me that small table?
8. Néng, kěshr-nèige-jwōdz hěn-gwèi. Ní-gěi-wūshíkwài-chyán, wō-màigei- ni.	I can, but that table is very expensive. Give me \$50 and I'll sell it to you.
9. Tā-shwō-shémma? Wō-budǔng.	What is he saying? I don't understand.

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 10. Tā-shwō: "Ní-gěi-yíkwài-líng-wū déle." | He says: "Give me \$1.05 and that'll do." |
| 11. Ní-'dzěmma-budǔng? Tā-shwōde shr-Jūnggwo-hwà. | How is it that you don't understand? What he's speaking is Chinese. |
| 12. Òu! Syàndzài wǒ-dǔngle. | Oh! I've got it now. |
| 13. Nímen-'chyu-buchyu kàn-'Wáng-Syānsheng? | Are you going to visit Mr. Wáng? |
| 14. Wǒmen-jyòu-yàu-chyu. | We're just about to go. |
| 15. Dàu-nèige-difang-chyùde-rén 'dwō-budwō? | Do many people go to that place? |
| 16. Wǒ-tingshwō dàu-nèige-difang-chyùde-rén bushǎu. | I hear that not a few people go to that place. |
| 17. Ní-buchǐng-ta dàu-fàngwǎr-chyu chī-fàn-ma? | Aren't you inviting him to go to the restaurant to eat? |
| 18. Wǒ-'dzěmma-néng-chǐng-ta chī-fàn? Jíntyán yíge-chyán dōu-méiyǒule. | How can I invite him to eat? Today I don't have a cent left. |
| 19. Tāmen-buhwèi-shwō-'Yínggwo-hwà. Ní-'hwèi-buhwèi shwō-'Jūnggwo-hwà? | They can't speak English. Can you speak Chinese? |
| 20. Buyàujǐn. Wǒ-hwèi-shwō-'Jūnggwo-hwà. | It doesn't matter. I can speak Chinese. |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|---|
| *1. Ní-lái, ní-lái. | Come, come. |
| *2. Ní-jíntyán 'chyu-buchyu? | Are you going today? |
| *3. Ní-dàu-nǎr-chyu? | Where are you going? |
| *4. Wǒ-dàu-pùdz-chyu mǎi-dūngsi. | I'm going to the store to buy some things. |
| *5. Tā-dzwò-'shémma-shì, ní-jīrdau-ma? | Do you know what he does? |
| *6. 'Wáng-Tàitai jíntyán yàu-chǐng-'Mǎ Syānsheng lái-chī-fàn. | Today Mrs. Wáng wants to invite Mr. Martin to dinner. |
| *7. Wǒ-tingshwō nèige-shì hěn-yàujǐn. | I hear that that matter is very important. |
| 8. Yínggwo-hwà 'dzàijyàn' 'dzěmma-shwō? | How do you say 'dzàijyàn' in English? |
| 9. Wǒmen-chī-fàn-ba! | Let's eat! |
| 10. Chǐng-shwō-'Jūnggwo-hwà. | Please speak Chinese. |
| 11. Ní-'yàu-buyàu dàu-Wáng-Syānsheng-jyāli-chyu chī-Jūnggwo-fàn? | Would you like to go to Mr. Wáng's home to have some Chinese food? |
| 12. Syàndzài dàu-Jūnggwo-chyùde-rén bushǎu. | Quite a few people go to China now. |
| 13. Syānsheng, ní-jīrdau-ma, Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn dzài-'shémma-difang? | Sir, do you know where the Chinese-American Restaurant is? |
| 14. Tā-yàu dzài-jyā chī-fàn, kěshr-tā-tàitai tyāntyān-yàu dàu-fangwar-chyu chī-fàn. | He wants to eat at home, but his wife wants to eat in the restaurant every day. |
| 15. Tā-chǐng-ní-dzài-lái. | He invites you to come again. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Yàushr-tā-jīntyan dàu-jèr-lai, nǐ-jyòu-gěi-tā-jèiběn-shū. | 11. Nimen-jīntyan 'chyu-buchyù? |
| 2. Nǐ-'shémma-shfhou dàu-nèr-chyu? | 12. Nǐ-jǐdau, tā-'shémma-shfhou-lai? |
| 3. Wǒ-jīntyan yàu-dàu-shānshang-chyu. | 13. Yàushr-tā-bunéng dàu-jèr-lai, wǒ-jyòu-dàu-tā-jyā-chyu. |
| 4. Wǒ-bujrdàu tā-dzài-'nǎr-chf-fàn. | 14. Tingshwō tā-yàu-dàu-Měigwo-chyu. |
| 5. Wáng-Tàitai-shwō tā-buyàu-dàu-wàigwo-chyu. | 15. Nǐ-yàu-buyàu-chíng-ta dàu-jèr-lai-chf-fàn? |
| 6. Bàushang-shwō Yínggwo-gwówáng yàu-dàu-Jūnggwo-lai. | 16. Wǒmen-buyàu-dàu-nèr-chyu chf-Měigwo-fàn. |
| 7. Tā-'chyu-buchyù 'dōu-buyàujīn. | 17. Dī-yíge-rén yàu-dàu-Yínggwo-chyu. Dī-èrge-rén yàu-dàu-Měigwo-chyu. |
| 8. Tā-jǐdau jèiběn-shū méiyóu-yìsz, kěshr tā-'hái-yàu-kàn. | 18. Wǒ-bujrdàu něige-chéng shr-dzwei-dàde. |
| 9. Yīnwei tā-yàu-dàu-jèr-lai kàn-wo, swóyī wǒ-bunéng dàu-nǐ-jyā-chyu. | 19. Tā-dàu-něige-fàngwǎr-chyu chf-fàn. |
| 10. 'Shéi-jǐdau něige-dzde-yìsz? | 20. Tā-jyā bēnlai-dzài-Sūjou. |

NOTES

1. a. *Intransitive verbs* (IV) are verbs which have no objects and cannot be preceded by the adverb *hěn* 'very.' They are like 'run,' 'come' in English: *Wǒ-lái* 'I'm coming,' *Wǒ-chyù* 'I'm going.'
- b. The verbs *lái* 'come' and *chyù* 'go' are used with the coverb *dàu* 'to' to indicate coming or going in relation to the speaker: *Tā-dàu-jèr-lai* 'He to here comes, He is coming here,' *Tā-dàu-nèr-chyu* 'He to there goes, He is going there.'
- c. When *lái* and *chyù* are used with a preceding verb they most often become neutral in tone and hence will be written without tone marks, as in *Tā-dàu-jèr-lai* 'He is coming here.'
- d. The verbs *lái* 'come' and *chyù* 'go' when followed by other verbs often express purpose: *Tā-lái mǎi-dūngsì* 'He has come to buy some things,' *Wǒ-yàu-dàu-nèr-chyu chf-fàn* 'I want to go there to eat.'
2. a. The coverb *dàu* 'to' takes either a noun or a place-word as object. A noun emphasizes motion to and a place-word emphasizes motion into, onto, etc.: *Tā-dàu-fàngwǎr-chyu* 'He is going to the restaurant,' *Tā-dàu-fàngwǎrli-chyu* 'He is going into the restaurant.' The forms *chénglì* and *shānlì* are preferred to *chéng* 'city' and *shān* 'mountains' as objects of *dàu*, for 'to go to the city' really implies 'to go into the city' *dàu-chénglì-chyu*, and 'to go to the mountains' suggests 'to go into the mountains' *dàu-shānlì-chyu*. In practice there is often no real distinction between the use of the nouns and the place-words, so that *pùdzlì* and *jyālì*, for example, are often used in situations where *pùdz* and *jyā* will also do: *Wǒ-dàu-tāde-jyālì-chyu*, *Wǒ-dàu-tāde-jyā-chyu* 'I'm going to his home.'
- b. Auxiliary verbs and adverbs are placed before the coverb *dàu* rather than the following verb: *Wǒ-yě-yàu dàu-nèr-chyu* 'I want to go there too.' See also Lesson 16, Note 1d.
3. The verb *jǐdau* refers to 'knowing about' facts or things (French *savoir*). Another word is used for 'recognizing' things (French *connaitre*). *Jǐdau* is stressed on the

final syllable in the negative: *bujrdàu*. The question forms *'jrdau-bujrdàu* and *jrdau-ma* placed before or after a question are equivalent to 'Do you know . . .?' *Tā-dàu-nār-chyu, nǐ-jrdau-ma?* 'Where's he going, do you know?', *Nǐ-jrdau-ma, nèiběn-shū 'hǎu-buhǎu?* or *Nèiběn-shū 'hǎu-buhǎu, nǐ-'jrdau-bujrdàu?* 'Do you know whether that book is good or not?' The positive form *jrdau* is also used before a question: *Nǐ-jrdau, nèiběn-shū 'hǎu-buhǎu?* 'Do you know whether that book is good or not?'

4. The general form *fāngwǎn* 'restaurant' rather than the specifically Pekingese form *fāngwǎr* is more often used in the names of restaurants: *Jūng-Měi-Fāngwǎn* 'The Chinese-American Restaurant.'
5. Commands are often expressed in Chinese, as in English, simply by the tone of one's voice, which can express anything from a polite suggestion to a curt and very impolite command: *Nǐ-kàn, jèige yě-hěn-hǎukàn* 'Look, this is very pretty too,' *Chyù, chyù!* 'Go away!'
6. *Yàujǐn* and its negative form *buyàujǐn* when preceded by verb phrases are similar to 'It is important that . . .' 'It doesn't matter whether . . .' in English: *Kàn-bàu hěn-yàujǐn* 'It is important that one read the newspapers, Reading the newspapers is very important,' *Tā-'lái-bulái dōu-buyàujǐn* 'He comes not comes, all is not important, It doesn't matter whether he comes or not.'
7. The verb *yàu* 'want' is used somewhat like 'will' in English to show a future action: *'Wáng-Tàitai jīntyan yàu-dàu-jèr-lai kàn wōmen* 'Mrs. Wáng will come here today to visit us.'
8. a. The neutral syllable *ba* is often added to a sentence to suggest a request or the granting of a request: *Wōmen-dàu-nèr-chyu-ba* 'Let's go there,' *Nǐ-chyù-ba* 'You may go,' *Hǎu-ba* 'It's all right with me, Fine!'
- b. The syllable *ba* is often added to a sentence with much the same meaning as 'No doubt,' 'I suppose,' 'Most likely' in English: *Shr-'Mǎ-Syānsheng-syède-ba* 'It was written by Mr. Martin; I suppose, It was most likely written by Mr. Martin.'

LESSON 18

THE USES OF *le*

Conversation: Martin tells what he did the day before

- | | | |
|----|--|--|
| W: | 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-hái-yǒu-shì-ma? | Do you have anything more (to do), Mr. Martin? |
| M: | Méiyǒu. Shū māile. Jwōdz yě-māile. Yàu-mǎide-dūngsi dōu-māile. | No. I've bought the books. I've also bought the table. I've bought everything I want to buy. |
| W: | Hǎu. Wōmen-jyòu-kéyi-chyù-chī-fàn-le. | Good. Then we can go eat. |
| M: | Hǎu. | Fine. |
| W: | Wǒ-dzwótyan dàu-nǐ-'jyā-chyùle, kěshr nǐ-méi-dzài-jyā. Nǐ-dzwótyan dzwò-shémma-shì-le? | I went to your home yesterday but you weren't at home. What were you doing yesterday? |

- M: Dzwótyan wǒ-hěn-máng. Dzwòle-hěn-dwòde-shì. Syàwǔ yě-dàu-shūpù-chyùle, mǎile-lyǎngbēn-shū.
 W: Nǐ-mǎide shr-'shémma-shū? Shr-'Jūnggwo-shū-ma?
 M: Búshr. Lyǎngbēn dōu-shr-'wàigwo-shū. Wǒ-dzwótyan kànle-yībēn. Míngtyan hái-yào-kàn-yībēn.
 W: Nǐ-'tyāntyān kàn-shū. Yě-'tyāntyān kàn-bào-ma?
 M: Dzwótyan-tài-máng, swóyí méi-kàn-bào.
 W: Nǐ-jǐntyān-'kànle-méiyóu?
 M: Kànle.
 W: Nǐ-dzwótyan sywéle-Jūnggwo-hwà-ma?
 M: Sywéle. Dzwótyan-shàngwǔ wǒ-sywéle-Jūnggwo-hwà-le.
 W: Nǐ-yě-syèle Jūnggwo-dz-le-ma?
 M: Méi-syě. Míngtyan-syàwǔ syě-Jūnggwo-dz. Míngtyan-syàwǔ hái-yào-sywéle-Jūnggwo-hwà.
 W: Hěn-hǎu. Yàujīn shr-tyāntyān-sywéle-Jūnggwo-hwà.
 M: Dzwótyan-jūngwǔ wǒ-dàu-chéng-wàitoude-yíge-syǎu-fàngwǎr chyuchī-Jūnggwo-fàn, kěshr-wǒ-wàngle-nèige-fàngwǎrde-míngdz-le. Nǐ-jǐdau-ma?
 W: Wǒ-jǐdau-nèige-fàngwǎr, kěshr-míngdz wǒ-yě-wàngle. Yǒude-rén-shwǒ nèige-fàngwǎrde-fàn dzwèi-hǎuchī. Hái-yǒu-rén-shwǒ tāmen-měityān jyòu-dàu-nèr-chyu chī-fàn.
 M: Dzwótyan dzài-fàngwǎrli yě-shwòle-Jūnggwo-hwà-le.
 W: Fàngwǎrlide-rén dōu-dǔng-ma?
 M: Budǔng. Jǎnggwèide yì-tīng-wǒ-shwǒ-hwà jyòu-shwǒ: "Wǒ-budǔng-nímende-Yínggwo-hwà."
- I was very busy yesterday. I did lots of things. In the afternoon I also went to a bookstore and bought a couple of books.
 What were the books you bought? Were they Chinese books?
 No. Both were foreign books. I read one yesterday. Tomorrow I'm going to read the other.
 You're always reading. Do you read the newspapers every day too?
 I was too busy yesterday, so I didn't read the newspaper.
 Did you read it today?
 I've read it.
 Did you study Chinese yesterday?
 Yes. I studied Chinese yesterday morning.
 Did you also write Chinese characters?
 No. I'm going to write Chinese characters tomorrow afternoon. Tomorrow afternoon I also want to study Chinese.
 Fine. (The) important (thing) is to study Chinese every day.
 Yesterday noon I went to eat Chinese food at a little restaurant outside the city, but I've forgotten the name of the restaurant. Do you know it?
 I know that restaurant, but I've forgotten its name too. Some people say that restaurant's food is extremely tasty. Some other people say they go there every day to eat.
 I also spoke Chinese in the restaurant yesterday.
 Did everyone in the restaurant understand?
 No. As soon as the manager heard me speak he said: "I don't understand your English language."

Vocabulary

1. sywé TV: study
 2. wàng TV: forget

3. kéyí, kéyí AV: can, may
 4. míngdz N: name

Vocabulary (*cont.*)

5. shūpù	N: bookstore (<i>shū</i> 'book' plus <i>pù</i> 'store')	9. shàngwǔ	TE: forenoon (<i>shàng</i> 'above' plus <i>wǔ</i> 'noon')
6. yí, yì	AD: as soon as, once	10. jūngwǔ	TE: noon (<i>jūng</i> 'middle' plus <i>wǔ</i> 'noon')
7. dzwótyan	TE: yesterday (<i>dzwó</i> 'preceding' plus <i>tyān</i> 'day')	11. syàwǔ	TE: afternoon (<i>syà</i> 'below' plus <i>wǔ</i> 'noon')
8. míngtyan	TE: tomorrow (<i>míng</i> 'next' plus <i>tyān</i> 'day')	12. le	GP: <i>perfective suffix</i>

Substitution Table

nèige-wàigwo-rén	sywéle-Jūnggwo-hwà	(méiyóu?)
níde-tàitai	kànle-nèiběn-shū	(ma?)
'Mǎ-Syānsheng	mǎile-jwōdz	
'Wáng-Tàitai	chǐfle-Měigwo-fàn	
tāde-péngyou	gěile-chyán	
'Wáng-Syānsheng	mǎile-bàu	

Drill I. Uses of le

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Dzwótyan wǒ-mǎile-lyǎngbēn-wàigwo-shū. Nǐ-yàu-buyàu-kàn? | Yesterday I bought two foreign books. Would you like to look at them? |
| 2. Wǒ-dzwótyan syéle-hěn-dwō-Jūnggwo-dz, swóyi-jíntyán-busyě. | I wrote a lot of Chinese characters yesterday, so I'm not going to write any today. |
| 3. Tā-yě-dàu-'Sūjou-chyùle-ma? | Did he also go to Soochow? |
| 4. 'Wáng-Syānsheng 'lǎile-méiyóu? | Has Mr. Wáng come? |
| 5. Wǒmen-syàndzài yàu-chàng-Jūnggwo-gē-le. | We're going to sing some Chinese songs now. |
| 6. Wǒmen-jyòu-yàu-chǐ-fàn-le. | We're about to eat. |
| 7. Tāmen-yàu-chyùle-ma? | Are they going? |
| 8. Wǒ-mǎile-bàu-le. Hái-yàu-mǎi-shémma? | I've bought the newspaper. What else is to be bought? |
| 9. Wǒmen-syàndzài chǐfle-fàn-le. | We've eaten now. |
| 10. Nǐ-gěile-chyán-le-ma? | Have you paid? |

Drill II. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Nǐ-dzwótyan-'chyùle-méiyóu? | Did you go yesterday? |
| 2. Wǒ-dzwótyan-méi-chyù. | I didn't go yesterday. |
| 3. Nǐ-mǎile-nèiběn-shū-ma? | Did you buy that book? |
| 4. Wǒ-mǎile-nèiběn-shū. | I bought that book. |
| 5. Nǐ-syàndzài yàu-chǐ-fàn-le-ma? | Are you about to eat now? |
| 6. Wǒ-syàndzài yàu-chǐ-fàn-le. | I'm about to eat now. |
| 7. Nǐ-gěile-chyán-le-ma? | Have you given the money? |
| 8. Wǒ-gěile-chyán-le. | I've given the money. |

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 9. Ní-dàu-'nǎr-chyùle? | Where did you go? |
| 10. Wǒ-dàu-'pùdz-chyùle. | I went to the store. |
| 11. Ní-wàngle-nèiběn-shūde-míngdz-le-ma? | Have you forgotten the title of that book? |
| 12. Méi-wàng. Nèiběn-shūde-míngdz shr-'Dūngsānshēngde-Yóujidwèi.' | I haven't forgotten. The title of that book is <i>The Guerrillas of Manchuria</i> . |
| 13. Wǒ-dzwótyan-mǎide-shū dzài-'shém-ma-difang? | Where are the books I bought yesterday? |
| 14. Búdžai-nèige-syǎu-jwōdzshang-ma? | Aren't they on that small table? |
| 15. Ní-dzwótyan chǐngle-shéi? | Whom did you invite yesterday? |
| 16. Dzwótyan wǒ-chǐngle-yíge-lǎu-péng-you dàu-fàngwǎr-chyu chī-fàn. | Yesterday I invited an old friend to go to the restaurant to eat. |
| 17. Tāmen-dōu-chyùle-ma? | Did they all go? |
| 18. Yǒude-chyùle, yǒude-méi-chyù. | Some went, some didn't. |
| 19. Ní-míngtyan 'kéyi-bukéyi dàu-jèr-lai kàn-wo? | Can you come here tomorrow to see me? |
| 20. Kéyi. Ní-yàu-wo 'shém-ma-shfhou-lái? | I can. When do you want me to come? |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|--|
| *1. Wǒ-dzwótyan mǎile-lyǎngbēn-Jūng-gwo-shū. | I bought two Chinese books yesterday. |
| *2. Wǒ-chyùle. Dzàijyàn, dzàijyàn. | I'm about to go. Good-bye. |
| *3. Wǒ-gěile-chyán-le, kěshr-tā-shwō wǒ-hái-méi-gěi-chyán. | I've given the money, but he says I haven't paid him yet [still have not given money]. |
| *4. Wǒ-méi-mǎi-bào. Wǒ-wàngle. | I didn't buy the newspaper. I forgot. |
| *5. Ní-dzwótyan kànle-nèiběn-'shū-méi-you? | Did you read that book yesterday? |
| *6. Wǒ-yí-kàn-ta, jyòu-jǐdau tā-búshr-Jūnggwo-rén. | As soon as I saw him I knew he wasn't Chinese. |
| 7. Ní-míngtyan-syàwǔ kéyi-chyù-ma? | Can you go tomorrow afternoon? |
| 8. Wǒ-wàngle-nèige-pùdzde-míngdz-le. | I've forgotten the name of that store. |
| 9. Wǒ-dzwótyan-shàngwǔ tài-máng, swóyi-wǒ-méi-sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà. | Yesterday morning I was too busy, so I didn't study Chinese. |
| 10. Wǒ-mǎile-sānbēn-shū-le. Wǒ-háiyàu mǎi-'lyǎngbēn. | I've bought three books and I'd like to buy two more. |
| 11. 'Wáng-Syānsheng búdzai-jyā. Tā-dàu-'pùdz-chyùle. | Mr. Wáng isn't at home. He's gone to the store. |
| 12. Tā-míngtyan yàu-chyù-kàn-tāde-lǎu-péngyou. | He's going to see an old friend of his tomorrow. |
| 13. Wǒ-wàngle-nèige-dzde-yisz. | I've forgotten the meaning of that word. |
| 14. Tā-jintyan-jūngwǔ 'lái-bulái? | Is he coming this noon? |
| 15. Dzwótyan tā-dzài-jyā. | He was home yesterday. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

1. Wǒ-jǐntiān-jūngwǔ dzài-nèige-shūpù mǎile-sānběn-Jūnggwo-shū.
2. Nǐ-wàngle-gěi-tā-chyán-ma?
3. Wǒ-míngtiān-syàwǔ bunéng-lái.
4. Dzwótyan dzài-nèige-jwōdzshang yǒu-sānběn-Yīnggwo-shū.
5. Wǒ-yì-tīng-tā-shwō-hwà jyòu-jǐdau tā-shr-yíge-Měigwo-rén.
6. Wǒ-mǎile-nèiběn-shū-le, kěshr jǎng-gwèide hái-méi-gěi-wo.
7. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng wàngle-nèige-chéng-de-'míngdz-méiyóu?
8. Yàushr nǐ-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà, wǒ-jyòu-dǔngle.
9. Hěn-dwō-wàigwo-rén yàu-sywé-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà.
10. Wǒ-syèle-dè-le. Chǐng-nǐ-lái-kàn.
11. Tā-dàu-'Měigwo-chyùle-méiyóu?
12. Wǒ-dzwótyan mǎile-yiběn-Jūnggwo-shū.
13. Jūng-Měi-Shūpù dzài-nǎr?
14. Nǐ-wàngle-nèige-dède-yisz-ma?
15. Tā-míngtiān-jūngwǔ lái-chī-fàn.
16. Wǒ-yì-tīng-tā-chàng-nèige-gēr jyòu-jǐdau búshr-Jūnggwo-gēr.
17. Mǎ-Syānsheng-shwō tā-dzwótyan dzài-Wáng-Syānshengde-jyā chīle-Jūnggwo-fàn.
18. Jǐntiān-shàngwǔ wǒ-yǒu-shr. Syàwǔ-méiyóu.
19. Jèiběn-shū shr-'wàigwo-rén-syède.
20. Nǐ-míngtiān yàu-dàu-'shémma-fàngwǎr-chyū chī-fàn?

NOTES

1. a. A particle *le* is included in a sentence to indicate the aspect of completion of a process. The point of completion may, according to the context, be in the past, present, or future. Compare English *He has bought a newspaper* (referring to past time) and *When he has bought a newspaper, he will return home* (referring to future time).
 - b. *Le* is most frequently added at the end of the sentence: *Tā-láile* 'He has come,' *Tā-chī-fàn-le* 'He has eaten,' *Tā-yàu-chī-fàn-le* 'He is going to eat.'
 - c. When the action of a verb has actually been completed, *le* is added not only at the end of the sentence but also, optionally, to the verb: *Tā-chīle-fàn-le* or *Tā-chī-fàn-le* 'He has eaten (He has finished eating).'
 - d. If the object in sentences of type 1c is preceded by a measure or emphatic qualifying expression, *le* occurs only after the verb: *Tā-mǎile-'sānběn-shū* 'He bought three books,' *Wǒ-dzwótyan-sywéle-'Jūnggwo-hwà* 'I studied Chinese yesterday.'
2. a. Sentences of the type mentioned in Notes 1b-1d are in general made negative by suppressing *le* and placing *méi* or *méiyóu* before the verb, or if there is one, before the coverb. They are turned into questions by retaining *le* and adding *ma* or *méiyóu* to the end of the sentence. Examples:

	<i>Positive</i>	<i>Negative</i>	<i>Question</i>
1b	<i>Tā-chī-fàn-le</i>	<i>Tā-'méi-chī-fàn</i>	<i>Tā-chī-fàn-le-ma?</i>
1c	<i>Tā-chīle-fàn-le</i>	<i>Tā-'méi-chī-fàn</i>	<i>Tā-chīle-fàn-le-ma?</i>
1d	<i>Tā-mǎile-'sānběn-shū</i>	<i>Tā-'méi-mǎi-sānběn-shū</i>	<i>Tā-mǎile-'sānběn-shū-ma?</i>

- b. The only exception to the above forms is in the case of those sentences, illustrated by the second sentence in 1b, whose point of completion is in the future. Such sentences are made negative by retaining *le* and placing *bu* before the verb:

Tā-buyàu-chī-fàn-le 'He isn't going to eat, He's decided not to eat any more.'
They are turned into questions by retaining *le* and adding *ma* at the end of the sentence: *Tā-buyàu-chī-fàn-le-ma?* 'Isn't he going to eat?'

3. It is necessary to avoid the common error of adding *le* to any and every Chinese verb in the expectation that this will make it equivalent to a past-tense verb in English. Since *le* is not a simple indication of a past tense it is well to point out some cases in which past-tense English verbs do not translate into a Chinese verb plus *le*:
- a. A verb used as a coverb is not usually followed by *le*. Hence *le* is not added to *dàu* in the sentences *Dzwótyan tā-dàu-wō-jyā-lái-kàn-wo* 'Yesterday he came to my home to see me,' *Nī-dzwótyan dàu-'nār-chyùe?* 'Where did you go yesterday?' *Tīngshwō tā-jīntyan-jūngwǔ dàu-'jèr-láile* 'I hear he came here this noon.'
 - b. A verb used as an auxiliary is not usually followed by *le*. Hence *le* is not added to *hwèi* or *néng* in the sentences *Běnlái tā-hwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà* 'Originally he was able to speak Chinese,' *Dzwótyan wō-néng-chyù, kěshr jīntyan bunéng-chyù* 'I was able to go yesterday, but I can't today,' *Tā-běnlái hwèi-chàng-gēr* 'He used to be able to sing.'
 - c. A verb with a sentence as object is not usually followed by *le*. This type of verb generally has to do with knowing, saying, etc. Hence *le* is not added to *shwō* in the sentences *Dzwótyan tā-shwō tā-yàu-chyù kàn-ni* 'Yesterday he said he wanted to go see you,' *Tā-shwō tā-méi-chī-fàn* 'He said he hasn't eaten,' *Dzwótyan Mǎ-Syānsheng-shwō tā-bunéng-chyù* 'Yesterday Mr. Martin said he couldn't go.'
 - d. A verb preceded by the adverb *yí* or *yì* 'as soon as' is not usually followed by *le*. Hence *le* is not added to *yí-kàn* or *yì-tīng* in the sentences *Wō-yí-kàn-ta jyòu-jīdau tā-shr-Yīnggwo-rén-le* 'As soon as I saw him I knew he was an Englishman,' *Wō-yì-tīng-tā chàng-nèige-Jūnggwo-gēr jyòu-jīdau tā-buhwèi-chàng-gēr* 'As soon as I heard him sing that Chinese song I knew he couldn't sing,' *Wō-yí-kàn-ta jyòu-shwō: "Nī-búshr-Jūnggwo-rén"* 'As soon as I saw him I said: "You're not a Chinese."'
 - e. A verb in a clause which ends in the subordinating particle *de* is not generally followed by *le*. Hence *le* is not added to *mǎi*, *dzwò*, or *chàng* in the sentences *Wō-dzwótyan-mǎide-shū buhèn-hǎu* 'The books which I bought yesterday aren't very good,' *Jèi-shr-'tā-dzwòde* 'This was made by him,' *Tā-dzwótyan-chàngde-gēr dōu-shr-Jūnggwo* 'The songs which he sang yesterday were all Chinese.'
 - f. A negative verb relating to a past time is not usually followed by *le*. Hence *le* is not added to *méi-syě*, *méi-gěi*, or *méi-mǎi* in the sentences *Wō-dzwótyan méi-syě-Jūnggwo-dz* 'I didn't write any Chinese characters yesterday,' *Wō-méi-gěi-tā-chyán* 'I didn't give him the money,' *Dzwótyan wō-méi-mǎi-bàu* 'I didn't buy a newspaper yesterday.'
- A specialized use of *le* with a negative verb has already been presented (Lesson 11, Note 5b) in the expressions *méiyǒule* 'not have any more' and *méiyǒu-chyán-le* 'not have any more money.' This use will be discussed further in Lesson 24.
- g. Sentences in which *lái* 'come' and *chyù* 'go' are used to show purpose (Lesson 17, Note 1d) do not use *le* after these verbs. Hence *le* is not added to *lái* or *chyù* in the sentences *Wō-dzwótyan dàu-pùdz-chyù mǎi-shū, kěshr wō-méi-mǎi* 'Yester-

day I went to the bookstore to buy some books, but I didn't buy any,' *Tā-dàu-jèr-lai kàn-wōmen, kěshr wōmen-méi-dzài-jyā* 'He came here to see us, but we weren't at home.' It may, however, be added to the other verbs.

- h. A stative verb having the ordinary adjectival meanings described in previous lessons is not usually followed by *le*. Hence *le* is not added to *gāu*, *máng*, or *dà* in the sentences *Běnlái nèige-shān hěn-gāu* 'Originally that mountain was very high,' *Wō-dzwótyan hěn-máng* 'I was very busy yesterday,' *Běnlái nèige-chéng yě-hěn-dà* 'Originally that city was also very big.'
- i. Some verbs, such as *yǒu* 'have,' *yào* 'want,' *dzài* 'be at,' and *shì* (be) are sometimes followed by *le*, but only in special cases which need separate explanations. Hence *le* is not added to *shì* and *yǒu* in the sentences *Běnlái tā-shr-Sūjou-rén* 'He was originally a native of Soochow,' *Wō-dzwótyan yǒu-chyán* 'I had some money yesterday.'
4. The auxiliary verb *kéyi* means 'may, can' in the sense of 'be permitted to.' It is used when an act is permitted by an individual or allowed by social custom, by circumstances, etc. In the latter case it is more or less interchangeable with *néng* 'be able to': *Wōmen-syàndzài kéyi-chyù-ma?*, *Wōmen-syàndzài néng-chyù-ma?* 'Can we go now?'
5. The Chinese adverb meaning 'as soon as' is *yí* before a fourth tone and *yì* before a first, second or third tone: *wō-yí-kàn-ta* 'as soon as I saw him,' *tā-yì-chī* 'as soon as he eats.'

LESSON 19

COMPLETED ACTION WITH *gwo*

Conversation: On the importance of Chinese

- | | |
|---|--|
| W: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-kàn Jūnggwo-fàn dzěmmayàng? | Mr. Martin, what do you think of Chinese food? [You look Chinese food is-what-sort?] |
| M: Wō-syǎng Jūnggwo-fàn dzwèi-hǎu. | I think Chinese food is the best. |
| W: Nǐ-chīgwo-Fàgwo-fàn-méiyóu? | Have you ever eaten French food? |
| M: Chīgwo. | Yes. |
| W: Chīgwo-'jǐtsz? | How many times have you eaten it? |
| M: Wō-chīgwo-hǎujǐtsz Fàgwo-fàn. | I've eaten French food a good many times. |
| W: Nǐ-syǎng Fàgwo-fàn dzěmmayàng? | What do you think of French food? |
| M: Fàgwo-fàn yě-hǎu, kěshr Jūnggwo-fàn-dzwèi-hǎu. | French food is good too, but Chinese food is the best. |
| W: Nǐ-dzài-'shémma-difang chīgwo-Fàgwo-fàn? | Where have you (ever) eaten French food? |
| M: Wō-dzài-Měigwo chīgwo-sz-wǔtsz. Dzài-Fàgwo yě-chīgwo-hǎujǐtsz. | I ate it four or five times in America. I ate it quite a few times in France too. |

- W: Òu! Nǐ-yě-chyùgwo-Fàgwo-ma?
Nǐ-chyùgwo-'Yínggwo-méiyóu?
- M: Méi-chyùgwo-Yínggwo, kěshr-wō-dàu-Fàgwo-chyùgwo-lyǎngtsz. Di-yítsh shr-yì-jyōu-sān-lyòu-nyán. Yì-jyōu-sān-bā-nyán wō-yòu-chyùle-yítsh.
- W: Nǐ-dàu-'Égwo-chyùgwo-méiyóu?
- M: Méiyóu.
- W: Nǐ-chyùgwo-Dégwo-ma?
- M: Yì-jyōu-sān-bā-nyán wō-dàu-Dégwo-chyùle-yítsh. Nèi-yinyán wō-yě-dàu-'Yígwo-chyùle.
- W: 'Nèi-yinyán?
- M: Yì-jyōu-sān-bā-nyán.
- W: Nǐ-chyùnyan dàu-'Fàgwo-chyùle-méiyóu?
- M: Chyùnyan-wō-méi-chyù.
- W: Míngnyan-'chyù-buchyù?
- M: Míngnyan bēnlái-syǎng-dzài-chyù-yítsh, kěshr-wōde-shrching-tài-dwō, swóyi-bunéng-chyù.
- W: Nǐ-chyùgwo-hǎujǐge-difang, shì-bushr? Nǐ-kàn Jūnggwo dzēmmyàng?
- M: Jèi-shr-wō-di-yítsh dàu-Jūnggwo-lai. Wōde-Jūnggwo-hwà yě-buhǎu, Jūnggwo hái-yōu-hěn-dwō-difang wō-méi-chyùgwo. Swóyi-wō-buhēnjǐrdau Jūnggwode-chíngsing.
- W: Sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà hěn-yàujǐn. Yàushr-yíge-rén-hwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà tā-jyòu-kéyi-jǐrdau hēndwō-Jūnggwode-chíngsing.
- M: Dwèile. Sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà-hēnyàujǐn.
- W: Kěshr dzài-Jūnggwo hái-yōu-bushǎude-wàigwo-rén buhwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà.
- M: Bēnlái-wàigwo-rén pà-sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà; tāmen-dōu-shwō Jūnggwo-hwà-buhǎusywé. Kěshr sywégwode-rén dōu-shwō Jūnggwo-hwà hēnhǎusywé.
- Oh, you've also been to France? Have you been to England?
- I've never been to England, but I've been to France two times. The first time was 1936. I went once more in 1938.
- Have you ever been to Russia?
- No.
- Have you been to Germany?
- I went to Germany once in 1938. I also went to Italy in that year.
- Which year?
- 1938.
- Did you go to France last year?
- I didn't go last year.
- Are you going next year?
- Next year I originally planned to go once again, but I have too much to do [my affairs are too numerous], and so I'll be unable to go.
- You've been to a good many places, isn't that so? What do you think of China?
- This is the first time I've been to China. Also, my Chinese is not good, and there are many places in China I haven't been to yet. So I don't know much about Chinese conditions.
- Studying Chinese is very important. If a person can speak Chinese then he can know a lot about Chinese conditions [he may know many Chinese conditions].
- That's right. Studying Chinese is very important.
- But in China there are still not a few foreigners who can't speak Chinese.
- Originally foreigners were afraid to study Chinese; they all said Chinese was hard [not good] to study. But those who have studied it all say Chinese is easy [good] to study.

- W: Yàushr-Měigwo-rén dōu-sywé-
Jūnggwo-hwà, Jūnggwo-rén dōu-
sywé-Yīnggwo-hwà, Jūng-Měi-
lyǎng-gwó jyòu-hwèi-dzwò dzwèi-
hǎude-péngyou-le. If all Americans study Chinese and all
Chinese study English, then our two
countries [China-America two countries]
are likely to become very good friends.

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|----------------|--|--------------|--|
| 1. syǎng | TV: think (of), think
(that) | 9. chǐngsing | N: conditions, situation
(<i>chǐng</i> 'facts' plus
<i>síng</i> 'form') |
| 2. dzěmmayàng? | SV: be of what sort?
be like what?
(<i>dzěmma</i> 'how' plus
<i>yàng</i> 'sort, kind') | 10. tsǎ | M: occasion, time |
| 3. hǎuji | NU: good many | 11. nyán | M: year |
| 4. Ēgwo, Ēgwo | PW: Russia | 12. chyùnyan | TE: last year (<i>chyù</i> 'go,
gone' plus <i>nyán</i>
'year') |
| 5. Fàgwo | PW: France | 13. jǐnnyan | TE: this year (<i>jǐn</i> 'the
present' plus <i>nyán</i>) |
| 6. Dégwo | PW: Germany | 14. míngnyan | TE: next year (<i>míng</i>
'next' plus <i>nyán</i>) |
| 7. Yigwo | PW: Italy | 15. yòu | AD: again, also, more |
| 8. shǐrching | N: matter, affair,
thing (<i>shǐ</i>
'matter' plus
<i>chǐng</i> 'facts') | 16. gwo | GP: <i>perfective suffix</i> (see
note 1) |

Substitution Table

nèige-wàigwo-rén	sywégwo-Jūnggwo-hwà	(méiyóu?)
nǐde-tàitai	chyùgwo-Yīnggwo	(ma?)
'Mǎ-Syānsheng	chǐrgwo-Fàgwo-fàn	
'Wáng-Tàitai	kàngwo-Fàgwo-shū	
tāde-péngyou	chànggwo-nèige-gēr	
'Wáng-Syānsheng	chǐrgwo-Ābēn-fàn	

Drill I. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nǐ-sywégwo-Jūnggwo-'hwà-méiyóu? | Have you ever studied Chinese? |
| 2. Sywégwo. | I have. |
| 3. Nǐ-chyùgwo-Ābēn-ma? | Have you ever been to Japan? |
| 4. Wǒ-chyùgwo-Ābēn. | I have been to Japan. |
| 5. Nǐ-chǐrgwo-'jǐtsz-Fàgwo-fàn? | How many times have you eaten French food? |
| 6. Wǒ-chǐrgwo-'sāntsǎ. | I've eaten it three times. |
| 7. Nǐ-dàu-Ābēn-chyùle-'jǐtsz? | How many times have you been to Japan? |
| 8. Wǒ-dàu-Ābēn-chyùle-'lyǎngtsǎ. | I've been to Japan twice. |
| 9. Nǐ-sywégwo-Ābēn-'hwà-méiyóu? | Have you ever studied Japanese? |
| 10. Méi-sywégwo. | I've never studied it. |
| 11. Chyùnyan nǐ-dàu-Sūjou-chyùle-'jǐtsz? | How many times did you go to Soochow last year? |

Drill I (cont.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 12. Dàu-Sūjou-chyùle-'sānts̄. | I went to Soochow three times. |
| 13. Jèr-yōu-méiyōu-rén hwèi-dzwò-wài-gwo-fàn? | Is there any one here who can cook foreign food? |
| 14. Yōu. Lǎu-Chyán dzwògwo-hǎujĩts̄ wàigwo-fàn. | Yes. Old Chyán has cooked foreign food a good many times. |
| 15. Nĭ-kàn nèige-difangde-chíngsing dzěmmayàng? | What do you think of conditions in that place? |
| 16. Nèige-difangde-chíngsing buhǎu. | Conditions in that place are bad. |
| 17. Nĭ-chyù-nǎr? | Where are you going? |
| 18. Wō-chyù-pùdz mǎi-dūngsi. | I'm going to the store to buy some things. |
| 19. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng jintyan syǎng-chī-shémma-fàn? | What would Mr. Martin like to eat today? |
| 20. Tā-syǎng-chī-Jūnggwo-fàn. | He would like to eat some Chinese food. |

Drill II. Model Sentences

- | | |
|--|---|
| *1. Nĭ-chīgwo-Jūnggwo-'fàn-méiyōu? | Have you ever eaten Chinese food? |
| *2. Tā-jīnnyan chīle-hǎujĩts̄-Jūnggwo-fàn. | He has eaten Chinese food a good many times this year. |
| *3. Wō-méi-chyùgwo-Dégwo. | I have never been to Germany. |
| *4. Di-'yĩts̄-chyù, wō-méi-chī-Jūnggwo-fàn. Di-'èrts̄, wō-chīle. | The first time I went, I didn't eat Chinese food. The second time, I did. |
| *5. Yì-jyōu-s̄-s̄-nyán wō-kànle-hǎujĩ-běn-Jūnggwo-shū. | In 1944 I read quite a few Chinese books. |
| *6. Nĭ-kàn Ēgwode-chíngsing syàndzài dzěmmayàng? | What do you think of conditions in Russia now? |
| *7. Yōu-hěn-dwō-Jūnggwo-rén buhwèi-syě-dz. | There are many Chinese who can't write. |
| 8. Nèige-rén hěn-buhǎu, swóyi wō-bu-yàu-dzwò-tāde-péngyōu. | That man is very bad, so I don't want to be his friend. |
| 9. Mǎ-Syānsheng-syǎng nèige-shrching méiyōu-yĩsz. | Mr. Martin thinks that matter is uninteresting. |
| 10. Wō-bujrdàu 'Wáng-Tàitai chyùgwo-'Yigwo-méiyōu. | I don't know whether Mrs. Wáng has ever been to Italy. |
| 11. Jèi-shr-'Mǎ-Syānsheng di-yĩts̄ chī-Jūnggwo-fàn. | This is the first time that Mr. Martin has eaten Chinese food. |
| 12. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide dzwótian yòu-chyùle-lyǎngts̄-le. | Manager Chyán went twice more yesterday. |
| 13. Tā-míngnyan hwèi-dàu-jèr-lai kàn-wōmen-ma? | Is he likely to come here next year to see us? |
| 14. Wōmen-jintyan 'kéyi-bukéyi chī-Jūnggwo-fàn? | May we eat Chinese food today? |
| 15. Tā-chyùnyan dàu-Jūnggwo-chyùle-'jĩts̄? | How many times did he go to China last year? |

Drill III. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Wǒ-chyùnyan méi-dàu-Yìgwo-chyu.
'Jinnyan-chyù. | 12. Jūnggwo-fàn dzwèi-hǎuchī. Nǐ-
'chīgwo-méiyóu? |
| 2. Nǐ-kàn nèige-chéng dzěmmayàng? | 13. Wǒ-syǎng 'Wáng-Tàitai méi-chyù-
gwo-Měigwo. |
| 3. Yǒude-rén-syǎng sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà
buhěn-yàujīn. | 14. Yì-jyǒu-sz-yì-nyán tā-dzài-Jūnggwo. |
| 4. Wǒ-dzwótyan láile-sāntsž, kěshr nǐ-
dōu-méi-dzài-jyā. | 15. Wàitou yǒu-rén chàng-Jūnggwo-gēr. |
| 5. Wǒ-méi-chīgwo-Ābēn-fàn, swóyi
bujrdàu Ābēn-fàn dzěmmayàng. | 16. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng míngtyan hwèi-dàu-
jèr-lai kàn-tāde-lǎu-péngyou. |
| 6. Jèi-shr-wǒ-di-yítsž chàng-Jūnggwo-
gēr. | 17. Jūng-Měi-lyǎng-gwó syāndzài-
dzwòle-hǎu-péngyou-le. |
| 7. Jèr-yǒu-rén hěn-jīdau jèige-difangde-
chíngsīng. | 18. Wǒ-jīntyan syǎng-syě-Jūnggwo-dz. |
| 8. Wǒ-běnlái-syǎng 'jīnnyan-chyù. | 19. Jèi-shr-tā-di-yítsž dàu-Měigwo-chyu,
swóyi tā-hái-buhwèi-shwō-Yīnggwo-
hwà. |
| 9. Wōmen-bukéyi shwō-jèige-shīching. | 20. Yàushr nǐ-méi-chīgwo-Jūnggwo-fàn,
wōmen-jyòu-dàu-fàngwǎr-chyu-chī-
ba. |
| 10. Di-'yítsž-shwō, tā-budǔng. Di-èrtsž,
tā-jyòu-dōu-dǔngle. | |
| 11. Chyùnyan tā-dàu-Yīnggwo-chyùle-
lyǎngtsž. | |

NOTES

- The particle *gwo* is added to an active verb to form an indefinite past tense. It is used to indicate that the subject has (or has not) undergone the experience indicated by the verb:
 - After a positive verb the particle *gwo* suggests the idea 'at some time in the past': *Wǒ-chīgwo-Jūnggwo-fàn* 'I have, at some time in the past, eaten Chinese food; I've had the experience of eating Chinese food.'
 - A verb ending in *gwo* is made negative by putting *méi* or *méiyǒu* before the verb. The particle *gwo* together with *méi* or *méiyǒu* suggests the idea of 'never': *Wǒ-méi(yǒu)-chīgwo-Jūnggwo-fàn* 'I have not, at any time in the past, eaten Chinese food; I have never eaten Chinese food.'
 - A verb ending in *gwo* is made interrogative by putting *méiyóu* or *ma* at the end of the sentence. The particle *gwo* together with *méiyóu* or *ma* suggests the idea of 'ever': *Nǐ-chīgwo-Jūnggwo-fàn-méiyóu?* 'Have you, at any time in the past, eaten Chinese food? Have you ever eaten Chinese food?'
- The number of times that something happens is expressed in Chinese by phrases placed after the verb, much as we say in English 'He went three times.' If the verb has an object, it generally comes at the end; this would be like saying in English, 'He ate three times Chinese food' instead of 'He ate Chinese food three times.' The word for 'time' is *tsž*; it is a measure and therefore follows a number: *Tā-dàu-Jūnggwo-chyùgwo-sāntsž* 'He has been to China three times,' *Wǒ-chīgwo-sāntsž-Jūnggwo-fàn* 'I've eaten three times Chinese food, I've eaten Chinese food three times.' Sometimes the object is placed at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis: *Jūnggwo-fàn wǒ-chīgwo-sāntsž* 'Chinese food I've eaten three times.'

- b. The particle *gwo*, which was used in the preceding sentences to show that the repeated actions took place at some indefinite time in the past, is replaced by *le* when a definite time is expressed: *Chyùnnyan wō-ch̄le-sānts̄-Jūnggwo-fàn* 'Last year I ate Chinese food three times.'
- c. The measure *ts̄* preceded by an ordinal number like 'the first' forms expressions of "time when." Like others of this type, these time expressions come before or after the subject: *Di-yŭts̄ t̄a-búdzai-jyā*, *T̄a-di-yŭts̄ búdzai-jyā* 'The first time he wasn't at home.'
3. Calendar years are expressed by putting numbers in telephone style, such as 1-9-4-4, in front of the measure *nyán* 'year,' *yì-jyōu-s̄-s̄-nyán* '1944.'
 4. The object of a preceding verb is sometimes the subject of a following verb as well. Such fusions of two sentences are especially common with the verb *yōu* 'to have, there is.' In the English translation the relative pronouns 'who,' 'which,' 'that' are often used to bridge the two sentences: *Yōu-rén yàu-m̄i-shū* 'There are people want buy books, There are some people who want to buy books,' *M̄eyōu-rén yàu-chyù* 'There aren't any people want to go, No one wants to go,' *J̄èi-shr-di-yŭts̄ wō-dàu-Jūnggwo-lai*, *J̄èi-shr-wō-di-yŭts̄ dàu-Jūnggwo-lai* 'This is the first time that I've come to China.'
 5. The verbs *lái* 'come' and *chyù* 'go' sometimes dispense with the coverb *dàu* 'to' and are followed directly by a word expressing the goal of the action. Hence, *T̄a-chyùle-M̄eigwo* 'He has gone to America' instead of *T̄a-dàu-M̄eigwo-chyùle*; *Wō-chyù-pùdz* 'I'm going to the store' instead of *Wō-dàu-pùdz-chyù*.
 6. The verb *kàn* 'to look at' when followed by a sentence means 'to consider, to think': *Wō-kàn nèige-rén buhǎu* 'It seems to me that that man is no good.'
 7. The verb *syǎng* followed by a noun means 'to think of' or 'to long for': *Wō-syǎng wōde-lǎu-péngyou* 'I'm thinking of my old friends.' When followed by a sentence it also means 'to think that.' In this sense it is often interchangeable with *kàn*; sometimes, however, it suggests real thought rather than visual impression or the quick judgment implied by *kàn*: *Wō-syǎng t̄a-shr-Yinggwo-rén* 'I think he is an Englishman.' As an auxiliary verb *syǎng* means 'have a mind to, desire to, like to, plan to': *Wō-syǎng ch̄-Jūnggwo-fàn* 'I have a mind to eat some Chinese food, I'd like to eat some Chinese food.'
 8. The auxiliary verb *hwèi* 'be capable of' also means 'be likely to': *T̄a-míngtyan hwèi-lái* 'He is likely to come tomorrow.'
 9. The verb *dzwò* 'to do, to make,' when followed by some nouns, especially those referring to professions, is translated as 'to be.' This idiom is like English 'He'll never make a good football player.' Hence, *dzwò-péngyou* means 'to be friends' and not 'to make friends.'
 10. The adverbs *dzài*, *yòu*, *hái*, and *yě* need to be distinguished as to meaning and use. *Dzài* means 'again, more, further' and is used for the repetition of an action in the future: *Wō-míngtyan dzài-lái* 'I'm coming again tomorrow.' *Yòu* means 'again, more, also' and is used for the repetition of an action in the past: *T̄a-dzwótyan láile-yŭts̄, j̄intyan t̄a-yòu-láile-yŭts̄* 'He came once yesterday and he came once more today.' *Hái* means 'still, in addition, more' and is used to indicate continued action: *T̄a-hái-dzài-jèr* 'He is still here,' *Wō-hái-yàu* 'I still want some, I want some more,' *Wō-m̄ile-sānbèn-shū, wō-hái-yàu-m̄i-yìbèn* 'I bought three books

and still want to buy one, I bought three books and want to buy one more.' *Yě* means 'also, too, besides' and has a wide range in use; it often refers to the subject: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng dzài-jèr, 'Wáng-Syānsheng yě-dzài-jèr 'Mr. Martin is here, and Mr. Wáng is also here.'

11. The noun *shì* 'matter, affair' is used chiefly in a few more or less set phrases such as *dzwò-shì* 'to do things.' The noun *shìching*, which has the same meaning as *shì*, is used much more widely and freely.
12. The expression *Jūng-Měi lyǎng-gwó* 'the two countries of China and America' is typical of many stock phrases derived from literary or semi-literary Chinese. It uses the abbreviations *Jūng* and *Měi* for China and America and omits the measure *ge* after *lyǎng*. It is best to memorize these phrases individually rather than to make up other phrases on the same model, as it is hard to tell whether the model is limited or can be extended at will.

LESSON 20

COMPLETED ACTION WITH *de*

Conversation: Martin tells how he lost a bet

- | | |
|---|---|
| M: 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nǐ-chyùgwo-
'Fàgwo-méiyóu? | Mr. Wáng, have you ever been to France? |
| W: 'Méi-chyùgwo. Wǒ-jǐ-chyùgwo-
Měigwo. | I've never been (there). I've only been to America. |
| M: Nǐ-shr-'něinyán dàu-'Měigwo-
chyùde? | When did you go to America? |
| W: Wǒ-yì-jyǒu-sz-líng-nyán-chyùde.
Nèi-shr-wǒ-dì-yítsz dàu-Měigwo-
chyu. | I went in 1940. That was the first time I went to America. |
| M: Nǐ-dàu-Měigwo chyùgwo-'jǐtsz? | How many times have you been to America? |
| W: Wǒ-chyùgwo-'lyǎngtsz. Dì-èrtsz shr-
yì-jyǒu-sz-yì-nyán. | I've been (there) twice. The second time was in 1941. |
| M: Nèitsz nǐ-shr-jǐywe dàu-Měigwo? | What month did you arrive in America that time? |
| W: Wǒ-shr yì-jyǒu-sz-yì-nyán jēngywe
èrshr-lyòuhàu dàu-Měigwo. | I arrived in America on January 26, 1941. |
| M: Nèitsz jīnggwo-'Rbēn-le-méiyóu? | Did you pass through Japan that time? |
| W: Méiyóu. Nèige-shíhou Jūnggwo-
rén bunéng-jīnggwo-Rbēn. Wǒ-
jyòu-jīnggwo-Myǎndyàn-le. | No. At that time Chinese could not go through Japan. So I went through Burma. |
| M: Nǐ-yě-jīnggwo-Yīndu-le-ma? | Did you also pass through India? |
| W: Yě-jīnggwole. | I also passed through it. |
| M: Nèitsz nǐ-tàitai yě-chyù-Měigwo-le-
ma? | Did your wife also go to America that time? |

- W: 'Méi-chyù. Tā-méi-chyùgwo-wàigwo. She didn't go. She has never been abroad.
- M: Nèi-lyǎngtsz ní-shr-dzwò-'chwán-chyùde-ma? Did you go by boat those two times?
- W: Lyǎngtsz wǒ-dōu-shr-dzwò-'chwán-chyùde. I went by boat both times.
- M: Wǒ-yě-shr-dzwò-chwán dàu-'Jūng-gwo-láide. I also came to China by boat.
- W: Ní-búshr-dzwò-fēiji-láide-ma? Didn't you come by plane?
- M: Búshr. Dzwò-fēiji tài-gwèi. No. It's too expensive by plane.
- W: Ní-'jīywe-dàude? What month did you arrive?
- M: Wǒ-chyùnyan-'chīywe-dàude. I arrived in July of last year.
- W: Chwánshangde-rén dzěmmayàng? What were the people on the boat like?
- M: Chwánshangde-rén dōu-hěn-hǎu. Yǒu-Měigwo-rén, yǒu-bā-jyǒuge-Yīnggwo-rén, hái-yǒu-hǎujǐge-Jūnggwo-rén. Chwánshang yǒu-lyǎng-sānge-Měigwo-rén dzwòle-wǒde-hǎu-péngyou-le. Tāmen-dōu-jǐdau wǒ-méi-láigwo-Jūnggwo. Yǒu-yìtyān tāmen-tīngshwō wǒ-sywé-gwo-Jūnggwo-hwà, kěshr-tāmen-busìn wǒ-hwèi-shwō. They all knew I had never gone to China. One day they heard that I had studied Chinese, but they didn't believe that I could speak it.
- W: Tāmen-wèi-shémma busìn? Why didn't they believe it?
- M: Yīnwei-Měigwo-rén dōu-syǎng Jūnggwo-hwà-hěn-nánshwō, hěn-nándǔng. Nèityān wǒ-péngyou-shwō: "'Mǎ-Syānsheng, chwánshang yǒu-hǎujǐge-Jūnggwo-rén. Ní-shwō-yì-lyǎngjyù-Jūnggwo-hwà. Yàushr-tāmen-dǔng, wǒmen-jyòu-gěi-ní-shǐkwài-chyán. Yàushr-tāmen-budǔng, ní-jyòu-gěi-wǒmen-shǐkwài-chyán. 'Hǎu-buhǎu?'" Because all Americans think that Chinese is very hard to speak and hard to understand. That day my friends said: "Mr. Martin, there are quite a few Chinese on board ship. Speak a sentence or two of Chinese. If they understand, then we'll give you \$10. If they don't understand, then you'll give us \$10. O.K.?"
- W: Dzěmmayàng-ne? What happened?
- M: Jūnggwo-rén-láile, wǒ-jyòu-shwōle-lyǎngjyù-Jūnggwo-hwà—Aiyā! The Chinese came, then I said a couple sentences in Chinese—oh my!
- W: Tāmen-budǔng-ma? Didn't they understand?
- M: Tāmen-yíjyù yě-budǔng. Wǒde-péngyou jyòu-yàu-wo gěi-tāmen-shǐkwài-chyán. Tāmen-shwō wǒ-shwōle-dà-hwà-le. They didn't understand a single sentence. My friends then demanded [wanted] that I give them \$10. They said I had been boasting [had talked big].
- W: Chwánshangde-Jūnggwo-rén wèi-shémma budǔng-níde-hwà? Why didn't the Chinese on the boat understand what you said?
- M: Ní-bujǐdau-ma? Tāmen-dōu-shr-Gwǎngdǔng-rén! Don't you know? They were all Cantonese!

Vocabulary

1. sìn	TV: believe	12. hàu	M: day (of the month)
2. dàu	TV: arrive (at)	13. Gwǎngdūng	PW: Kwangtung (Province) (gwǎng 'broad' plus dūng 'east')
3. jīnggwo	TV: pass through, pass by (jīng 'pass' plus gwò 'pass')	14. Yīndu	PW: India
4. dzwò	IV: sit (down)	15. Myǎndyàn,	PW: Burma
5. dzǒu	IV: depart, leave, go, travel, walk	Myàndyàn	
6. nán	SV: be difficult	16. wèi-	PH, SM: why? (wèi 'for' plus shémma 'what')
7. chwán	N: boat, ship	shémma?	
8. fēijī	N: airplane (fēi 'fly' plus jī 'machine')	17. āiyā!	INT: oh my! alas!
9. jyù	M: phrase, sentence		
10. ywè	N: month		
11. ywe	M: month (of the year)		

Substitution Tables

wǒ	dzwò	fēijī	chyu
nǐ		chwán	lai
tā		shémma	
'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide	(shr)	shémma-shfhòu	chyù -de
tāde-péngyou		dzwótyan	dzǒu
'Mǎ-Syānsheng		chyùnyan	lái
nǐ-tàitai		èrywe	dàu
'Wáng-Syānsheng		jīnnyan	

Drill I. Months of the year

1. jēngywe	January	5. wǔywe	May	9. jyǒuywe	September
2. èrywe	February	6. lyòuywe	June	10. shfywe	October
3. sānywe	March	7. chīywe	July	11. shfyíywe	November
4. szywe	April	8. bāywe	August	12. shfèrywe	December

Drill II. Calendar Dates

1. chīywe-szhàu	July 4th	7. yì-jyǒu-yì-bā-nyán	Nov. 11, 1918
2. shfèrywe èrshr-wǔhàu	December 25th	shfyíywe-shfyíhàu	
3. shfywe-shfhàu	October 10th	8. yì-jyǒu-sān-yì-nyán	Sept. 18, 1931
4. jēngywe-yíhàu	January 1st	jyǒuywe-shfbāhàu	
5. èrywe èrshr-èrhàu	February 22d	9. yì-jyǒu-sān-chī-nyán	July 7, 1937
6. yì-chī-chī-lyòu-nyán	July 4, 1776	chīywe-chihàu	
chīywe-szhàu		10. yì-jyǒu-sz-yì-nyán	Dec. 7, 1941
		shfèrywe-chihàu	

Drill III. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Yīnyán yǒu-'jǐge-ywè? | How many months are there in one year? |
| 2. Yīnyán yǒu-shfèrge-ywè. | There are 12 months in one year. |
| 3. Yǐge-ywè yǒu-'jǐtyān? | How many days are there in one month? |
| 4. Yǐge-ywè yǒu-èrshr-bā dāu-sānshr-yityān. | One month has 28 to 31 days. |
| 5. Jīntyan shr-'jǐhàu? | What's the date today? |
| 6. Jīntyan shr-èrywe-yǐhàu. | Today is February 1st. |
| 7. Nǐ-shr-dzwò-'chwán-láide-ma? | Did you come by boat? |
| 8. 'Búshr-dzwò-'chwán-láide. | I didn't come by boat. |
| 9. Nǐ-shémma-shfhou-dzǒu? | When are you leaving? |
| 10. Wǒ-míngtyan-jūngwǔ-dzǒu. | I'm leaving tomorrow noon. |
| 11. Tā-jǐngwo-Fàgwo-le-ma? | Did he go through France? |
| 12. Tā-méi-jǐngwo-Fàgwo. | He didn't go through France. |
| 13. Nǐ-jǐywe dāude-Jūnggwo? | What month did you arrive in China? |
| 14. Wǒ-wǔywe dāude-Jūnggwo. | I arrived in China in May. |
| 15. Tā-búshr-dāu-'Égwo-chyùde-ma? | Isn't it to Russia that he's gone? |
| 16. Búshr. Tā-shr-dāu-'Yigwo-chyùde. | No. It's to Italy. |
| 17. Jèige-dz shr-'shéi-syède? | By whom was this character written? |
| 18. Nèige-dz shr-'wǒ-syède. | That character was written by me. |
| 19. Tā-wèi-shémma hái-méi-lái-ne? | Why hasn't he come yet? |
| 20. Bujrdāu. Yǎushr-tā-jintyan bulái, míngtyan jyǒu-hwèi-lái. | I don't know. If he doesn't come today then he's likely to come tomorrow. |

Drill IV. Model Sentences

- | | |
|--|---|
| *1. Nèijyù-hwà hèn-nándǔng. | That sentence is very hard to understand. |
| *2. Jīntyan shr-'jǐhàu, nǐ-jǐrdau-ma? | What's the date today, do you know? |
| *3. Nèige-rén 'tyāntyān shwō-dà-hwà. | That man is always boasting. |
| *4. Dzwò-fēiji tài-gwèi. | Traveling by plane is too expensive. |
| *5. Tā-shr-dzwò-fēi'jǐ-láide-ma? | Did he come by plane? |
| *6. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng méi-jǐngwo-Yīndu. | Mr. Martin did not go through India. |
| *7. Tā-shr-yǐ-jyǒu-sz-ling-nyán chǐywe èrshr-wǔhàu dāude-Měigwo. | He arrived in America on July 25, 1940. |
| 8. Míngtyan tā-yàu-dzwò-fēiji dāu-Yínggwo-chyu. | Tomorrow he will go to England by plane. |
| 9. Wǒ-bujrdāu tā-wèi-shémma-shwō: "Āiyā!" | I don't know why he said, "Oh my!" |
| 10. Gwǎngdūng búdzai-Dūngsānshèng. | Kwangtung is not in Manchuria. |
| 11. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-láile! Chǐng-dzwò, chǐng-dzwò! | Mr. Martin, you've come! Please sit down! |
| 12. Wǒ-yǐ-kàn-ta jyǒu-jǐrdau tā-shr-Gwǎngdūng-rén. | As soon as I saw him I knew he was a Cantonese. |
| 13. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng shr-chyùnyan dāu-Jūnggwode. | Mr. Martin arrived in China last year. |

Drill IV (cont.)

14. Jèige-jwōdz wō-shr-dzài-'Jūngwo-māide. I bought this table in China.
15. Míngnyan 'Mǎ-Syānsheng yàu-dàu-Jūngwo-chyu kàn-tāde-lāu-péngyou. Next year Mr. Martin will go to China to see an old friend of his.

Drill V. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Dzwò-nèige-dà-chwán 'dwōshau-chyán? | 12. Nǐ-wèi-shémma bushwō-Jūngwo-hwà? |
| 2. Tā-běnlái-syǎng dzwò-fēiji dàu-Yīngwo-chyu. | 13. Méiyōu-rén sìn-wō-hwèi-shwō-Jūngwo-hwà. |
| 3. Nǐ-péngyou yě-shr-dzwò-'chwán-láide-ma? | 14. Jintyan shr-shferywe-bāhàu. |
| 4. Āiyā! Wō-wàngle-mǎi-shū-le! | 15. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng dzwótyan dzwò-fēi'jī-chyùde. |
| 5. Dzwò-fēiji-dàu-Jūngwo-chyùde-rén hěn-shǎu. | 16. Syàndzài dzwò-fēiji dàu-Jūngwo-chyu hěn-nán. |
| 6. Tā-dàu-Fàgwo-chyùde-hǎujǐtsz-le. | 17. Měi-yíge-rén shwōle-yíjyù-hwà-le. |
| 7. Nǐ-wèi-shémma budzwò-chwán-chyu? | 18. Yì-jyōu-sz-líng-nyán nǐ-dzài-wàigwo dzwò-shémma? |
| 8. Wō-yì-jyōu-sz-sān-nyán bāywe sǎn-shfhàu dzwò-fēi'jī-chyùde. | 19. Wōmen-wèi-shémma-bukéyi dàu-Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn-chyu chī-fàn? |
| 9. Tā-busin Dūngsānshèng yōu-láuhǔ. | 20. Tā-syàndzài búdzai-jyā. Tā-jintyan-shàngwǔ-dzōude. |
| 10. Tāmen-chyùnyan jīngwo-Yīngwo-le. Jīnyan yàu-jīngwo-Fàgwo. | |
| 11. Nǐ-'shémma-shfhou-dàude? | |

NOTES

1. The verb *dzwò* is used as a full verb meaning 'to sit, to sit down,' as in the sentence *Chīng-dzwò* 'Please sit down,' but it is also used as a coverb. As a coverb *dzwò* is most often used with the verbs *lái* 'come' and *chyù* 'go.' It takes as object the name of a conveyance; we therefore translate it as 'by': *Tāmen-dzwò-fēiji-chyu* 'They go by plane,' *Tāmen-dzwò-chwán-lai* 'They come by boat.' The literal translation of these sentences is 'They sitting on plane go,' 'They sitting on boat come.' The same idea is contained in the sentence *Dzwò-fēiji tǎi-qwèi* 'Sitting in a plane is too expensive,' which of course means 'It's too expensive to travel by plane.'
2. a. The syllable *ywè* is a noun meaning 'month' and in its neutral form *ywe* is a measure meaning 'month of the year.' As a noun it is preceded by the measure *ge*, as in the sentence *Yìnyán yōu-shrèrge-ywè* 'One year has twelve months.' As a measure, it is preceded directly by a number from two to twelve to form expressions for the months of the year: *èrywe* 'February,' *sānywe* 'March.' These forms are short for *di-èrywe* 'the second month,' *di-sānywe* 'the third month,' etc. The word for January is irregular: *jēngywe*. We get quite different meanings from the use of the noun or the measure: *èrywe* 'February,' *lyǎngge-ywè* 'two months,' *sānywe* 'March,' *sāngge-ywè* 'three months.'
- b. The measure *hàu* 'day of the month,' like the measure *ywe*, is preceded directly by a number, as in *yìhàu*, *èrhàu*, etc. These are short for *di-yìhàu*, *di-èrhàu*, etc. They refer to the days of the month: *yìhàu* 'the first day of the month.'

- c. Chinese expresses dates by presenting first the year, then the month, and then the day. As in other cases, the larger divisions of time precede the smaller: *yì jyōu-sz-sz-nyán chīywe wūhàu* 'July 5, 1944.'
3. a. The sentence *Tā-shr-chyūnyan-chyūde* literally means 'He is one who went last year.' This type of sentence, which includes the verb *shr* and ends in *de*, is also used to express a past tense in cases where the most important thing is something other than the verb. The thing that is emphasized comes between *shr* and *de*:
- Tā-(shr)-'chyūnyan-chyūde.* It was *last year* that he went, He went *last year*.
- Tā-(shr)-dzwō-'chwán-chyūde.* It was *by boat* that he went, He went *by boat*.
- Tā-(shr)-dàu-'Yīnggwo-chyūde.* It was *to England* that he went, He went *to England*.

In the above examples the parentheses around *shr* mean that this word is often omitted: *Tā-'chyūnyan-chyūde* 'It was last year that he went.' However, *shr* is not omitted when the sentence is negative: *Tā-'būshr-chyūnyan-chyūde* 'It wasn't last year that he went, He didn't go last year.'

- b. The object of the verb which precedes *de* is expressed in several different ways:
1. Most often the object is understood from a previous sentence: *Wō-shr-dzwótyan-máide* 'I bought it yesterday.'
 2. Very often the object is placed at the beginning of the sentence: *Jèibèn-shū-wō-shr-'dzwótyan-máide* 'As regards this book, I bought it yesterday; I bought this book yesterday.'
 3. Sometimes the object is placed in its usual position right after the verb: *Tā-dzwótyan dàu-Měigwode* 'He arrived in America yesterday.'
 4. Occasionally the object is placed after *de*: *Tā-dzwótyan dāude-Měigwo* 'He arrived in America yesterday.'
4. The stative verb *nán* 'be difficult' has a use like that of *hǎu* in preceding other verbs to form compound stative verbs (see Lesson 12, Note 1):
- nánkàn* hard to look at, ugly *nánchī* hard to eat, unappetizing
nántīng hard to listen to, displeasing *nándǔng* hard to understand
5. The interjection *āiyā!* is used like 'Oh my! My Lord! Alas!' in English to express vexation, distress, commiseration, etc.
6. The phrase *shwō-dà-hwà* 'speak big words' is an idiom meaning 'to boast.'
7. *Gwǎngdūng-rén* 'a Cantonese' actually refers to anyone from the whole province of Kwangtung, of which Canton is the capital, and not alone from the city itself.

LESSON 21

TIME BY THE CLOCK

Conversation: Martin tells of his daily activities

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| M: Jintyan líbàijǐ? | What day of the week is today? |
| W: Jintyan shr-líbàier. | Today is Tuesday. |
| M: Syàndzài 'jǐdyǎn-jūng? | What time is it now? |

- W: Syàndzài chīdyǎn-chà-wūfēn. It's now 6.55.
- M: Wōmen-'shémma-shfhou kéyi-chf-fàn? When can we eat?
- W: Bādyǎn-jūng kéyi-chf. Nf-'tyān-tyān wǎnshang jèige-shfhou chf-fàn-ma? We can eat at eight. Do you eat every evening at this time?
- M: Dzài-Jūnggwo wō-měityān wǎnshang chī-bādyǎn-jūng chr-wǎnfàn, kěshr dzài-Měigwo shr-lyòu-chīdyǎn-jūng. 'Nf-shémma-shfhou-chf? In China I eat dinner every day at seven or eight in the evening, but in America it's six or seven. When do you eat?
- W: Wō-lyòu-chīdyǎn-jūng chf-wǎnfàn, shfèrdyǎn-jūng chf-wūfàn. I eat dinner at six or seven and lunch at twelve.
- M: Nf-'shémma-shfhou-chf-dzāufàn? When do you eat breakfast?
- W: Dzāushang chīdyǎn-bàn chf-dzāufàn. 'Nf-shémma-shfhou-chf? I have breakfast at 7.30 in the morning. When do you eat?
- M: Dzài-Měigwo wō-chīdyǎn-sānkè chf-dzāufàn, shfèrdyǎn-bàn chf-wūfàn. Dzài-Jūnggwo wō-bādyǎn-yíkè chf-dzāufàn, yīdyǎn-jūng chf-wūfàn. Yōude-shfhou wō-sz-wūdyǎn-jūng hái-chf-yidyǎr-dūngsi. In America I have breakfast at 7.45 and lunch at 12.30. In China I have breakfast at 8.15 and lunch at 1.00. Sometimes I also eat a little something at four or five.
- W: Nf-měityān 'shémma-shftou chyù-bàn-gūng? When do you go to work each day?
- M: Wō-jyōudyǎn-jūng dàu-gūngshr-fáng-chyu bàn-gūng. I go to the office to work at nine o'clock.
- W: Nf-'tyāntyān bàn-gūng-ma? Do you work every day?
- M: Bú-'tyāntyān bàn-gūng. Lf-bàityān bubàn-gūng. I don't work every day. I don't work on Sunday.
- W: Lf-bàityān budàu-gūngshrfáng-chyu-ma? You don't go to the office on Sunday?
- M: Yàushr-yōu-shf, jyòu-dàu-gūngshr-fáng-chyu. If there is anything (to do), then I go to the office.
- W: Yōude-shfhou lf-bàityān wō-yè-chyù bàn-gūng. Shàngge-lf-bàityān wō-chyùle. Sometimes I also go to work on Sunday. I went last week Sunday.
- M: Yàushr lf-bàityān buchyu-bàn-gūng, nf-dzwò-shémma? If you don't go to work on Sunday, what do you do?
- W: Yōude-shfhou dzài-jyā-kàn-shū, yōude-shfhou chyù-kàn-pényou. 'Nf-lf-bàityān dzwò-shémma? Sometimes I read at home, sometimes I go see friends. What do you do Sundays?
- M: Yōude-shfhou wō-yè-dzài-jyā nyàn-shū. Lf-bàiyī-dàu-lf-bàilyòu tyān-tyān-wǎnshang-jyōudyǎn-dàu-shf-dyǎn wō-nyàn-Jūngwén. Měi-lf-bàityān tsúng-syàwŭ-sāndyǎn-dàu-wūdyǎn yè-nyàn-yidyǎr. Sometimes I also study at home. Every day, Monday through Saturday from nine to ten in the evening I study Chinese. Every Sunday from three to five in the afternoon I also study a little.

- W: Nǐ-'tyāntyān nyàn-Jūngwén-ma? Do you study Chinese every day?
 M: Yíge-lǐbài yǒu-yì-lyǎngtyān bunyàn. There are one or two days in the week
 Yàushr-shrching tài-dwō jyòu-bu- that I don't study. If there's too much
 nyàn. to do, I don't study.

Vocabulary

1. bàn	TV: manage, do	12. dzǎushang	TE: morning (<i>dzǎu</i> 'early' plus <i>shang</i>)
2. nyàn	TV: study, read	13. wǎnshang	TE: evening (<i>wǎn</i> 'late' plus <i>shang</i>)
3. chà, chā	TV: to lack	14. dzǎufàn	N: breakfast (<i>dzǎu</i> 'early' plus <i>fàn</i> 'food')
4. tsúng	CV: from	15. wǔfàn	N: lunch (<i>wǔ</i> 'noon' plus <i>fàn</i>)
5. bàn	NU: half	16. wǎnfàn	N: dinner (<i>wǎn</i> 'late' plus <i>fàn</i>)
6. jūng	N: clock	17. yidyǎr	PH: a bit, a little
7. lǐbài	N: week	18. bàn-gūng	PH: to work (see Note 6)
8. gūngshrfáng	N: office		
9. wén	N: language (see Note 7)		
10. dyǎn	M: a dot, a bit		
11. kè	M: a quarter hour		

Substitution Tables¹

jǐ	-dyǎn	jūng	tsúng	* Sūjou	dàu	* Hángjou
yì	(chà)	yì	-fēn		jèr		nèr
lyǎng	(líng)	lyǎng			sāndyǎn		sǎdyǎn
sān		sān			Měigwo		Jūnggwo
.		.			dzwótyan		syàndzài
.		.					
.		.					

Drill I. Time by the Clock

1. yidyǎn-jūng	1.00	11. jyòudyǎn-chà-wǔfēn	8.55
2. lyǎngdyǎn-yíkè	2.15	12. lyǎngdyǎn-líng-sānfēn	2.03
3. sāndyǎn-bàn	3.30	13. shfyidyǎn-bàn	11.30
4. sǎdyǎn-sānkè	4.45	14. chīdyǎn-szshffēn	7.40
5. wǔdyǎn-shffēn	5.10	15. lyǎng-sāndyǎn-jūng	2.00 or 3.00
6. wǔdyǎn-chà-shffēn	4.50	16. chà-sānfēn-lyǎngdyǎn	1.57
7. bādyǎn-bàn	8.30	17. lyòudyǎn-shfszfēn	6.14
8. lyòudyǎn-sānkè	6.45	18. shfèrdyǎn-yíkè	12.15
9. chīdyǎn-èrshr-yífēn	7.21	19. yidyǎn-wǔfēn	1.05
10. shfèrdyǎn-jūng	12.00	20. bādyǎn-sānkè	8.45

1. The asterisks indicate that *Sūjou* goes only with *Hángjou*, *jèr* with *nèr*, etc. The parentheses indicate that the enclosed words may be omitted.

Drill II. Miscellaneous Time Expressions

1. wǎnshang jyödüyǎn-jūng	9.00 P.M.
2. syàwū lyǎngdyǎn-bàn	2.30 P.M.
3. dzǎushang lyödüyǎn-yíkè	6.15 A.M.
4. shàngwū shfdyǎn-wūfēn	10.05 A.M.
5. jintyan-wǎnshang shfdyǎn-sānkè	today at 10.45 P.M.
6. dzwótyan 'jidyǎn-jūng?	what time yesterday?
7. líbàisān syàwū sǎndyǎn-jūng	Wednesday at 3.00 P.M.
8. jèi-líbàityān wǎnshang	this Sunday evening
9. shàngge-líbàiwū syàwū	last Friday afternoon
10. syà-ywè yíhàu	the first of next month

Drill III. Questions and Answers

1. Tā-shr-'shémma-shfhou-dzöude?	When did he leave?
2. Tā-dzǎushang chīdyǎn-yíkè dzöude.	He left at 7.15 in the morning.
3. Jintyan búshr-líbàisān-ma?	Isn't today Wednesday?
4. Búshr. Jintyan shr-líbàisǎ.	No. Today is Thursday.
5. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng shàng-ywè-'jyhàu-láide?	What day of last month did Mr. Martin come?
6. Tā-shàng-ywè-shfsānhàu-láide.	He came on the thirteenth of last month.
7. Ní-'néng-bunéng jèi-líbàiwū-chyù?	Can you go this Friday?
8. Líbàiwū-bunéng. Líbàilyòu dzēm-mayàng?	I can't Friday. How is Saturday?
9. Jintyan shr-'jyhàu?	What day of the month is it today?
10. Jintyan búshr-bāhàu-ma?	Isn't today the eighth?
11. Syà-lyǎnge-ywè ní-syǎng-dzwò-shémma?	What do you plan to do in the next two months?
12. Tsúng-shfywe-yíhàu dàu-shfyfywe-sānshfhou wò-syǎng-sywé-yidyǎr-Jūngwo-hwà.	From October 1 to November 30 I plan to study a little Chinese.
13. Ní-míngtyan-wǎnshang yóu-shr-ma?	Do you have anything to do tomorrow evening?
14. Yóu-shr.	I have something to do.
15. Wómen-jintyan 'kéyi-bukéyi shfyì-dyǎn-bàn chī-wūfàn?	Today may we eat lunch at 11.30?
16. Kéyi. Nímen-syǎng-chī-'shémma?	Yes. What would you like to eat?
17. Jèitsz ní-yàu-'jidyǎn-jūng-chyù?	What time do you want to go this time?
18. Jèitsz wò-yàu-'sǎndyǎn-jūng-chyù. Shàngtsz wò-shr-'wūdyǎn-jūng-chyùde.	This time I want to go at 3.00. Last time I went at 5 o'clock.
19. Fēiji 'shémma-shfhou-dàu?	When will the plane arrive?
20. Fēiji chīdyǎn-líng-wūfēn-dàu.	The plane will arrive at 7.05.

Drill IV. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|--|
| *1. Syàndzài-'jidyǎn-jūng? | What time is it now? |
| *2. Lyǎngdyǎn-bàn. | 2.30. |
| *3. Jintyan búshr-lǐbàièr, shr-lǐbàisān. | Today is Wednesday, not Tuesday. |
| *4. Jintyan-shr-lǐbàijī, nǐ-jǐdau-ma? | What day of the week is it today, do you know? |
| *5. Shàng-lǐbàisān tā-méi-lái. | He didn't come last Wednesday. |
| *6. Wǒ-jintyan yàu-chyù-bàn-gūng. | I'm going to work today. |
| *7. Tsúng-lyǎngdyǎn dàu-sāndyǎn-bàn wǒ-yàu-nyàn-Jūngwén. | I will study Chinese from 2.00 to 3.30. |
| 8. Syàndzài búshr-wúdyǎn-sānkè-ma? | Isn't it 5.45 now? |
| 9. Wǒmen-wǎnshang chī-wǎnfàn, jūngwǔ chī-wǔfàn, dzǎushang chī-dzǎufàn. | We eat dinner in the evening, lunch at noon, and breakfast in the morning. |
| 10. Yidyǎr-chyán yě-méiyǒu. | There's no money at all. |
| 11. Syàndzài shr-bādyǎn-chà-shǐfēn, kěshr tā-hái-méi-lái. | It's now 7.50, but he hasn't come yet. |
| 12. Tā-shàng-ywè-èrhàu-dzǒude. | He left on the second of last month. |
| 13. Tā-lǐbàijī dàu-jèr-lái-chī-fàn? | What day of the week is he coming here to eat? |
| 14. Tsúng-Gwǎngdūng dàu-Dūngsān-shěng'dzēmǎ-dzǒu? | How does one travel from Kwangtung to Manchuria? |
| 15. Yinyán yǒu-shǐfèrge-ywè, yíge-ywè yǒu-szge-lǐbài, yíge-lǐbài yǒu-chītyān. | One year has twelve months, one month has four weeks, one week has seven days. |

Drill V. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Jèi-lǐbàisǐ wǒ-yàu-dàu-shūpù-chyu mǎi-dūngsi. | 13. Lǐbàiwǔ-syàwǔ wǒ-syǎng-dàu-pùdz-chyu mǎi-shū. |
| 2. Chǐng-ni chīdyǎn-jūng lái-chī-fàn. | 14. Dzwótyan-wǎnshang wǒ-dàu-chéng-wàitou-chyu kàn-péngyou-le. |
| 3. Wǒ-lǐbàityān budzwò-shǐ. | 15. Tsúng-sāndyǎn dàu-sāndyǎn-bàn wǒ-yàu-kàn-bàu. |
| 4. Nèige-rén tài-lǎu, swóyi tā-bunéng-dzwò-shǐ. | 16. Tā-shr-shàng-lǐbàilyòu shàngwǔ shǐdyǎn-yíkè dzǒude. |
| 5. Wǒ-hwèi-shwō-yidyǎr-Jūngwo-hwà. | 17. Syàndzài chīdyǎn-chà-lyòufēn. |
| 6. Wǒ-dzwótyan tài-máng, swóyi méi-nyàn-Jūngwén. | 18. Nǐ-dzwótyan-jūngwǔ wéi-shémǎ méi-dàu-jèr-lai kàn-wo? |
| 7. Yàushr-sāndyǎn-jūng tā-búdzai-jyā, wǒ-jyòu-sz-wúdyǎn-jūng dzài-lái. | 19. Nǐ-jidyǎn-jūng dàu-pùdz-chyu? |
| 8. Mǎ-Syānsheng-shwō lǐbàityān tā-méiyǒu-shǐ. | 20. Tā-shwō yǒude-Jūngwo-rén dzǎushang-wúdyǎn-jūng jyòu-chī-dzǎu-fàn. |
| 9. Tā-shàng-ywè dàu-'Jūngwo-láide. | |
| 10. Syàndzài shr-szdyǎn-chà-wǔfēn. | |
| 11. Nǐ-lǐbài'jī-dzǒu? | |
| 12. Wǒ-jintyan tài-máng, swóyi-bunéng-chī-wǔfàn. | |

NOTES

1. Time by the clock is expressed as follows:
 - a. The measure *dyǎn* 'hour' is used with *jūng* 'clock' to express the even hours: *yìdyǎn-jūng* 'one hour of the clock,' *lyǎngdyǎn-jūng* 'two o'clock.'
 - b. The measure *kè* 'quarter hour,' which follows the numbers *yì* and *sān* to form the phrases *yìkè* 'a quarter hour' and *sānkè* 'three quarters of an hour,' is used to express quarter past and quarter of the hour: *yìdyǎn-yìkè* '1.15,' *yìdyǎn-sānkè* '1.45.'
 - c. The measure *fēn* is used to express the minutes: *yìdyǎn-yìfēn* '1.01,' *yìdyǎn-èrshífēn* '1.20.' *Líng* 'zero' is sometimes used before the minute expression if this is less than ten: *yìdyǎn-líng-yìfēn* '1.01.'
 - d. The number *bàn* 'half' is used to express the half-hour: *yìdyǎn-bàn* '1.30,' *shídyǎn-bàn* '10.30.'
 - e. The minutes before the hour, as in the expression 'four minutes of two,' are sometimes expressed as a certain number of minutes after the hour, as in *yìdyǎn-wúshí-lyòufēn* '1.56.' Another method is to state the hour and then use *chà* 'to lack' followed by the number of minutes before the hour: *lyǎngdyǎn-chà-sìfēn* 'two o'clock lacking four minutes, 1.56,' *sàdyǎn-chà-bāfēn* '3.52,' *sàdyǎn-chà-yìkè* '3.45.' These last phrases are sometimes reversed, as follows: *chà-sìfēn-lyǎngdyǎn* 'lacking four minutes of two, 1.56,' *chà-bāfēn-sàdyǎn* '3.52,' *chà-yìkè-sàdyǎn* '3.45.'
2. a. The noun *lìbài* 'week' adds *tyān* 'day' to form the word for 'Sunday' and adds numbers from one to six to form the names for the other days of the week: *lìbàityān* 'Sunday,' *lìbàiyī* 'Monday,' *lìbàier* 'Tuesday,' *lìbàisān* 'Wednesday,' *lìbàisì* 'Thursday,' *lìbàiwǔ* 'Friday,' *lìbàilyòu* 'Saturday.'
- b. The question-word *jǐ*, which as noted in Lesson 9, Note 2b takes the place of a digit, is added to *lìbài* to form the question-word *lìbàijǐ?* 'what day of the week?'
3. The words *shàng* 'top, upper, last,' *jèi* 'this,' *syà* 'bottom, lower, next,' are used as specifiers, with or without the measure *ge*, before *ywè* 'month,' *lìbài* 'week,' and the days of the week: *shàngge-ywè*, *shàng-ywè* 'last month,' *jèige-lìbài*, *jèi-lìbài* 'this week,' *syàge-lìbàiyī*, *syà-lìbàiyī* 'next week Monday, next Monday.' These specifiers are also used with *tsz* 'time': *shàngtsz* 'last time,' *syàtsz* 'next time,' *jèitsz* 'this time.' Since *tsz* is a measure, it follows the specifiers directly.
4. The coverb *tsúng* 'from' is often used with *dàu* 'to' in the pattern *tsúng A dàu B* 'from A to B.' If A and B are time-expressions the *tsúng* is sometimes omitted: *tsúng-Měigwo dàu-Jūnggwo* 'from America to China,' *tsúng-yìdyǎn dàu-lyòudyǎn*, *yìdyǎn dàu-lyòudyǎn* 'from one o'clock to six o'clock.'
5. The phrase *yidyǎr* is made up of the number 'one' (here neutral in tone) plus the syllable *dyǎr*, which is a Pekingese form for *dyǎn* 'bit.' Hence *yidyǎr* also appears in the form *yidyǎn*. It is used in the meaning of 'a little bit, a little.'
6. In the phrase *bàn-gūng* the second syllable is a combining form meaning 'public' or 'public matters,' so that *bàn-gūng* in origin meant 'to do public matters.' It has now come to mean 'to do office work, to work' when applied to the activities of white-collar workers. *Wò-'tyāntyān dàu-gūngshrfáng-chyū bàn-gūng* 'I go to the office every day to work.' Somewhat different is the phrase *dzwò-shr* 'do affairs, do

things,' which is also translated as 'to work.' It is used to point out that a person is not idle or amusing himself but is occupied with certain tasks and duties: *Jīntyán wǒ-hěn-lèi, swóyì buyàu-dzwò-shr* 'I'm very tired today, so I don't want to work.'

7. The combining form *wén* literally means 'written language' but is also used in the sense of 'spoken language' or simply 'language' in general. It is joined with the combining forms of names of countries, such as *Jūng* for *Jūnggwo* 'China,' to form expressions for the languages of these countries: *Jūngwén* 'Chinese language.' In most cases the forms ending in *wén* are interchangeable with those ending in *hwà*. But only the forms in *wén* are used as objects of the verb *nyàn* 'to study': *Tā-buhwèi-shwō-Yīnggwo-hwà, Tā-buhwèi-shwō-Yīngwén* 'He can't speak English,' *Wǒ-jīntyán hái-yàu-nyàn-yidyǎr-Jūngwén* 'I want to study a little more Chinese today.'
8. a. The phrase *kàn-shū* is used in the meaning of 'to read a book' when the material is light or easily readable. The phrase *nyàn-shū* is used in the meaning of 'to read a book' when the material requires careful reading and digesting. Hence *nyàn-shū* also has the meaning of 'to study.'
- b. While *nyàn-shū* is used for the simple expression 'to study,' both *nyàn* and *sywé* are used for studying a specific subject: *Wǒ-syǎng-nyàn-Yīngwén* 'I plan to study Chinese,' *Nǐ-sywéngwo-Jūng'wén-méiyǒu?* 'Have you ever taken Chinese?'
- c. *Nyàn*, whose literal meaning is 'read aloud,' is generally used for 'to study' when this refers to home-work or other study done by oneself: *Wǒ-jīntyán buyàu-nyàn-Jūngwén* 'I don't want to study any Chinese today.'

LESSON 22

DURATION OF TIME

Conversation: Wáng and Martin discuss their travels

- W: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-búshr-chyùnyan-lyòuywe dàu-'Jūnggwo-láide-ma? Mr. Martin, didn't you come to China in June of last year?
- M: Búshr. Wǒ-shr-chyùnyan-'chīywe-láide. No. I came last July.
- W: Nǐ-dzwòle-'jǐge-lǐbàide-chwán? How many weeks were you on the boat?
- M: Wǒ-dzwòle-szè-wǔge-lǐbàide-chwán. I was on the boat for four or five weeks.
- W: Nǐ-syǎng-dzài-Jūnggwo jù-'dwō-shau-shfhou? How long do you plan to live in China?
- M: Běnlái syǎng-jù-yìnyán. Kěshr-syàndzài wǒ-jǐdau wǒde-shr búshr-yìnyánde-shr, swóyì wǒ-syǎng dzài-jù-lyǎng-sānnián. Originally I planned to stay one year. But now I know that my business isn't a one-year matter, so I plan to stay for two or three more.
- W: Nǐ-dzài-jèr yǐjìng-jùle-'jǐge-ywè-le? How many months have you been living here?
- M: Wǒ-dzài-jèr-yǐjìng-jùle-'shǐge-ywè-le. I've been living here for ten months.

- W: Ní-líkāi-Měigwo 'dwōshau-shfhou-le? How long have you been away from America?
- M: Wō-líkāi-Měigwo yījing-yìnyán-le. Yǒu-yítsz wō-líkāi-jyā-èrshr-dwōge-ywè. I've been away from America for a year. Once I was away from home for more than twenty months.
- W: Ní-wèi-shémma dàu-Jūnggwo-lai? Why did you come to China?
- M: Wō-yàu-jǐdau-Jūnggwode-chíng-sing. (Because) I wanted to know about conditions in China.
- W: Ní-hái-syǎng-sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà-ma? Are you going to study more Chinese?
- M: Wō-dzài-Měigwo sywéle-yidyār-Jūnggwo-hwà. Dzài-jèr yě-sywéle-yidyār. Kěshr wōde-hwà buháu, swóyi hái-syǎng-sywé-yidyār. In America I studied a little Chinese. Here I studied a bit too. But my speech isn't good, so I want to study a bit more.
- W: Ní-dzài-Měigwo sywéle-'jīnyánde-Jūnggwo-hwà? How many years did you study Chinese in America?
- M: Dzài-Měigwo sywéle-lyǎngnyánde-Jūnggwo-hwà. I studied Chinese two years in America.
- W: Měige-lǐbài sywé-'jǐge-jūngtóu? How many hours a week did you study?
- M: 'Sānge-jūngtóu. Three hours.
- W: Sānge-jūngtóu budwō. Three hours isn't much.
- M: Wō-jǐdau-budwō. Chyùnyan dzài-chwánshang yǒu-wū-lyòuge-lǐbài méiyǒu-shì. Měityān wō-nyàn-sz-wūge-jūngtóude-Jūngwén. I know it's not much. Last year on the boat there were five or six weeks when I didn't have anything to do. Every day I studied four or five hours of Chinese.
- W: Wō-yě-dzwògwo-lyǎngtsz-chwán, dzài-chwánshang yě-nyànle-hěndwō-shū. I've also been on a boat a couple of times, and also read a good deal on board.
- M: Ní-nèi-lyǎngtsz dzwòle-'jǐge-lǐbàide-chwán? How many weeks were you on the boat those two times?
- W: Měitsz dōu-dzwòle-wūge-lǐbaide-chwán. Hái-yǒu-yítsz dzwòle-lyǎngge-lǐbàide-chìchē, kěshr chìchēshang bunéng-kàn-shū. Both times I was on a boat for five weeks. On another occasion I was in an auto for two weeks, but one can't read in cars.
- M: Ní-dzwò-chìchē dàu-'shémma-dìfang-chyùle? Where did you go by car?
- W: Dàu-Myǎn'dyàn-chyùle. I went to Burma.
- M: Tsúng-Myǎndyàn búshr-dzwò-chwán dàu-'Měigwo-chyùde-ma? From Burma didn't you go to America by boat?
- W: Búshr. Tsúng-Myǎndyàn-dàu-Yīndu shr-dzwò-fēi'jī-chyùde. No. From Burma to India I went by plane.
- M: Ní-dzwòle-'jǐge-jūngtóu-fēiji? How many hours were you on the plane?
- W: Dzwòle-wū-lyòuge-jūngtóude-fēiji. Tsúng-Yīndu-dàu-Měigwo shr-dzwò-'chwán-chyùde. I was on the plane for five or six hours. From India to America I went by boat.

- M: Tsúng-Jūnggwo-dàu-Myǎndyàn lù dzěmmayàng? From China to Burma how was the road?
- W: Lù dzwèi-buhǎudzǒu. Wǒ-pà-dzǒu-nèige-lù, swóyi di-èrtsz-chyù-Měi-gwo jyòu-dzwò-fěiji dàu-Yindu. The road was extremely bad going. I was quite scared to travel that road, so the second time I went to America I went by plane to India.
- M: Nì-lùshang pà-shémma? What were you afraid of on the road?
- W: Nèige-lù hěn-nándzǒu. Shān-hěngāu, chíchē-yòu-buhǎu, kāichēde yěbudōu-hwèi-kāi-chē. That road was very hard to travel. The mountains were very high, the cars were no good, and the drivers weren't all good at [able at] driving.
- M: Dzěmma-ne? Wǒ-tǐngshwo nèigelùshang kāichēde dōu-hěnhǎu. How's that? [How?] I heard that on that road the drivers were all very good.
- W: Budwèi. Nèigelùshangde-chíchē hěndwō, kěshr hwèi-kāi-chēde-rén hěنشǎu. Yǒu-yítǎn wǒ-wènleyíge-kāichēde: "Nì-kāile-'jǐnyán-chē-le?" That's wrong. There were lots of autos on that road but there were few people able to drive. One day I asked one driver: "How many years have you been driving a car?"
- M: Tā-shwō-shémma-ne? What did he say?
- W: Tā-shwō: "Shàngge-lǐbài shr-wǒ-di-yítsz kāi-chíchē." He said: "Last week was the first time I've driven a car."
- M: Āiyā! Nì-dzěmma-néng-bupà-ne? Good Lord! How could you help being scared?

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|----------|--|------------|--|
| 1. jù | IV: dwell, live | 5. jūngtóu | N: hour (<i>jūng</i> 'clock' plus <i>tóu</i> 'head') |
| 2. kāi | TV: open, drive, etc. | 6. lù | N: road |
| 3. líkāi | TV: leave, be away from (<i>lí</i> 'separated from' plus <i>kāi</i> 'open') | 7. chē | N: vehicle, car |
| 4. wèn | TV: ask, inquire (about) | 8. chíchē | N: auto, car (<i>chì</i> 'gas' plus <i>chē</i> 'vehicle') |
| | | 9. yǐjing | AD: already (<i>yǐ</i> 'already' plus <i>jīng</i> 'pass') |

Substitution Tables¹

	*		*
jǐ	-nyán	sywé (-le)	jǐ -nyán (de) Dégwo-hwà (le)
bàn	-ge ywè	nyàn	bàn -ge ywè shū
yī	-ge líbài	bàn	yī -ge líbài gūng
lyǎng	-tyān	chàng	lyǎng -tyān gē
sān	-ge jūngtóu	syě	sān -ge jūngtóu dz
.	-fēn jūng	dzwò	.
.			.
.			.

1. The asterisks indicate that *sywé* goes only with *Dégwo-hwà*, *nyàn* with *shū*, *bàn* with *gūng*, etc.

'Mǎ-Syānsheng	líkǎi	Jūnggwo	(yíjīng)	(yǒu)	yī	-nyán	le
nǐ-tàitai		jèr			lyǎng	-ge ywè	
wōde-péngyou		Měigwo			sān	-ge líbài	
					.		
					.		
					.		

Drill I. Expressions of Duration of Time

1. jǐnyán?	how many years?	13. jǐtyān?	how many days?
2. bànnián	half a year	14. yītyān	one day
3. yīnyán	one year	15. lyǎngtyān	two days
4. lyǎngnyán	two years	16. sāntyān	three days
5. jǐge-ywè?	how many months?	17. jǐge-jūngtóu?	how many hours?
6. bànge-ywè	half a month	18. sìge-jūngtóu	four hours
7. yīge-ywè	one month	19. wūge-jūngtóu	five hours
8. lyǎngge-ywè	two months	20. liùge-jūngtóu	six hours
9. jǐge-lǐbài?	how many weeks?	21. jǐfēn-jūng?	how many minutes?
10. yīge-lǐbài	one week	22. liǎngfēn-jūng	two minutes
11. lyǎngge-lǐbài	two weeks	23. chīfēn-jūng	seven minutes
12. sānge-lǐbài	three weeks	24. yīkè-jūng	quarter of an hour

Drill II. Duration of Time in the Future

1. Wō-yàu-sywé-yinyánde-Dégwo-hwà.	I will study German for one year.
2. Tā-syǎng-bàn-sānge-jūngtóude-gūng.	He plans to work for three hours.
3. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng jīntyan-yàu-kàn-lyǎngge-jūngtóu-bàu.	Mr. Martin will read the newspapers for a couple of hours today.
4. Nèige-rén yàu-shwō-èrshrfēn-jūngde-hwà.	That man will speak for twenty minutes.
5. Tā-syǎng dzài-Jūnggwo jù-sānnián.	He plans to live in China for three years.
6. Tā-syǎng líkǎi-Yīnggwo-sānnián.	He plans to leave England for three years.

Drill III. Duration of Time in the Past

1. Wō-dzwòle-wūge-jūngtóu-fēijī.	I was on the plane for five hours.
2. Tā-kànle-yīge-jūngtóu-shū.	He read for an hour.
3. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng kāile-yīkè-jūngde-chē.	Mr. Martin drove the car for a quarter of an hour.
4. Tā-sywéle-szynyán-Déwén.	He studied German for four years.
5. Tā-dzài-Jūnggwo jùle-'jǐnyán?	How many years did he live in China?
6. Chyùnyan tā-líkǎi-Yīnggwo-'jǐge-ywè?	Last year how many months was he away from England?

Drill IV. Duration of Time to the Present

1. Tāmen-yíjīng-dzwòle shfge-jūngtóu-fēijī-le.	They have already been on the plane for ten hours.
--	--

Drill IV (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 2. Dégwo-hwà wǒ-sywéle-lyǎngnyán-le. | I have been studying German for two years. |
| 3. Nèige-rén chàngle-szshrfēn-jūngde-gē-le. | That man has been singing for forty minutes. |
| 4. Wǒ-yǐjing-kāile lyòuge-jūngtóu-chē-le. | I've already been driving for six hours. |
| 5. Tā-dzài-Myǎndyàn yǐjing-jùle-shfge-ywè-le. | He has already been living in Burma for ten months. |
| 6. Wǒ-dzài-jèr-chīnyán-le. | I've been here for seven years. |
| 7. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng dzài-Jūnggwo jùle-yǐjing-lyǎngnyán-le. | Mr. Martin has already been living in China for two years. |
| 8. Wǒmen-dzwò-fēiji yǐjing-yǒu-szge-jūngtóu-le. | We've already been on the plane for four hours. |
| 9. Wǒ-líkāi-Jūnggwo yǒu-shfnyán-le. | I've been away from China for ten years. |
| 10. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng líkāi-Měigwo yǐjing-lyǎngnyán-le. | Mr. Martin has already been away from America for two years. |

Drill V. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Nǐ-dzài-Myǎndyàn jùle-'dwōshau-shfhou? | How long did you live in Burma? |
| 2. Wǒ-dzài-Myǎndyàn jùle-jǐ-yǒu-lyòuge-ywè. | I lived in Burma for only six months. |
| 3. Chǐng-wèn, tsúng-jèr dàu-Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn 'dzēmǎ-dzǒu? | May I ask, how does one go from here to the Chinese-American Restaurant? |
| 4. Dzǒu-jèige-lù jyòu-kéyi-dàu. | You can get there by this road [Walk this road and then you can get there]. |
| 5. Tāmen-hái-dzài-nèr tán-hwà-ma? | Are they still talking there? |
| 6. Tāmen-dzài-nèr yǐjing-tánle-bàntyān-le. | They've been talking there for a long time [for half a day]. |
| 7. Kāichēde dzài-nǎr? | Where's the driver? |
| 8. Tā-dàu-fàngwǎr-chyule. | He's gone to the restaurant. |
| 9. Nǐ-sywégwo-Yínggwo-'hwà-méiyǒu? | Have you ever studied English? |
| 10. Sywégwo-yidyǎr. Chyùnyan wǒ-sywéle-lyǎng-sānge-ywè-Yínggwo-hwà. | A little. Last year I studied English for two or three months. |
| 11. Jèige-difang yǒu-méiyǒu-chìchē? | Are there any autos at this place? |
| 12. Jèige-difang yíge-chìchē dōu-méiyǒu. | There isn't a single car here. |
| 13. 'Wáng-Syānsheng dzài-'jyā-búdzai? | Is Mr. Wáng at home? |
| 14. Syāndzài-búdzai-jyā. Tā-dzǒule yǐjing-èrshfēn-jūng-le. | He's not at home now. He's been gone for twenty minutes. |
| 15. Tā-wèi-shēmǎ buyàu-màigei-nǐ-ne? | Why doesn't he want to sell you any? |
| 16. Tā-shwō-méiyǒule. | He says there isn't any more. |
| 17. Tsúng-Dūngsānshēng dàu-Gwǎngdūng nǐ-dzǒule-'dwōshau-shfhou? | How long did you travel from Manchuria to Kwangtung? |

Drill V (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 18. Tsúng-Düngsānshěng dàu-Gwǎng-düng wō-dzòule-bātyān. | I traveled for eight days from Manchuria to Kwangtung. |
| 19. Ní-dzwògwo-fēiji-ma? | Have you ever flown? |
| 20. Wō-dzwògwo-lyǎngtsz-fēiji. | I've flown twice. |

Drill VI. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|--|
| *1. Wōmen-syǎng-sywé sānnyānde-Jüggwo-hwà. | We plan to study Chinese for three years. |
| *2. Wō-dzwótyan kànle-wüge-jüngtóushū. | Yesterday I read for five hours. |
| *3. Wō-yíjīng-sywéle lyǎngnyán-Jüggwo-hwà-le. | I've already been studying Chinese for two years. |
| *4. Tā-yàu-dzài-Jüggwo jù-sānnyán. | He wants to live in China for three years. |
| *5. Wō-dzài-Jüggwo jùle-wū-lyòunyán. | I lived in China for five or six years. |
| *6. Wō-dzài-Jüggwo yíjīng-jùle-chīnyán-le. | I've already been living in China for seven years. |
| *7. Tā-dzài-Dégwo-jùle-sānnyán. | He lived in Germany for three years. |
| *8. Wō-líkāi-Měigwo yíjīng-yǒu-'hǎujīnyán-le. | I've already been away from America for a good many years. |
| *9. Wō-dzài-jèr yǒu-sz-wǔnyán-le. | I've been here for four or five years. |
| 10. Chǐng-wèn, Jüng-Měi-Fàngwǎn dzài-'shémma-difang? | May I ask [I request to ask], where is the Chinese-American Restaurant? |
| 11. Wō-dzwótyan kāile-shfge-jüngtóuchē, swóyi jīntyan hěn-lèi. | I drove for ten hours yesterday, so I'm very tired today. |
| 12. Wō-yíjīng-chfle hǎujtsz-Jüggwo-fàn-le. | I've already eaten Chinese food a good many times. |
| 13. Kāichede-shwō tā-jīntyan bunéng-kāi-chē. | The driver says he can't drive today. |
| 14. Nèige-Měigwo-rén yíjīng-sywéle-szge-ywè-le, kěshr tā-yíjyù-Jüggwo-hwà hái-buhwèi-shwō-ne. | That American has already been studying for four months, but he can't say a single Chinese sentence yet. |
| 15. Tā-wèn-wo chéng-wàide-lù 'hǎudzǒu-buhǎudzǒu? | He asked me whether or not the roads outside the city were all right for traveling. |

Drill VII. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ní-jrdau nèige-lùde-míngdz-ma? | 4. Jīntyan wō-hěn-máng, swóyi wō-jfnyànle èrshffēn-jüngde-Jüngwén. |
| 2. Nèige-wàigwo-rén dzài-Jüggwo yíjīng-jùle-shfnyán-le, kěshr tā-háibuhwèi-shwō-Jüggwo-hwà-ne. | 5. Bàushang-shwō tāmen-yíjīng-dzwòle-shflyòuge-jüngtóu-fēiji-le. |
| 3. Chǐng-wèn, dàu-nèige-pùdz-chyu 'dzemma-dzǒu? | 6. Ní-syǎng dzài-jèr-jù-'dwōshau-shfhou? |

Drill VII (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 7. Nĭ-dzài-jèr dzwò-shémma? | 15. Wǒ-dzài-Měigwo sywéle-szge-ywè-Jūnggwo-hwà. |
| 8. Tā-yĭjing-shwōle yíge-jūngtòu-le. | 16. Chīng-wèn, jèr-yǒu-méiyǒu-rén hwèi-shwō-Yīnggwo-hwà? |
| 9. Wǒ-yàu-kàn-yíke-jūngde-bào. | 17. Wǒ-shwōle-shǎfēn-jūngde-hwà, kěshr méiyǒu-rén-dǔng. |
| 10. Yǒude-rén měityān bàn-shǎfēng-jūngtòu-gūng. | 18. Wǒ-kāigwo-hǎujǐtsz-chìchē. |
| 11. Tāmen-dzwòle-'jĭge-lĭbài-chwán? | 19. Wǒ-dzài-Jūnggwo yĭjing-yǒu-sāngelĭbài-le. |
| 12. Nèige-lùshang méiyǒu-chìchē. | 20. Wǒ-bujrdào tā-dzài-'nǎr-jù. |
| 13. Kāichēde yĭjing-láile. | |
| 14. Tā-lĭbàiyān bànle-wūge-jūngtòu-gūng. | |

NOTES

- The duration of an action or state is expressed by placing a time expression (T) after a verb (V). According as the action of the verb extends into the future, was completed in the past, or continues to the present, we can distinguish *future*, *past*, and *present* duration of time: 'He will study for two hours,' 'He studied for two hours,' 'He has been studying for two hours.'
- If a verb is not followed by an object the time expression is placed right after the verb:

future:	V T :	<i>Tā-yàu-dzài-Jūnggwo jù-sānnyán</i>	'He will live in China for three years.'
past:	Vle T :	<i>Tā-dzài-Jūnggwo jùle-sānnyán</i>	'He lived in China for three years.'
present:	Vle Tle:	<i>Tā-dzài-Jūnggwo jùle-sānnyán-le</i>	'He has been living in China for three years.'
- If a verb is followed by an object there are three possible constructions:
 - When the sense permits, it is preferred to place the time expression before the object, as a kind of measure. The particle *de* may then be attached to the time expression.

future:	V T (de) O :	<i>Tā-yàu-sywé-sānnyán-Jūnggwo-hwà</i>	'He will study three years of Chinese.'
past:	Vle T (de) O :	<i>Tā-sywéle-sānnyánde-Jūnggwo-hwà</i>	'He studied three years Chinese.'
present:	Vle T (de) O le:	<i>Tā-sywéle-sānnyán-Jūnggwo-hwà-le</i>	'He has been studying Chinese for three years.'
 - When the sense does not permit the preceding construction, the time expression follows the object.

future:	V O T :	<i>Tā-yàu-lĭkài-Jūnggwo-sānnyán</i>	'He will be away from China for three years.' (never 'three years of China,' naturally)
past:	V O T :	<i>Tā-lĭkài-Jūnggwo-sānnyán</i>	'He was away from China for three years.'
present:	V O T le:	<i>Tā-lĭkài-Jūnggwo-sānnyán-le</i>	'He has been away from China for three years.'

c. Sometimes the verb is spoken first with its object and then repeated with the time expression:

future: V O V T : *Tā-sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà yàu-sywé-sānnyán* 'He will study Chinese for three years.'

past: V O V le T : *Tā-sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà sywéle-sānnyán* 'He studied Chinese for three years.'

present: V O Vle T le: *Tā-sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà sywéle-sānnyán-le* 'He has been studying Chinese for three years.'

4. Duration of time to the present is also expressed as follows:

Vle yǐjing (yǒu) Tle: *Tā-dzài-Jūnggwo jùle-yǐjing-yǒu-sānnyán-le.* 'He's already been living in China for three years.'

V O yǐjing (yǒu) Tle: *Tā-sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà yǐjing-sānnyán-le.* 'He's already been studying Chinese for three years.'

For further examples see sentences 7-10 in Drill IV.

5. The phrase *chǐng-wèn*, literally meaning 'I request to ask,' is a polite equivalent for English 'May I ask you . . . , I'd like to inquire of you . . .': *Chǐng-wèn, nǎr-yǒu-shūpù?* 'May I trouble you to ask where there is a bookstore?'

6. For the construction of *kāichēde* 'driver,' see Lesson 13, Note 2b.

LESSON 23

RELATIVE TIME

Conversation: Wáng and Martin discuss their work

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| W: | Nǐ-dàu-Jūnggwo-lái-yǐchǎn, dzài-Měigwo yě-dzwògwo-sīnwén-jǐjě-ma? | Before you came to China were you also a news reporter in America? |
| M: | Dzài-Měigwo yě-dzwògwo-sīnwén-jǐjě. | I was also a news reporter in America. |
| W: | Dzài-Měigwo dzwòle-'jǐnyán? | How many years were you (a reporter) in America? |
| M: | Dzwòle-'chǐnyán. Jèi-chǐnyán wǒ-shr-Nyóuywē-Tàiwushrbàude-yíge-jǐjě. | I was (a reporter) for seven years. In these seven years I was a correspondent of the <i>New York Times</i> . |
| W: | Nyóuywē-Tàiwushrbàu búshr-Měigwo dzwèi-hǎude-bàu-ma? | Isn't the <i>New York Times</i> the best newspaper in America? |
| M: | Yǒu-rén-shwō shr-Měigwo-dzwèi-hǎude-bàu. | Some people say it's the best paper in America. |
| W: | Kàn-Nyóuywē-Tàiwushrbàude-rén hěn-dwō-ba. | The <i>New York Times</i> must have a great many readers. |
| M: | Kàn-Nyóuywē-Tàiwushrbàude-rén 'shr-hěn-dwō. | The <i>New York Times</i> does have many readers. |
| W: | Kàn-wǒmen-bàude-rén yě-bushǎu. | The people who read our paper are also not few. |

- M: Nīmen-bànde-bàu jyàu-'shémma-míngdz? Nī-shwōgwo-yítsh, kēshr wō-wàngle.
 W: Wōmende-bàu jyàu-Dàgūngbàu. Dzài-Jūnggwo hēn-yōu-míng.
 M: Dàu-Měigwo-chyùde-shfhou, nī-búshr-Dàgūngbàude-jijě-ma?
 W: Di-yítsh-dàu-Měigwo-chyùde-shfhou wō-búshr-yíge-sīnwén-jijě.
 M: Nèige-shfhou nī-shr-shémma-ne?
 W: Di-yítsh-dàu-Měigwo-chyù wō-shr-yíge-sywésheng. Yīhòu tsái-dzwò-jijě.
 M: Nī-kàn dzwò-jijě dzēmmayàng?
 W: Syàndzài-jijě hēn-nándzwò. Yīhòu dzēmmayàng 'shéi-jīdau?
- M: Wàigwo-rén-dzài-Jūnggwo-dzwò-jijě yě-hēn-nán.
 W: Wō-hēn-jīdau dzài-wàigwo-dzwò-jijě hēn-nán, yīnwei-yíchyán dàu-Měigwo-chyùde-shfhou, wōde-Yīngwén buhǎu, swóyī-yōu-hēn-dwō-Měigwode-chíngsīng wō-budūng. Yàushr wàigwo-jijě buhwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà, tāmēn-dzēmmanéng-jīdau Jūnggwode-chíngsīng-ne?
- M: Wō-jīdau hwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà hēn-yàujīn, kēshr sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà tài-nán. Wō-sywéle-lyǎngnyánle, kēshr-hái-yōu-hēn-dwō-hwà buhwèi-shwō.
 W: Lyǎngnyán shfzdài-budwō. Nī-dzēmmanéng-dōu-hwèi-shwō-ne? Yàushr 'dzài-sywé-yī-lyǎngnyán jyòu-dōu-hwèi-shwōle.
 M: Wōmēn-Měigwo-rén buhēn-hwèi-shwō-wàigwo-hwà.
 W: 'Nèige-wō-busin. Yàushr nīmen-'tyāntyān sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà, lyǎng-sānyán-jyòu-dōu-hwèi-shwō-le.
 M: Wàigwo-rén-dōu-shwō Jūnggwo-hwà hēn-nānsywé.
- What's the name of the newspaper you run? You told me once but I've forgotten.
 Our paper is called the *Dàgūngbàu*. It is very well known in China.
 When you went to America weren't you a correspondent of the *Dàgūngbàu*?
 I wasn't a news reporter when I first went to America.
 What were you then?
 When I first went to America I was a student. Afterwards I became a correspondent.
 What do you think of being a reporter?
 Being a reporter now is very hard. Who knows what it will be like later? [Later like what who knows?]
 It is also very difficult for a foreigner to be a reporter in China.
 I know very well that it is very hard to be a reporter abroad, for previously when I went to America my English was not good, so there were many conditions in America which I didn't understand. If foreign reporters can't speak Chinese how can they know about conditions in China?
 I know it is very important to know Chinese, but studying Chinese is too difficult. I've been studying for two years, but there's still lots I can't say.
 Two years certainly isn't much. How can you be able to say everything? If you study one or two more years, then you will be able to say anything.
 We Americans are not very good at [not very able at] speaking foreign languages. That I don't believe. If you study Chinese every day, within two or three years you will be able to say everything.
 Foreigners all say Chinese is very difficult to study.

- W: Jūnggwo-dz nán-syě, Jūnggwo-shū yě-buhāunyán, kěshr Jūnggwo-hwà bunán-shwō. Chinese characters are hard to write, and Chinese books are not easy to read, but Chinese isn't difficult to speak.
- M: Měigwo-rén-busin jèige-hwà. Americans don't believe this statement.
- W: Nīmen-Měigwo-rén dzemma-pà-nán-ma? How is that you Americans are afraid of (what is) difficult?

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|--------------|---|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. jyàu | TV: to call, order, let, to be called | 10. 'Nyóuywē | PW: New York (this is the Pekingese reading of two Chinese characters which in Cantonese are read <i>New Yak</i> , a close transliteration) |
| 2. sywésheng | N: student (<i>sywé</i> 'study' plus <i>shēng</i> 'be born') | 11. Nyóuywē-
Tàiwushrbàu | PH: <i>New York Times</i> (<i>tàiwushr</i> is again the Pekingese reading for characters which in Cantonese are approximately read <i>tai-m-s</i>) |
| 3. sīnwén | N: news (<i>sīn</i> 'new' plus <i>wén</i> 'hear of') | 12. Dàgūngbàu | PH: <i>The Impartial</i> (<i>dà</i> 'great' plus <i>gūng</i> 'impartial' plus <i>bàu</i> 'newspaper') |
| 4. jìjě | N: reporter (<i>jì</i> 'note down' plus <i>jě</i> 'one who') | 13. yǒu-míng | PH: be famous (<i>yǒu</i> 'to have' plus <i>míng</i> 'name') |
| 5. tsái | AD: then (and only then), only then | | |
| 6. shídzài | SM: truly, indeed, certainly (<i>shí</i> 'true' plus <i>dzài</i> 'at') | | |
| 7. háishr | SM: still | | |
| 8. yíchyán | SM: before, previously, ago (<i>yí</i> plus <i>chyán</i> 'front') | | |
| 9. yíhòu | SM: after, afterwards (<i>yí</i> plus <i>hòu</i> 'rear') | | |

Substitution Tables¹

wǒ	chàng-gē	-de	shíhou	*	wǒ	*	míngtyan	*	dàu	Yínggwo	chyu
nǐ	kàn-shū	yíchyán			nǐ		syà ywè			Jūnggwo	
tā	chī-fàn	yíhòu			tā		èrywè			Měigwo	

Drill I. Relative Time in Phrases

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Wǒ-chīde-shíhou | When I eat |
| 2. Tā-láide-shíhou | When he comes |
| 3. Nǐ-kāi-chēde-shíhou. | When you drive a car |
| 4. Dàu-Jūnggwo-chyu-yíchyán | Before going to China |
| 5. Nǐ-wèn-tā-yíchyán | Before you ask him |

1. The asterisks may be replaced by *shì*, *shr*, *búshr*, or *shì-bushr* to express emphasis (see Note 5 of this lesson).

Drill I (cont.)

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 6. Tā-nyàn-Jūnggwo-shū-yīchyán | Before he studies Chinese books |
| 7. Nǐ-chyù-bàn-gūng-yīchyán | Before you go to work |
| 8. Wǒ-dzwò-fēiji-yìhòu | After I ride on the plane |
| 9. Jīnggwo-Yīndu-yìhòu | After passing through India |
| 10. Tā-dàu-jèr-lai-yìhòu | After he comes here |

Drill II. Relative Time in Sentences

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Tā-shwō-Fàgwo-hwàde-shfhou wǒ-dōu-budǔng. | When he speaks French I don't understand anything. |
| 2. Tā-chàng-gēde-shfhou rén-dōu-dzǒule. | When he sang everyone left. |
| 3. Yóujidwèi-dzài-jèrde-shfhou wǒmen-bupà. | When the guerrillas are here we're not afraid. |
| 4. Tàitai-búdzai-jyāde-shfhou wǒ-bu-néng-chíng-péngyou-lái-chī-fàn. | I can't invite friends to come and eat when my wife isn't at home. |
| 5. Tā-dàu-Jūnggwo-chyu-yīchyán sywéle-lyǎngnyán-Jūnggwo-hwà. | Before he went to China he studied Chinese for two years. |
| 6. Tā-dzwò-jijě-yīchyán-dzwò-shémma shì? | What did he do before he was a reporter? |
| 7. Dàu-Sūjou-chyu-yīchyán, wǒ-dzài-Dūngsānshěng. | Before going to Soochow I was in Manchuria. |
| 8. Tā-dzwótyan māile-bàu-yìhòu jyòu-dàu-gūngshìfáng-chyùle. | Yesterday after he had bought the newspaper he went to the office. |
| 9. Mǎ-Syānsheng-dàu-jèr-lai-yìhòu, jyàu-Wáng-Syānsheng-lái-kàn-wo. | After Mr. Martin comes here, tell Mr. Wang to come and see me. |
| 10. Nèige-sywésheng-māile-nèiběn-shū-yìhòu, jyòu-gěi-tāde-péngyou-le. | After that student bought the book he gave it to his friend. |

Drill III. Emphasis

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Búshr-'tā-yàu-chyù-ma? | Isn't it he who is going? |
| 2. Nèige-jijě shr-'syà-lfbài yàu-dàu-jèr-lai. | It's next week that that reporter is coming here. |
| 3. Tā-shì-bushr-chyù kàn-nèige-difang-de-chíngsìng? | Isn't he going to look into conditions in that place? |
| 4. Nyóuywē-Tàiwushrbàu 'shì-yóu-míng. | The New York Times is famous. |
| 5. Shì-bushr-tā hwèi-chàng-gēr? | Isn't it he who can sing? |
| 6. Tā-búshr-dzwò-fēiji-chyu-ma? | Isn't he going by plane? |
| 7. Tā-'shì-míngtyan-lái. | It is tomorrow that he's coming. |
| 8. Tā-búshr-dàu-Jūnggwo-chyu, shr-dàu-Yīnggwo-chyu. | He isn't going to China, he's going to England. |
| 9. Tā-shì-bushr-jyàu-nǐ-lái? | Isn't he calling you to come? |
| 10. Jīntyan wǒmen-'búshr-dàu-fàngwǎrchyu chī-fàn. | We're <i>not</i> going to the restaurant to eat today. |

Drill IV. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Tā-dǔng-budǔng nǐ-shwōde-hwà? | Did he understand what you said? |
| 2. Wǒ-shwōle-yítsz, tā-budǔng. Wǒ-yòu-shwōle-yítsz, tā-tsái-dǔng. | I said it once and he didn't understand. I said it once more, and only then did he understand. |
| 3. Nǐ-dàu-Égwo-chyu-yíhòu, hái-yàu-dàu-'shémma-difang-chyu? | After going to Russia where else will you go? |
| 4. Hái-yàu-dàu-Yíngwo-chyu. | I will also go to England. |
| 5. Nèige-sywésheng shì-bushr-yàudzwò-syānsheng? | Doesn't that student want to become a teacher? |
| 6. Buyàu-dzwò-syānsheng. Yàu-dzwò-sínwén-jǐjě. | He doesn't want to be a teacher. He wants to become a newspaper reporter. |
| 7. Mǎile-bàu-yíhòu, wǒmen-néng-bunéng-chyù chī-fàn? | After having bought the newspaper can we go eat? |
| 8. Wǒ-hái-yàu-mǎi-shū. Mǎile-shū-yíhòu jyòu-kéyi-chyù chī-fàn. | I still want to buy a book. After I've bought the book then we can go eat. |
| 9. Nǐ-jyàu-shéi? | Whom are you calling? |
| 10. Wǒ-jyàu-'Mǎ-Syānsheng. Tā-'néng-bunéng dàu-jèr-lai? | I'm calling Mr. Martin. Can he come here? |
| 11. Wǔkwài-sān nǐ-'yàu-buyàu? | Do you want it for \$5.30? |
| 12. Wǔkwài-sān shfdzài-budwō. Hǎu, wǒ-mǎi. | \$5.30 is certainly not much. All right, I'll buy it. |
| 13. Nǐ-tǐngshwōgwo-nèige-'rén-méiyòu? | Have you ever heard of that person? |
| 14. Tǐngshwōgwo. Tā-dzài-Měigwo yě-hěn-yòu-míng. | Yes. He's also very well known in America. |
| 15. Nǐ-dàu-Yīndu-chyu-yíchyán, syǎng-dzwò-'shémma-shì? | What do you plan to do before you go to India? |
| 16. Wǒ-syǎng-dàu-Myǎndyàn-chyu kàn-nèige-difangde-chíngsìng. | I plan to go to Burma to look into conditions there. |
| 17. Nǐ-búshr-jǐntyán-wǎnshang-chyù-ma? | Aren't you going this evening? |
| 18. Búshr. Jǐntyán tài-máng. Wǒ-syǎng-'míngtyán-chyù. | No. I'm too busy today. I plan to go tomorrow. |
| 19. Nǐ-péngyòu 'hái-dzài-Měigwo-ma? | Is your friend still in America? |
| 20. Tā-'hái-dzài-Měigwo sywé-Yíngwén-ne. | He's still studying English in America. |

Drill V. Model Sentences

- | | |
|--|--|
| *1. Mǎ-Syānsheng-dzài-Měigwode-shíhou dzwògwo-Nyóuywē-Tàiwushr-bàude-jǐjě. | When Mr. Martin was in America he was a reporter for the <i>New York Times</i> . |
| *2. Dàu-fāngwǎr-chyu-yíchyán wǒ-yàudàu-shūpù-chyu mǎi-shū. | Before going to the restaurant I want to go to the bookstore to buy some books. |
| *3. Tā-tǐngle-sínwén-yíhòu jyòu-jyàurén-chyù-mǎi-bàu. | After he heard the news he had someone go and buy a paper. |

Drill V (cont.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| *4. Nèige-gēr jyàu-'shémma-míngdz, nǐ-jǐdau-ma? | Do you know what that song is called? |
| *5. Nèige-sywésheng 'háishr-dzài-jèr sywé-Jüנגgwo-hwà-ne. | That student is <i>still</i> studying Chinese here. |
| *6. Dàgüngbàu shr-Jüנגgwo-hěn-yǒu-míngde-bàu. | The <i>Dàgüngbàu</i> is a very famous Chinese newspaper. |
| *7. Tā-búshr-dzài-nèr kàn-bàu-ma? | Isn't he reading the newspaper there? |
| 8. Tsúng-nèityān-yǐhòu wǒ-měityān dzài-jèr chī-fàn. | From that day on I've eaten here every day. |
| 9. Nèi-shínyán-lítou tā-dàu-Měigwo-chyùle-hǎujǐtsè. | Within those ten years he went to America a good many times. |
| 10. Tā-búshr-míngtyan dàu-jèr-lai-kàn-wǒmen. Tā-shr-'jǐntyān-lái. | It isn't tomorrow that he's coming here to see us. It's today that he's coming. |
| 11. Jǐntyānde-sīnwén shǐdzài-hǎu. | Today's news is indeed good. |
| 12. 'Nyóuywē shr-Měigwo-dzwèi-dàde-chéng. | New York is the largest city in America. |
| 13. Jǐnyān tā-'háishr-dzài-wàigwo-ne. | This year he is still abroad. |
| 14. Chyùnyān tā-dzài-Jüנגgwo. Yǐ-chyán tā-dzài-Měigwo. | Last year he was in China. Previously he was in America. |
| 15. Yǐ-jyǒu-sè-sè-nyán-yǐchyán tā-dzài-Měigwo nyàn-shū. | Before 1944 he studied in America. |

Drill VI. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nèige-shíhou tā-háishr-dzài-Jüנגgwo dzwò-jǐjě-ne. | 10. Nèi-lyǎngge-Jüנגgwo-rén dǒu-hěn-yǒu-míng. |
| 2. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng syà-ywè búshr-dàu-'Yínggwo-chyu, shr-dàu-'Jüנגgwo-chyu. | 11. Jüנגgwo-bàu dǒu-hěn-syǎu. |
| 3. Wǒ-dàu-Sūjou-chyu-yǐhòu, hái-yàu-dàu-Hángjou-chyu. | 12. Tā-lái-kàn-wǒde-shíhou wǒ-búdzai-jyā. |
| 4. Tā-syède-shū jyàu-'shémma-míngdz? | 13. Wǒmen-yí-kàn-ta jyòu-jǐdau tā-shr-Měigwo-sīnwén-jǐjě. |
| 5. Wǒ-shwǒle-Yíngwén, tā-budǔng. Yǐ-hòu yòu-shwǒle-Jüנגgwo-hwà, tā-'háishr-budǔng. | 14. Tā-'háishr-dzài-'Nyóuywē-ma? |
| 6. Jüנגgwode-sīnwén-jǐjě 'dwǒ-budwǒ? | 15. Wǒ-dàu-Jüנגgwo-lai-yǐchyán méi-chíngwo-Jüנגgwo-fàn. |
| 7. Wǒ-dàu-Jüנגgwo-chyu-yǐchyán syǎng-sywé-sān-sznyán-Jüנגgwo-hwà. | 16. Nǐ-jyàu-'shéi-chyù mǎi-bàu? |
| 8. Wǒ-yí-kàn-ta jyòu-jǐdau tā-shr-Jüנגgwo-sywésheng. | 17. Tǐngshwǒ nèige-sywésheng buhěn-hǎu. |
| 9. Mǎ-Syānsheng-shwǒ jǐntyānde-sīnwén hěn-buhǎu. | 18. Wǒ-búshr-měityān chī-Jüנגgwo-fàn. |
| | 19. Wǒ-mǎile-düngsi-yǐhòu jyòu-kéyi-dzwò-fàn. |
| | 20. Shíkwài-chyán shǐdzài-budwǒ. Nǐ-'mǎi-bumǎi? |

NOTES

1. The Chinese equivalents for the English words 'when,' 'before,' and 'after' in phrases like 'when you go,' 'before you go,' 'after you go' are respectively *-de shíhou*, *yǐchǎn*, and *yǐhòu*. The English words come at the beginning of the phrase; their Chinese equivalents, however, come at the end of the phrase: *tā-láide-shíhou* 'when he comes,' *tā-lái-yǐchǎn* 'before he comes,' *tā-lái-yǐhòu* 'after he comes.' The time clauses come either before or after the main clause in English, as in 'after he comes, I'll leave' or 'I'll leave after he comes,' but in Chinese the time clauses always come before the main clause: *Wǒ-shuō-Jūnggwo-hwàde-shíhou tāmen-dōu-dǔng* 'When I speak Chinese they understand everything,' *Wǒ-dàu-Gwǎngdūng-chyu-yǐchǎn wǒ-syǎng-sywé-yidyǎr-Gwǎngdūng-hwà* 'Before going to Kwangtung I plan to study a little Cantonese,' *Wǒ-mǎi-bào-yǐhòu jǐyǒu-gěi-ni* 'After I buy the newspaper I'll give it to you.'
2. a. *Yǐchǎn* and *yǐhòu* are used as independent expressions of time meaning respectively 'before this, previously' and 'after this, afterward': *Yǐchǎn tā-méi-chírgwo Jūnggwo-fàn* 'Previously he had never eaten Chinese food.'
- b. *Yǐchǎn* and *yǐhòu* are sometimes preceded by time expressions: *yì-jǐyǒu-sān-ling-nyán-yǐchǎn* 'before 1930,' *sānnnyán-yǐchǎn* 'three years before, three years ago.'
3. *Tsúng* 'from' is used with *yǐhòu* to form the equivalent of English 'from such-and-such a time on': *tsúng-yì-jǐyǒu-sān-ling-nyán-yǐhòu* 'from 1930 on,' *tsúng-nèige-shíhou-yǐhòu* 'from that time on.'
4. *Lítou* or *li* 'inside' after a time expression means 'within.' Such expressions precede the verb: *Jèi-sāntyān-lítou wǒ-búdzai-jyā* 'Within these three days I wasn't at home.'
5. The verb *shì* 'be, is' is used in its neutral form *shì* to emphasize a following word or phrase in much the same way as we use 'it is' in English sentences like 'It's he who's coming,' 'It's tomorrow we're leaving,' 'It's by boat that he's coming': *Tā-shr-jǐntyán-lái* 'It's today that he's coming, He's coming today.' If the verb is pronounced *shì*, that is, strongly and with a falling tone, this is like giving heavy stress to the verb *is* in English: *Tā-'shì-jǐntyán-lái* 'He *is* coming today.' In negative sentences the form *búshì* is used: *Tā-búshì-míngtyán-dzǒu* 'It isn't tomorrow that he's leaving, He's not leaving tomorrow.' In questions the form *shì-búshì* is used: *Shì-búshì-'tā-míngtyán-dzǒu?* 'Is it he who is leaving tomorrow?' 'Is he leaving tomorrow?' *Tā-shì-búshì-dàu-Jūnggwo-chyu?* 'Is it to China that he's going?'
6. The word *háishì*, which is made up of *hái* 'still' and *shì* 'to be,' is a more emphatic form of *hái* 'still': *Tā-'háishì-dzài-jèr* 'He's still here,' *Wǒ-'háishì-budǔng* 'I still don't understand.'
7. The model *A jyàu B* means 'A is called B': *Nèige-fàngwǎn jyàu-Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn* 'That restaurant is called the Chinese-American Restaurant.'
8. *Dàgūngbào*, which literally means The Great Impartial Newspaper, is the name of a Chinese newspaper whose position in China is often compared to that of the *New York Times* in America. It is sometimes referred to by its French name *L'Impartial* but is best known to English-speaking people by its name in the Wade-Giles system of romanizing Chinese characters: *Takungpao*.

LESSON 24

FURTHER USES OF *le*

Conversation: Martin tells of happenings at the office

- W: Wǒ-tīngshwō nǐ-shàng-lǐbàilyòu bingle. I hear that you were ill last Saturday.
- M: Dwèile. Shàng-lǐbàilyòu 'shè-bingle. (That's) right. I did fall sick last Saturday.
- W: Nǐ-syàndzài dzèmmayàng? How are you now?
- M: Syàndzài hǎule. I've recovered [gotten well] now.
- W: Nǐ-dzèmma-bìngde? How did you get sick?
- M: Yǒu-rén-shwō wǒ-lǐbàilyòu-dzwòde-shè tài-dwō, chǐfē-fàn tài-shǎu. Some people say I did too much Saturday (but) ate too little [Saturday the work which I did was too much, and the food which I ate was too little].
- W: Lǐbàilyòude-sīnwén bushǎu. Wǒmen-Jūnggwo-jìjě nèityān yě-hěn-máng. There was lots of news Saturday [Saturday's news was not a little]. We Chinese reporters were also very busy that day.
- M: Dwèile. Nèityānde-sīnwén shǐdzài-dwō. Dzǎushang wǒ-méi-dzài-jiā chǐfē-dzǎufàn. Wǒ-syǎng dàule-gūngshrfáng jyòu-kéyi-jiàu-rén-chyù gěi-wǒ-mǎi-yidyǎr-chǐfē. That's right. There certainly was lots of news that day. In the morning I didn't eat breakfast at home. I thought that on arriving at the office I then could have [could order] someone go and buy me a little something to eat.
- W: Tāmen-gěi-nǐ-'mǎile-méiyóu? Did they buy it for you?
- M: Méiyóu. Gūngshrfánglide-rén dōu-tài-máng. Méiyóu-rén néng-chyù-gěi-wǒ-mǎi-chǐfē. No. The people in the office were all too busy. There wasn't anyone who could go and buy me anything to eat.
- W: Byéde-rén dzèmmayàng? How did the other people manage?
- M: Nèityān tāmen-dōu-dzài-jiā chǐfē-dzǎufàn. Dàule-syàwu-sāndyǎn-jūng jyòu-yǒu-rén-shwō: "Āiyā! Syàndzài yǐjīng-sāndyǎn-le. Wǒ-bāge-jūngtóu méi-chǐfē-dūngsi. Buning-'dzài-dzwò-shè-le. Wǒmen-dōu-chyù-chǐfē-fàn-ba." That day they had all eaten breakfast at home. When it got to be three in the afternoon someone said: "Oh my! It's already three o'clock now. I haven't eaten anything for eight hours. I can't work any more. Let's all go eat."
- W: Nimen-dōu-chyùle-ma? Did you all go?
- M: Méi-chyù. Wǒmen-jiàule yíge-rén-chyù gěi-wǒmen-mǎi-chǐfē. We didn't go. We had a man go and buy us something to eat.
- W: Nimen-gěi-tā-dwōshau-chyán? How much money did you give him?
- M: Gūngshrfángli yǒu-wūge-rén. Měige-rén gěi-yíkwài-chyán, kěshr-yǒu-yíge-rén méiyǒu-chyán. There were five people in the office. Each person gave one dollar, but there was one person who didn't have any money.
- W: Shr-Lǎu-Wáng-ma? Was it Old Wáng?

- M: 'Shr-Lǎu-Wáng. Nǐ-'dzěmma-jǐdau shr-tā-ne? It was Old Wáng. How did you know it was he?
- W: Lǎu-Wáng shr-wōde-lǎu-péngyou. Wèi-shémma nèityān tā-méi-chyán? Old Wáng is an old friend of mine. Why didn't he have any money that day?
- M: Tā-shwō tā-tàitai lǐbàiyī gěi-tā-yī-kwài-chyán. Dàule-lǐbàiwǔ-lyòu tā-jyòu-méi-chyán-le. Lǎu-Wáng-pà-tàitai. Nǐ-méi-tǐngshwō-ma? He said his wife gives him one dollar on Mondays. By [on reaching] Friday or Saturday he no longer has any money. Old Wáng is afraid of (his) wife. Haven't you heard about it?
- W: Méi-tǐngshwō. No.
- M: Lǎu-Wáng cháng-shwō: "Āiyā! Wō-tàitai bugěi-wō-chyán-le. Dzěmma-bàn-ne? Méiyǒu-tàitaideshfhou, wōde-chyán bushǎu, néng-tyāntyān chǐng-péngyou-chǐ-fàn. Nèigeshfhou wōde-péngyou hěn-dwō. Syàndzài-méi-chyán, bunéng-chǐng-péngyou-chǐ-fàn-le, swóyī wō-méiyǒu-péngyou-le!" Old Wáng often says: "Oh my! My wife doesn't give me any more money. How can I manage? When I didn't have a wife I had a lot of money [my money was not a little], and I could invite friends to eat every day. At that time I had a lot of friends. Now I no longer have any money and I can't invite friends to eat any more, so I don't have any more friends!"
- W: Nǐ-byé-sin-tāde-hwà. Tā-tàitai-méiyǒu-němma-buhǎu. Lǎu-Wáng jèigeshwǎn hěn-sǐhwǎn-hē-jyǒu. Tā-chángcháng-hē-jyǒu, swóyī chángcháng-méi-chyán. Don't you believe what he says. His wife isn't that bad. This person, Old Wáng, is very fond of drinking. He often drinks wine and so is often out of money.
- M: Òu! Syàndzài wō-jǐdau tā-lǐbàiyòu wèi-shémma-méi-mǎi-bǐngjǐlǐng? Oh! Now I know why he didn't buy any ice cream on Saturday!
- W: Mǎi-'shémma-bǐngjǐlǐng? Buy what ice cream?
- M: Nèityān wōmen-jyàu-Lǎu-Wáng-chyù gěi-wōmen-mǎi-chǐde, dzài-mǎi-yidyǎr-bǐngjǐlǐng. Tā-dzòudeshfhou wō-shwō: "Lǎu-Wáng, byé-wàngle-mǎi-bǐngjǐlǐng." That day we told Old Wáng to go and buy us something to eat, and also to buy a little ice cream. When he was leaving I said: "Old Wáng, don't forget to buy the ice cream."
- W: Tā-'mǎile-méiyǒu? Did he buy it?
- M: Méiyǒu. Wō-wèn-ta wèi-shémma méi-mǎi-bǐngjǐlǐng. Tā-shwō: "Wō-yàu-mǎi-bǐngjǐlǐngde-shfhou, jǎng-gwèide shwō-méiyǒule, kěshr wō-mǎile-yidyǎr-byéde-dǔngsi." No. I asked him why he hadn't bought the ice cream. He said: "When I tried to [wanted] to buy some ice cream, the manager said there wasn't any more, but I bought a little something else."
- W: Buyàu-dzài-shwōle. Wō-jǐdau tā-mǎide-shr-shémma. Don't say any more. I know what it was that he bought.
- M: Dwèile! Right!

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|-----------|---|---------|--------------|
| 1. sǐhwǎn | TV: to like, be fond of
(sǐ 'joy' plus hwǎn 'rejoice') | 2. hē | TV: to drink |
| | | 3. byé | AV: don't |
| | | 4. hwài | SV: be bad |

Vocabulary (*cont.*)

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|---------------|---|
| 5. nèmma | AD: so | 8. bīngjǐlǐng | N: ice cream (<i>bīng</i> 'ice' plus approximation of 'cream') |
| 6. cháng,
'chángcháng | AD: often | 9. byéde | PH: other |
| 7. jyǒu | N: liquor, wine | | |

Drill I. Le with Stative Verbs

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wǒ-lèile. Buyàu-chyù kàn-péngyou-le. | I'm tired [I've gotten tired]. I don't want to go and visit friends any more. |
| 2. Wǒ-tīngshwō 'Mǎ-Syānsheng dzwó-tyan-bingle. Tā-syàndzài 'hǎule- méi-you? | I hear Mr. Martin was sick yesterday. Has he recovered [gotten well] now? |
| 3. Tā-bingle-sāntyān. | He was [became] sick for three days. |
| 4. Wǒde-chyán tài-shǎule. Nèiběn-shū bunéng-mǎile. | I have too little money [my money is too little]. I can't buy that book. |
| 5. 'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide yǐjing-lǎule. | Manager Chyán is already old [has already become old]. |

Drill II. Le with Time Expressions

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Yǐjing-szdyǎn-le. | It's already four o'clock. |
| 2. Syàndzai wūdyǎn-bàn-le. | It's gotten to be 5.30 now. |
| 3. Syàndzài yǐjing-lyòudyǎn-le. Wǒ-dzǒule-a. | It's already six o'clock. I'm leaving. |
| 4. Syàndzai-'jǐdyǎn-le? | What time has it gotten to be? |
| 5. Tā-shwō yǐjing-yìdyǎn-jūng-le. | He says it's already one o'clock. |

Drill III. Le with Negative Verbs

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Dzwótyan wǒ-yǒu-hěn-dwō-chyán. Jīntyán-méiyǒule. | Yesterday I had a lot of money. Today I don't have any more. |
| 2. Tā-syǎude-shíhou hěn-hwèi-chàng-gēr, kěshr-syàndzài buhwèi-chàng-le. | When he was young [small] he was very good at singing songs, but now he is no longer able to sing. |
| 3. Wǒ-tài-máng. Bunéng-chyùle. | I'm too busy. I can't go any more. |
| 4. Ní-kàn-nèige-rén. Tā-sāntyān méi-chī-fàn-le. | Look at that man. He hasn't eaten for three days. |
| 5. Wǒ-syǎng jèi-lyǎngge-lǐbài budzwò-shè-le. | I'm planning to do nothing more for these two weeks. |

Drill IV. Le in Dependent Clauses

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Tā-mǎile-jyǒu jyòu-yàu-hē. | Having [as soon as he] bought the wine, he wanted to drink it. |
| 2. Tā-dàule-jyā jyòu-yàu-chī-fàn. | On arriving home he wanted to eat. |
| 3. Dàule-bādyǎn-jūng wǒmen-jyòu-dōu-hěn-lèi-le. | When it got to be eight we were all very tired. |

Drill IV (cont.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. Tā-hēle-jyǒu jyòu-bingle. | When he drank the wine he became sick. |
| 5. Dàule-nèige-shfhou jyòu-méiyǒu-yíge-rén-dzài-nèr-le. | By that time there wasn't a single person there any more. |

Drill V. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. 'Wáng-Tàitai bingle-'dwōshau-shf-hou? | For how long was Mrs. Wáng sick? |
| 2. Bingle-sān-sztyān. | She was sick for three or four days. |
| 3. Nǐ-budzài-hē-yidyǎr-ma? | Won't you drink a little more? |
| 4. Bunéng-dzài-hēle. | I can't drink any more. |
| 5. Nǐ-hái-yǒu-chyán-ma? | Do you still have money? |
| 6. Syāndzài yíge-chyán dōu-méiyǒule. | Now I don't have a cent left. |
| 7. Nǐ-wèi-shémma busin-tāde-hwà? | Why don't you believe what he says? |
| 8. Yīnwei wǒ-busihwan-nèige-rén. | Because I dislike that person. |
| 9. Nǐ-syǎude-shfhou dzài-Jūnggwo chf-gwo-bīngjǐ'líng-méiyǒu? | Did you ever eat any ice cream in China when you were young? |
| 10. Méiyǒu. | No. |
| 11. Jèige-jyǒu shfdzài-hāuhē. Dzài-'nǎr-mǎide? | This wine is very nice indeed. Where did you buy it? |
| 12. Búshr-'wǒ-mǎide. Shr-Lǎu-'Wáng-mǎide. Bujrdàu tā-dzài-'nǎr-mǎide. | I didn't buy it. It was bought by Old Wáng. I don't know where he bought it. |
| 13. Nǐ-kàn jèige-jwōdz dzēmmyàng? | What do you think of this table? |
| 14. Nèige-jwōdz tài-gāule. Yǒu-byéde-ma? | That table is too high. Are there any others? |
| 15. Nèige-dz dzēmmya-syě? | How is that character written? |
| 16. Wǒ-gěi-nǐ-syě-ba. | Let me write it for you. |
| 17. 'Wáng-Syānsheng dzài-jyā-ma? | Is Mr. Wáng at home? |
| 18. Búdzai-jyā. Tā-chfle-fàn jyòu-dzǒule. | He's not at home. He left after eating. |
| 19. Wǒ-méiyǒu-nēmmya-dwō-chyán. Dzēmmya-néng mǎi-nēmmya-gwèide-dūngsi? | I don't have that much money. How can I buy such an expensive thing? |
| 20. Nǐ-gěi-lyòushfkwài-chyán déle. | Give me \$60 and that'll do. |

Drill VI. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|--|
| *1. Nèige-bīngjǐlíng hwàile. Nǐ-byé-chf. | That ice cream has spoiled. Don't eat it. |
| *2. Nèige-chē tài-syǎule. | That car is too small. |
| *3. Syāndzài yíjīng-yidyǎn-le. Wǒmen-chyù-chf-wǔfàn, 'hǎu-buhǎu. | It's now already one o'clock. Let's go eat lunch. |
| *4. Wǒ-hěn-sihwan chf-bīngjǐlíng, kěshr syāndzài bunéng-chfle. | I like to eat ice cream, but I can't eat it any more now. |
| *5. Wǒ-sānyán méi-kàn-Jūnggwo-shūle, swóyí Jūnggwo-dz dōu-wàngle. | For three years I haven't read a Chinese book, so I've forgotten all the Chinese characters. |

Drill VI (cont.)

- | | |
|--|--|
| *6. Tā-mǎile-shū jyòu-gěi-wǒ-le. | On buying the book he gave it to me. |
| *7. Wǒ-jintyan yǒu-yidyǎr-máng. | I'm a little busy today. |
| *8. 'Wáng-Syānsheng gěi-'Mǎ-Syānsheng chāng-Jūnggwo-gēr. | Mr. Wáng sang Chinese songs for Mr. Martin. |
| 9. Rén-dzēmā-néng-nèmma-hwài? | How can people be so bad? |
| 10. Nèige-rén chāng-shwō-dà-hwà. | That man often boasts. |
| 11. Wǒ-syāng nèige-shì méiyǒu-nèmma-yàujīn. | I think that matter isn't that important. |
| 12. Nèige-rén hěn-síhwan hē-jyǒu. | That man very much likes to drink. |
| 13. Sāngē-rén lái. Byéde hái-méi-lái-ne. | Three people have come. The others haven't come yet. |
| 14. Wǒ-'bùchángcháng chī-bīngjīng. | I don't often eat ice cream. |
| 15. Nǐ-byé-nèmma-shwō. | Don't talk like that. |

Drill VII. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Nǐ-tàitai hǎule-ma? | 10. Syèsye! Wǒ-bunéng-dzài-hěle. |
| 2. Nèige-rén tài-lǎu, bunéng-dzwò-shì-le. | 11. Wǒ-syàndzài buhwèi-kāi-chē-le. |
| 3. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng bìngle, swóyi wǒ-syāng-gěi-ta dzwò-yidyǎr-hǎuchīde-dūngsi. | 12. Tā-wènle-wo jyòu-dzǒule. |
| 4. Syàndzài yǐjing-chīdyǎn-le. | 13. Wǒ-bunéng hē-nèmma-dwō-jyǒu. |
| 5. Syàndzài méiyǒu-rén-le. Dōu-dzǒule. | 14. Byéde-sywésheng-shwō nèiběn-shū hěn-méiyǒu-yisz. |
| 6. Wǒ-pényou-mǎile-shū jyòu-gěi-wǒ-le. | 15. Wǒ-síhwan 'tyāntyān chī-bīngjīng. |
| 7. Mǎ-Syānsheng-shwō tā-jintyan yǒu-yidyǎr-máng. | 16. Nèige-rén yǐjing-lǎule. |
| 8. Nèige-rén tài-lèile. Tā-dzēmā-néng dzwò-nèmma-dwō-shì? | 17. Syàndzài yǐjing-shídyǎn-le. Tā-'dzēmā-hái-méi-lái-ne? |
| 9. Jèige-chīchē hwàile. Nǐ-byé-kāi-ba. | 18. Nèijyù-hwà tài-nán. Wǒ-yidyǎr yē-budūng. |
| | 19. Wǒ-lyòunyán méi-kāi-chē-le. |
| | 20. Wǒ-'chángcháng dāu-nèige-fàngwǎrchyu chī-Jūnggwo-fàn. |

NOTES

- The particle *le* added to stative verbs has the force of 'become' in English phrases like 'become tired,' 'become hungry,' 'become sick': *Wǒ-lèile* 'I've become tired,' *Wǒ-dzwótyan-bìngle* 'I became sick yesterday,' *Syàndzài wǒ-hǎule* 'Now I have become well, I've recovered now.'
 - Le* is often used with stative verbs preceded by *tài* 'exceedingly, too.' Thus, if one wants a small table to hold an ash-tray and someone offers a card table, one might say: *Nèige-jwōdz tài-dà* 'That table is too big.' But if the same table is then offered as a dining table, one might say: *Nèige-jwōdz tài-syǎule* 'That table is too small'; here *le* and *tài* mean that in relation to one's need the table has become too small.
- Le* added to a time expression means that a point in time has been reached: *Syàndzài sāndyǎn-le* 'It's gotten to be three o'clock now, It's three o'clock now.'

3. a. *Le* added to a sentence which has a negative verb gives the meaning 'no more, no longer': *Yǐchǎn wǒ-'tyāntiān chī-Jūnggwo-fàn. Syàndzài wǒ-buchī-Jūnggwo-fàn-le.* 'Previously I ate Chinese food every day. Now I no longer eat Chinese food.'
- b. *Le* is also used where an action has been discontinued for a definite period of time and has not been resumed: *Wǒ-sānnyán méi-chī-Jūnggwo-fàn-le* 'For three years now I haven't eaten any Chinese food.' Time expressions meaning 'within such-and-such period of time,' such as *sānnyán* 'within three years, for three years' in the sentence just cited, come before the verb.
4. *Le* is often added to a verb in some types of dependent clauses. In *if* clauses, both with and without *yàushr*, *le* is added to the verb if it involves a completed action: *Tā-dzǒule buyàujīn* 'If he has left it doesn't matter.' In *when*-clauses that have the sense of 'immediately after,' *le* is added to the verb if it involves a completed action. In this case the use of *le* in the dependent clause is generally balanced by the use of adverbs such as *jyòu* 'then, immediately' and *hái* 'still' in the second clause: *Dàule-sāndyǎn-jūng tā-jyòu-dzǒule* 'When it got to be three o'clock, he left, After it got to be three o'clock he left.' *Tā-chīle-fàn jyòu-bìngle* 'When he ate he became sick, On eating he became sick, As soon as he ate he became sick.'
5. The verb *yǒu* 'to have' often takes as object a stative verb preceded by *yidyǎr* 'a little.' *Wǒ-yǒu-yidyǎr-máng* 'I'm a little busy'; *Jèige-jwōdz yǒu-yidyǎr-tài-dà* 'This table is a little too big.' *Méiyǒu* often takes as object a stative verb preceded by *nèmma* 'so': *Nèige-rén méiyǒu-nèmma-hwài* 'That man isn't so bad, That man isn't that bad.'
6. *Gěi* is used as a coverb meaning 'for' in the sense of 'for the benefit of': *Wǒ-yào-tā-chyù gěi-wǒ-mǎi-dūngsi* 'I want him to go and buy some things for me.'
7. The auxiliary verb *byé* 'don't' is a negative imperative derived from *buyào* 'don't want to.' The latter is also used as a negative imperative, its origin being similar to the use of English 'you don't want to' in polite commands, as in 'You don't want to do that, Don't do that': *Nǐ-buyào-chī, Nǐ-byé-chī* 'Don't eat it.'
8. The phrase *byéde* 'other' is made up of the subordinating particle *de* preceded by the syllable *byé*, a combining form meaning 'to distinguish,' so that *byéde* is literally 'that which is distinguished,' and hence 'the other': *Byéde-rén yǐjīng-láile* 'The other people have already come.' (The *byé* in *byéde* and the *byé* meaning 'don't' are not related to each other.)
9. The verb *méiyǒu* is sometimes abbreviated to *méi* before a noun: *Wǒ-méi-chyán* 'I don't have any money.'

LESSON 25

RESULTATIVE VERBS

Conversation: Martin learns a Chinese jingle

- W: Chīwánle-fàn 'nǐ-syǎng-dzwò-shǎmma? After we've finished eating what do you plan to do?

- M: Hái-bujrdàu-ne. Kàn-'shémma-shf-hou chf-fàn. Ní-syǎng bādyǎn-bàn chf-dewán-ma? I don't know yet. I'll see when we eat. Do you think we can finish eating by 8.30?
- W: Syàndzài-'shémma-shfhou-le? What time is it now?
- M: Yíjing-chídyǎn-bàn-le. It's already 7.30.
- W: Wō-syǎng bādyǎn-bàn chf-buwán. I don't think we can [I think we can't] finish eating by 8.30.
- M: Dzemma? Yíge-jūngtóu hái-chf-bu-wán-ma? How's that? Can't we finish eating dinner in even one hour?
- W: Yíge-jūngtóu chf-buwán-wǎnfān. It's impossible to finish eating dinner in one hour. Not only is it impossible to finish eating by 8.30, but it's probably also impossible to finish by 9.00.
- M: Wèi-shémma-ne? Why?
- W: Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn tài-ywǎn. The Chinese-American Restaurant is too far away.
- M: Tsúng-jèr-chyu yàu-dzǒu-'dwōshau-shfhou? Wōmen-yíjing-dzǒule bushǎu-shfhou-le. Dzài-dzǒu-shf-fēn-jūng dàudelyǎu-ma? How long will it take from here? We've already been walking for quite a while. Is it possible to arrive there by walking another ten minutes?
- W: Dzài-dzǒu-shffēn-jūng hái-dàubulyǎu. Yíke-jūng yě-dàubulyǎu. Hái-děi-dzǒu èrshrfēn-jūng. We can't reach there even if we walk another ten minutes. We can't get there in a quarter of an hour either. We still have to walk for twenty minutes.
- M: Syǎngbudàu fàngwǎr-nèm-ma-ywǎn. I didn't realize [couldn't expect] that the restaurant was so far. We can't finish eating by 8.30.
- W: Yésyǔ-jyǒudyǎn-bàn kéyi-chf-wánle. Chf-wánle-fàn ní-syǎng dzwō-shémma? Perhaps we can finish eating by 9.30. What do you plan to do after we finish eating?
- M: Běnlái-syǎng-chyù kàn-yíge-Jūng-gwo-péngyou. Shàng-ywè tā-bingle. Yǒu-yìtyān dàifu-shwō tā-hwóbulyǎule. Syàndzài dàifu-shwō tā-yìlyǎngge-lfbài jyòu-hǎule. I originally planned to go and see a Chinese friend. He fell sick last month. One day the doctors said he couldn't live any more, but now the doctors say he will recover in a week or two.
- W: Āiyā! Tā-shr-'shémma-bìng? My! What's his sickness? [What sickness is he?]
- M: Bujrdàu. Dàifu-shwōgwo, kěshr-wō-budūng. Tā-shwōde shr-Gwǎng-dūng-hwà. I don't know. The doctor mentioned it, but I didn't understand. He spoke Cantonese [what he spoke was Cantonese].
- W: Wō-dūng-yidyǎr-Gwǎngdūng-hwà. I understand a little Cantonese. I can go with you to see your friend. Perhaps I can understand that doctor's speech.
- M: Ní-jīntyan-wǎnshang néng-gēn-wō-chyù-ma? Can you go with me this evening?

- W: Jintyan-wǎnshang-bunéng. Chǎ-wánle-fàn hái-yǒu-byéde-shì. Lǐ-bàisì dzěmmayàng? Nǐ-bìdēi-'jintyan-chyù-ma?
- M: Bùbì-'jintyan-chyù. Lǐbàisì yě-kéyi. Chǎwánle-fàn hái-yǒu-'shémma-shì?
- W: Wǒ-hái-dēi-dào-gūngshrfáng-chyù bàn-yì-lyǎngge-jūngtòu-shì.
- M: Nèige-shìching jintyan-wǎnshang bàndewán-ma?
- W: Bànbuán, kěshr buyàujǐn. Nǐ-dzěmmayàng? Chǎwánle-fàn nǐ-yào gēn-péngyou chyù-hē-jyǒu-ma?
- M: Dzěmma-néng-chyù-ne? Wǒ-yě-yǒu-shì.
- W: 'Shémma-shì?
- M: Wǒ-hái-dēi-sywé-yidyǎr-Jūnggwo-hwà.
- W: Nǐ-yě-yào syě-Jūnggwo-dz-ma?
- M: Jintyan bùbì-syěle, yīnwei-dzwó-tyan wǒ-syěle-lyǎngge-jūngtòude-dz-le. Jyǎli hái-yǒu-yiběn-Jūnggwo-shū méi-nyànwán. Yàushr-'dzàinyàn-lyǎng-sānge-jūngtòu jyòu-kéyi-nyànwánle.
- W: Byé-nyàn-tài-dwō-shū-le! Nǐ-bujr-dào-ma:
- “Hwó-dào-lǎu,
Sywé-dào-lǎu,
Hái-yǒu-sānfēn
Sywébudào.”
- M: Bujr-shr-sānfēn-ba!
- I can't this evening. After finishing eating I have something else to do. How about Thursday? Do you have to go today?
- I don't have to go today. I can also on Thursday. What else do you have to do after we finish eating?
- I still have to go to the office to attend to a matter for another hour or two. Can you finish that matter this evening?
- I can't finish, but it doesn't matter. What about you? After we eat are you going with friends to drink wine?
- How can I go? I have things to do too.
- What things?
- I still have to study a little Chinese.
- Are you going to write Chinese characters too?
- I don't have to write any today, as I wrote characters for two hours yesterday. I have a Chinese book at home which I haven't finished studying yet. If I study two or three more hours I can finish it.
- Don't study too much! Don't you know:
- “Live to old age,
Study to old age,
There's still three-tenths
That one can't learn.”
- It's not only three-tenths!

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|----------|--|-------------|--|
| 1. dēi | AV: have to | 8. budàn | SM: not only (<i>bu</i> 'not' plus <i>dàn</i> 'single') |
| 2. bìdēi | AV: have to (<i>bì</i> 'necessary' plus <i>dēi</i> 'have to') | 9. bìngchyě | SM: moreover, also (<i>bìng</i> 'two together' plus <i>chyě</i> 'moreover') |
| 3. gēn | CV: (together) with | 10. yésyǔ | SM: perhaps (<i>yě</i> 'also' plus <i>syǔ</i> 'permit') |
| 4. hwó | (IV): live, be alive | 11. dàifu | N: doctor (<i>dài</i> 'great' plus <i>fu</i> 'person') |
| 5. lyǎu | (TV): succeed in, finish | | |
| 6. wán | SV: be finished | | |
| 7. ywǎn | SV: be far, be distant | | |

Substitution Tables

chī	(-de-)	wán	kàn	(-de-)	jyàn	hwó	(-de-)	lyǎu
sywé	(-bu-)		tīng	(-bu-)		dàu	(-bu-)	
dzwò						dǔng		
kàn						wàng		

Drill I. Resultative Verbs

1. chīwán	finish eating	24. sywébudàu	unable to learn
2. chīdewán	able to finish eating	25. kànjyan	see
3. chībuwán	unable to finish eating	26. kàndejyàn	able to see
4. hēwán	finish drinking	27. kànbuyjyàn	unable to see
5. hēdewán	able to finish drinking	28. tīngjyan	hear
6. hēbuwán	unable to finish drinking	29. tīngdejjyàn	able to hear
7. nyànwán	finish studying	30. tīngbuyjyàn	unable to hear
8. nyàndewán	able to finish studying	31. chīdelyǎu	able to eat
9. nyànbuwán	unable to finish studying	32. chībulyǎu	unable to eat
10. syēwán	finish writing	33. mǎidelyǎu	able to buy
11. syēdewán	able to finish writing	34. mǎibulyǎu	unable to buy
12. syēbuwán	unable to finish writing	35. hwódelyǎu	able to live
13. shwōwán	finish speaking	36. hwóbulyǎu	unable to live
14. shwōdewán	able to finish speaking	37. dǔngdelyǎu	able to understand
15. shwōbuwán	unable to finish speaking	38. dǔngbulyǎu	unable to understand
16. syǎngdàu	think of	39. dàu delyǎu	able to arrive
17. syǎngdedàu	able to think of	40. dàubulyǎu	unable to arrive
18. syǎngbudàu	unable to think of	41. sywédelyǎu	able to learn
19. mǎidàu	succeed in buying	42. sywébulyǎu	unable to learn
20. mǎidedàu	able to buy	43. hēdelyǎu	able to drink
21. mǎibudàu	unable to buy	44. hēbulyǎu	unable to drink
22. sywédàu	study up to	45. tīngdedǔng	able to understand
23. sywédedàu	able to learn	46. tīngbudǔng	unable to understand

Drill II. Questions and Answers

1. Nī-tīngjyangwo-nèige-'gēr-méiyóu?	Have you ever heard that song?
2. Wǒ-méi-tīngjyangwo-nèige-gēr.	I've never heard that song.
3. Nī-chīdelyǎu-nèmma-dwō-fàn-ma?	Can you eat that much food?
4. Wǒ-chībulyǎu-nèmma-dwō-fàn.	I can't eat that much food.
5. Tāde-hwà nī-tīngdedǔng-ma?	Can you understand his speech?
6. Tāde-hwà wǒ-tīngbudǔng.	I can't understand his speech.
7. Tā-míngtyan dàu delyǎu-ma?	Will he be able to arrive tomorrow?
8. Tā-míngtyan dàubulyǎu.	He won't be able to arrive tomorrow.
9. Syàndzài chīchē mǎidedàu-ma?	Is it possible to buy cars now?
10. Syàndzài chīchē mǎibudàule.	It's impossible to buy cars now any more.
11. Tsúng-jèige-chéng dàu-nèige-chéng yàu-dzōu-'dwōshau-shfhou?	How long will it take to get from this city to that city?
12. Tsúng-jèige-chéng dàu-nèige-chéng yàu-dzōu-lyǎngge-dwō-jūngtóu.	It will take more than two hours to get from this city to that city.

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 13. Tā-shr-shémma-bìng, nǐ-jǐdau-ma? | What's his illness, do you know? |
| 14. Dàifu-shwō tā-hái-bujrdàu-ne. | The doctor says he still doesn't know. |
| 15. Nǐ-wǎnshang hái-děi-nyàn-shū-ma? | Do you have to study some more in the evening? |
| 16. Wǒ-wǎnshang bubì-nyàn-shū-le. | I don't have to study any more in the evening. |
| 17. Nǐ-syǎng gēn-'shéi-chyu kàn-nèige-difangde-chíngsìng? | With whom do you plan to go to look into conditions at that place? |
| 18. Wǒ-syǎng gēn-'Wáng-Syānsheng-chyu kàn-nèige-difangde-chíngsìng. | I plan to go with Mr. Wáng to look into conditions at that place. |
| 19. Yàushr-tā-jintyan bunéng-lái, tā-míngtyan néng-lái-ma? | If he can't come today, can he come tomorrow? |
| 20. Yàushr-tā-jintyan-bulái, tā-jyòu-míngtyan-lái. | If he doesn't come today then he will come tomorrow. |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|---|
| *1. Wǒ-méi-kànjian-ta. | I didn't see him. |
| *2. Nǐ-kàndewán-nèiběn-shū-ma? | Can you finish reading that book? |
| *3. Wǒ-wàngbulyǎu-nǐ-shwōde-hwà. | I can't forget what you said. |
| *4. Wǒ-méiyǒu-chyán, swóyi mǎibulyǎu-jǐ. | I don't have any money, so I can't buy any paper. |
| *5. Tā-syěwán-nèiběn-'shū-le-méiyǒu? | Has he finished writing that book? |
| *6. Dàu-Hángjou-chyu yàu-dzòu-'dwō-shau-shfhou? | How long will it take to go to Hangchow? |
| *7. Tā-bubì-gēn-nǐ-chyù. | He doesn't have to go with you. |
| *8. Tā-děi-dàu-gūngshrfáng-chyu bàn-gūng; bìngchyě hái-děi 'tyāntyān sywé-yidyār-Jūnggwo-hwà. | He has to go to the office to work; moreover he also has to study a little Chinese every day. |
| 9. Dàifu-shwō nèige-rén yésyǔ-hwóbulyǎu. | The doctor says that man probably can't live. |
| 10. Nèige-chéng hěn-ywǎn. Wǒmen-yíge-jūngtóu dàubulyǎu. | That city is quite far away. We won't be able to arrive in an hour. |
| 11. Jèige-sīnwén-jijě-shwō tā-chfìle-bìng-jilíng jyòu-bìngle. | This news reporter says that on eating the ice cream he immediately became sick. |
| 12. Syǎngbudàu tā-néng-hē nèmma-dwō-jyǒu. | I didn't think he could drink so much wine. |
| 13. Jintyan-wǎnshang lyòudyǎn-sānkè wǒ-dàu-fàngwǎr-chyu gēn-péngyou-chī-wǎnfàn. | This evening at 6.45 I'm going to the restaurant to have dinner with some friends. |
| 14. Sānge-yǒu-míngde-dàifu lái-kàn-ta, kěshr-tāmen-dōu-bujrdàu tā-shr-'shémma-bìng. | Three famous doctors have come to see him, but they all don't know what his sickness is. |
| 15. Nèige-chìchē tài-gwèi. Wǒ-mǎibulyǎu. | That automobile is too expensive. I can't buy it. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

1. Tā-budàn buyàu-hē-jyōu. Tā-yě-buyàu-chī-fàn.
2. Wō-děi-dzài-jyā kànwán-jèiběn-shū, tsái-kéyi-gēn-nī-chyu kàn-péngyou.
3. Yàushr-nī-jīntyan māibudàu, míng-tyan yésyū-māidedàu.
4. Nèige-rén hēn-hwài. Tā-cháng-shwō-dà-hwà.
5. Nī-byé-hēwán-le-nèige-jyōu. Wō-syāng-hē-yidyǎr.
6. Jèr-yōu-méiyōu-wàigwo-dàifu?
7. Wō-dzài-Jūnggwo jùle-yījing-shí-nyánle, kěshr-hái-tīngbudǔng-Gwǎngdǔng-hwà-ne.
8. Wō-bushihwan dàu-nèmma-ywānde-difang-chyu.
9. Budàn méiyōu-rén chyùgwo-nèige-difang. Bìngchyě hēn-shǎude-rén jīrdau-nèige-difangde-chíngsing.
10. Chīng-ta gēn-wōmen dzwò-chìchē-chyù, hǎu-ma?
11. Yàushr māibulyǎu-dà-jwōdz nī-jyōu-kéyi māi-syǎude.
12. Tā-sywéwánle-Jūngwén hái-děi-sywé-yì-lyǎngnyán-Déwén.
13. Dàifu-méi-shwō nī-péngyou shr-'shéma-bìng.
14. Wōmen-budàn yàu-chìchē, bìngchyě yě-yàu-kāichēde.
15. Pùdz-chyántoude-nèige-wàigwo-rén gēn-'shéi-tán-hwà?
16. Nī-bubì-dzwò-nèmma-dwō-fàn.
17. Yàushr tā-jyā tài-ywǎn, wōmen-jyōu-kéyi dzwò-chìchē-chyu.
18. Wōmen-shwōde-hwà byéde-difangde-rén tīngbudǔng.
19. Wō-wàngbulyǎu-jèige-shìching.
20. Yésyū tā-dzài-chéng-wàitou-jù. Nī-jīrdau-ma?

NOTES

1. a. *Resultative verbs* (RV) are compound transitive verbs in which the first part mentions an action and the second part indicates the result. Thus, *chī* 'to eat' followed by *wán* 'to finish' forms a resultative verb meaning 'to finish eating, to eat up.' Similarly, *tīng* 'to listen to' followed by *jyan* (*jyàn*) 'to perceive' forms a resultative verb meaning '~~to hear~~' *tō hear*.
- b. Resultative verbs have special forms for expressing the ideas 'to be able' and 'to be unable.' 'To be able' is expressed by putting *de* between the two parts of the resultative verb: *chīdewán* 'to be able to finish eating, to be able to eat up,' *tīngdejyàn* 'to be able to hear.' 'To be unable' is expressed by putting *bu* between the two parts of the resultative verb: *chībuwán* 'to be unable to finish eating, to be unable to eat up,' *tīngbujyàn* 'to be unable to hear.'
- c. Some resultative verbs have three forms, as in the case of *chīwán* 'to finish eating,' *chīdewán* 'to be able to finish eating,' and *chībuwán* 'to be unable to finish eating.' But some resultative verbs have only the last two forms, namely the potential forms with *de* and *bu*. Such is the case with resultative verbs ending in the syllable *lyǎu*, which is a combining form, not a full word, referring to successful conclusion of an action: *māidelyǎu* 'to be able to succeed in buying, to be able to buy,' *māibulyǎu* 'to be unable to succeed in buying, to be unable to buy.' There is no form *māilyǎu*.
- d. The potential forms with *de* and *bu* are sometimes interchangeable with other forms preceded by an auxiliary verb meaning 'to be able': *chīdewán*, *néng-chī-*

- wán* 'to be able to finish eating'; *dǔngdelyǎu*, *kéyi-dǔng* 'to be able to understand.'
- e. The potential forms with *de* and *bu* are sometimes preceded by auxiliary verbs meaning 'to be able': *néng-sywédewán* 'to be able to finish studying.' The forms with or without the auxiliary verbs mean the same thing.
 - f. Resultative verbs are rarely preceded by the negative prefix *bu*. In situations where English use a phrase like 'I don't see it' Chinese says *Wǒ-kànbujyàn* 'I can't see it.'
 - g. The basic form of resultative verbs is often preceded by the negative prefix *méi* or *méiyǒu* or followed by the particles *le* and *gwo*: *Wǒ-méi-kànjyan* 'I didn't see it,' *Wǒ-kànjyanle* 'I saw it,' *Wǒ-méi-kànjyangwo* 'I have never seen it.'
2. By a change in meaning from 'want' to 'need' and then to 'be necessary' the verb *yào* is used in such sentences as *Tsúng-jèr dàu-nèr yào-dzǒu-yíge-jūngtóu* 'From here to there it is necessary to walk one hour, It will take an hour to get from here to there.'
 3. The verb *shì* 'to be' is used where one might expect the verb 'to have' in the sentence *Tā-shr-'shémma-bìng?* 'What sickness is he? What sickness does he have?'
 4. The auxiliary verb *děi* or *bìděi* 'have to' has an irregular negative form *bubì* 'don't have to.' While *děi* or *bìděi* can be translated as either 'have to' or 'must,' *bubì* can only be translated as 'don't have to' or 'need not' and cannot be thought of an equivalent to English 'must not.' 'I have to do this' and 'I must do this' may be the same thing in English, but 'I don't have to do this' and 'I must not do this' are quite different ideas.
 - 5.^f The measure *fēn* sometimes means 'a tenth' when preceded by a number from one to ten: *Sìfēn shr-Měigwo-rén*, *liùfēn shr-Yínggwo-rén* 'Four-tenths are Americans, six-tenths are English.'

LESSON 26

DISTANCE AND SEPARATION

Conversation: Martin tells of talking to people on the street

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>M: Gāngtsái nǐ-shwō wōmen-hái-děi-dzǒu èrshífēn-jūngde-lù tsái-kéyi-dàu-Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn. Syǎng-budàu Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn lí-shūpù nèm-ma-ywǎn.</p> <p>W: Chyán-Jǎnggwèide shwōgwōle. Nǐ-méi-tīngjyan-ma?</p> <p>M: Méi-tīngjyan.</p> <p>W: Yésyǔ-nèige-shfhou nǐ-búdzai-pù-dzli. Ōu, dwèile, dwèile. Nèige-shfhou nǐ-hái-dzài-wàitōu-ne.</p> | <p>Just now you said we would still have to walk twenty minutes before we could reach the Chinese-American Restaurant. I didn't know the Chinese-American Restaurant was so far from the bookstore.</p> <p>Manager Chyán mentioned it. Didn't you hear?</p> <p>No.</p> <p>Perhaps at that time you weren't inside the store. Oh, that's right. At that time you were still outside.</p> |
|---|---|

- M: Tā-shwō fàngwār lí-tāde-pùdz yōu-
'jǐlí-lù? How many *li* did he say the restaurant
was from his store?
- W: Chyán-Jǎnggwèide-shwō Jūng-Měi-
Fàngwǎn lí-tāde-pùdz yōu-wǔlí-
dwō-lù. Manager Chyán said the Chinese-Ameri-
can Restaurant was more than five *li* from
his store.
- M: Nèmma Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn lí-tāde-
pùdz bujìn. In that case the Chinese-American Restau-
rant isn't near his store.
- W: Dwèile. Wōmen-yě-méi-fádz dzwò-
chìchē, yīnwei-syàndzài yíge-chyán-
yě-méiyōule. That's right. And we don't have any way
to ride a car either, as we don't have a
cent left now.
- M: Buyàujìn. Wō-hěn-síhwan-dzōu-lù,
kàn-lùshang dzōulái-dzōuchyùde-
rén, tīng-tāmen shwō-hwà. Dzwò-
chède-shfhou bunéng. That doesn't matter. I very much like to
walk along and look at the people walking
back and forth on the streets and listen
to them talk. When one rides in a car one
can't.
- W: Nǐ-yě-gēn-lùshangde-rén tán-hwà-
ma? Do you also speak with people on the
streets?
- M: Yōude-shfhou yě-gēn-tāmen-tán-
hwà. Sometimes I also speak with them.
- W: Tāmen-shwōde-hwà nǐ-dōu-dǔng-
ma? Do you understand everything they say?
- M: Budōu-dǔng. Yōude-hwà wǒ-tīng-
dedǔng, yōude tīngbudǔng. Yésyǔ-
yōu-rén tīngbudǔng-wǒ-shwōde-
hwà. Wàigwo-rén yì-shwō-Jūnggwo
hwà, lùshangde-rén jyòu-dōu-syǎng-
'tīngyitīng. I don't understand everything. Some
things I can understand, some I can't.
Perhaps there are some people who can't
understand what I say. As soon as a for-
eigner talks Chinese, everyone on the
street wants to listen.
- W: Tāmen-cháng-wèn-nǐ-Měigwode-
shrching-ma? Do they often ask you things about
America?
- M: Dwèile. Tāmen-chángcháng-wèn:
Měigwo-rén dōu-yōu-chyán-ma?
Měigwo-dzài-nǎr? Měigwode-
chéng-'dà-budà? Měigwo-yě-yōu-
chìchē-ma? That's right. They often ask: Are all
Americans rich? Where is America? Are
American cities big? Are there also auto-
mobiles in America?
- W: Tāmen-wèn-nǐde-shrching bushǎu. They ask you lots of things.
- M: Hái-yōu-rén-wèn: Měigwo lí-Jūng-
gwo dwó-ywǎn? Tāmen-méi-syǎng-
dàu Měigwo-lí-Jūnggwo yíwàn-
dwōlí. Other people ask me how far America is
from China. They hadn't thought that
America is more than 10,000 *li* from
China.
- W: Yòu-yōu-rén-shwō Měigwo-láide-
fēiji jìshr-chī-bātyān jyòu-kéyi-dàu-
Jūnggwo, nèmma Měigwo lí-Jūng-
gwo jǐ-yōu-yì-lyǎngchyānlí-lù. Hái-
yōu-rén-shwō Měigwo-lí-Jūnggwo
jǐ-yōu-lyòu-chibǎilí. Other people think that since it is possible
for planes coming from America to reach
China in seven or eight days, hence Amer-
ica is only one or two thousand *li* from
China. There are also some people who
say America is only six or seven hundred
li from China.

- M: Yǒu-yìtyān-yíge-rén-wèn-wǒ Měi-gwo-dzwèi-dàde-chéng jyàu-'shémma? Nèige-chéng yǒu-'dwō-shau-rén? Wǒ-shwō Měigwo-dzwèi-dàde-chéng jyàu-'Nyóuywē, yǒu-chībǎi-dwōwàn-rén. Nèige-rén busìn. Yíge-difang dzēmmanéng-yǒu-nèmma-dwō-rén-ne?
- W: Hén-dwō-Jūnggwo-rén méi-kàn-jyangwo-dà-chéng.
- M: Dzwótyan yǒu-yíge-rén yì-tīng-shwō wǒ-shr-Nyóuywē-láide jyòu-shwō: "Wǒ-péngyoude-yíge-péng-you syàndzai-dzài-'Nyóuywē. Nǐ-yésyǔ-rènshr-ta-ba!"
- One day a man asked me what America's biggest city was called. How many people did that city have? I said that America's biggest city was called New York and that it had more than 7,000,000 people. That man didn't believe it. How could there be so many people in one place?
- A good many Chinese have never seen a big city.
- Another day there was a man who as soon as he heard I had come from New York said: "A friend of a friend of mine is now in New York. Perhaps you know him!"

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|--------------|---|-------------|--|
| 1. rènshr | TV: recognize, know
(rèn 'recognize' plus
shr 'know') | 8. gāng | AD: just now, a moment ago |
| 2. jìn | SV: be close, be near | 9. gāngtsái | SM: just now, a moment ago (gāng plus tsái 'then') |
| 3. lí | CV: distant from | 10. jishr | SM: since |
| 4. bǎi | NU: hundred | 11. fádz | N: method, way, plan |
| 5. chyān | NU: thousand | 12. lí | M: li (one-third of an English mile) |
| 6. wàn | NU: ten thousand | | |
| 7. dwó, dwō? | AD: how much? | | |

Substitution Tables¹

*		*						
jèige-fàngwǎr	lí	nèige-difang	nèmma	ywǎn	yì	-lí	(dwō)	lù
wǒde-jyā		nèige-pùdz	hěn	jìn	lyǎng			dì
jèige-difang		nèr	bu-		(èr)			
tāde-shūpù		nèige-shān	tái		sān			
					.			
					.			
					.			
yí	-wàn	yì	-chyān	yì	-bǎi	—	-shí	yí
lyǎng		lyǎng		lyǎng		èr		èr
(èr)		(èr)		(èr)		sān		sān
sān		sān		sān		sǜ		sǜ
.	
.	
.	
.	

1. The asterisks indicate that only phrases on the same line are used together.

Drill I. Numbers over 99

1. yìbǎi	100	11. lyòubǎi chīshr-wǔ	675
2. lyǎngbǎi	200	12. wǔchyān líng-lyòushf	5,060
3. èrbǎi	200	13. chīwàn bāchyān sǎzbǎi	78,491
4. lyǎngchyān	2,000	jyòushr-yī	
5. èrchyān	2,000	14. lyòuwàn líng-sānbǎi	60,300
6. sānchyān	3,000	15. yíwàn-dwō	10,000-odd
7. lyǎngwàn	20,000	16. sānbǎi líng-lyòu	306
8. èrwàn	20,000	17. wǔchyān-jyòubǎi	5,900
9. sǎzwàn	40,000	18. sǎzshr-wǔwàn	450,000
10. shfǎwàn	100,000	19. èrbǎi-sānshf	230
		20. yìchyān sānbǎi èrshr-èr	1,322

Drill II. Expressions of Distance

1. sānlǐ-lù	3 <i>li</i>	11. jǐlǐ-dì?	how many <i>li</i> ?
2. chībǎilǐ-dì	700 <i>li</i>	12. shfèrlǐ-dwō-lù	12-odd <i>li</i>
3. èrshr-sǎdlǐ-dì	24 <i>li</i>	13. èrshr-dwōlǐ-lù	20-odd <i>li</i>
4. sǎzwànǐ-lù	40,000 <i>li</i>	14. jǐbǎilǐ-dì?	how many 100 <i>li</i> ?
5. shfǎsānlǐ-dì	13 <i>li</i>	15. lyòulǐ-lù	six <i>li</i>
6. sǎ-wǔlǐ-lù	4 to 5 <i>li</i>	16. èrwàn-dwōlǐ-dì	20,000-odd <i>li</i>
7. jyòushr-jyòulǐ-dì	99 <i>li</i>	17. bǎilǐ-dwō-lù	8-odd <i>li</i>
8. bāshfǐlǐ-lù	80 <i>li</i>	18. chī-bābǎilǐ-dì	7-800 <i>li</i>
9. sānchyānlǐ-dì	3000 <i>li</i>	19. èrshr-wǔlǐ-lù	25 <i>li</i>
10. sānshr-wǔlǐ-lù	35 <i>li</i>	20. yìbǎi sānshrlǐ-dì	130 <i>li</i>

Drill III. Questions and Answers

1. Nèige-shūpù lí-jèr ywǎn-ma?	Is that bookstore far from here?
2. Nèige-shūpù lí-jèr buywǎn.	That bookstore isn't far from here.
3. Nèige-pùdz lí-jèr 'dwō-ywǎn?	How far is that store from here?
4. Nèige-pùdz lí-jèr sānlǐ-dwō-lù.	That store is 3-odd <i>li</i> from here.
5. Wōmen-hái-děi-dzōu jǐlǐ-lù?	How many more <i>li</i> do we have to go?
6. Wōmen-hái-děi-dzōu 'èrlǐ-lù.	We have to go two more <i>li</i> .
7. Wōmen-yǐjing-dzōule dwōshau-lǐ-lù-le?	How many <i>li</i> have we already traveled?
8. Wōmen-yǐjing-dzōule èrshr-dwōlǐ-lù-le.	We've already traveled 20-odd <i>li</i> .
9. Sūjou lí-Hángjou dwō-ywǎn?	How far is Soochow from Hangchow?
10. Sūjou lí-Hángjou yōu-èrbǎi-dwōlǐ-dì.	Soochow is more than 200 <i>li</i> from Hangchow.
11. Nǐ-rènshr-nèige-wàigwo-rén-ma?	Do you know that foreigner?
12. Wō-rènshr-ta. Tā-shr-Yínggwo-rén.	I know him. He's an Englishman.
13. Tā-dzài-'nǎr-jù, nǐ-jǐrdau-ma?	Do you know where he lives?
14. Wō-bujrdàu tā-dzài-'nǎr-jù.	I don't know where he lives.

Drill III (cont.)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 15. Ní-dǔng-budǔng-jèijyù-hwàde-yìsz? | Do you understand the meaning of this sentence? |
| 16. Nèijyù-hwàde-yìsz wǒ-budōu-dǔng. | I don't understand the full meaning of that sentence. |
| 17. Ní-líkāi-Jūnggwode-shfhou shì-bushr-dzwò-fēiji? | When you leave China are you to go by plane? |
| 18. Budzwò-fēiji, dzwò-chwán. | I'm not going by plane, I'm going by boat. |
| 19. Tsúng-Dàgūngbàude-gūngshrfáng dàu-Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn yǒu-dwó-ywǎn? | How far is it from the <i>Dàgūngbàu</i> office to the Chinese-American Restaurant? |
| 20. Tsúng-Dàgūngbàude-gūngshrfáng dàu-Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn yǒu-lyǎng-sānlǐ-lù. | It's two or three <i>li</i> from the <i>Dàgūngbàu</i> office to the Chinese-American Restaurant. |

Drill IV. Model Sentences

- | | |
|--|---|
| *1. Ní-jiā lí-jèr-dwó-ywǎn? | How far is your home from here? |
| *2. Tāde-jiā lí-jèr-hěn-jìn. | His home is very near here. |
| *3. Tāde-jiā lí-jèr jǐ-yǒu-èrlǐ-lù. | His home is only two <i>li</i> from here. |
| *4. Tā-kànlái-kanhchǔ, hái-bujrdàu shr-'shémma-dūngsi. | He looked and looked but still didn't know what thing it was. |
| *5. Wǒmen jìshr hái-děi-dzǒu èrlǐ-dwò-lù, yésyǔ wǒmen-sāndyǎn-bàn dàu-bulyǎu-le. | Since we still have to go more than two <i>li</i> perhaps we won't be able to arrive by 3.30. |
| *6. Chǐng-wèn, Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn lí-jèr-dwó-ywǎn? | May I ask, how far is the Chinese-American Restaurant from here? |
| *7. Syǎngbudàu Jūnggwo-yǒu-szwàn-wūchyānwàn-rén. | One can't imagine that in China there are 450,000,000 people. |
| *8. Kāichēde-shwō nèige-lù budà-hǎu-dzǒu. | The driver says that that road isn't very good going. |
| 9. Gāngtsái yǒu-yíge-wàigwo-rén lái-kàn-ni. | Just a little while ago there was a foreigner came to see you. |
| 10. Wǒ-hái-děi-'syǎngyisǎng. | I still have to think a while. |
| 11. Jèige-chéngli jǐ-yǒu-sàn-szbaige-chìchē. | In this city there are only three or four hundred automobiles. |
| 12. Tīngshwō nèige-chéngliyǒu-wūchyān-dwò-rén. | I hear that that city has more than 5,000 people. |
| 13. Nèige-lǎu-rén měityān dzǒu-èrshí-dwòlǐ-lù. | That old man walks more than 20 <i>li</i> every day. |
| 14. Tā-shwō Sūjou yǒu-yībǎi-líng-sānge-wàigwo-rén. | He said there are 103 foreigners in Soochow. |
| 15. Gāng-láide-nèige-rén yàu-gēn-nǐ-shwō-hwà. | That man who has just come wants to speak with you. |

Drill V. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Nèige-dìfang tài-ywǎn. Yíge-jūngtóu dàubulyǎu. | 12. Nèige-chéngli yǒu-èrwàn-sānchǎn-szǎi-wúshí-bāge-ren. |
| 2. Syǎngbudào nèige-shān lí-jèr-nèmma-jìn. | 13. Tā-shwō lí-jèr-buywǎn yǒu-yóuji-dwèi. |
| 3. Nǐ-jìshr-méiyǒu-byéde-shì wèi-shémma bugēn-wō-chyù-ne? | 14. Bàu shr-gāng-mǎide, swóyi wō-hái-méi-kàn-ne. |
| 4. Yóujidwèi lí-nèige-shān sān-szǎi-lù. | 15. Wō-yí-kànjian-ta jyòu-rènshr-le. |
| 5. Wō-gāng-mǎile-yiběn-Jūnggwo-shū. Nǐ-yào-buyào-'kànyikàn? | 16. Wō-gāngtsái jyào-rén dào-nèige-pùdz-chyu mǎi-yidyǎr-jyòu. |
| 6. Nèige-chéngli yǒu-sānwàn-dwō-rén. | 17. Tā-shwō nèige-dìfang-buywǎn, kěshr wōmen-yíjing-dzòule szǎi-lù-le. |
| 7. Jèige-fádz dzémmyàng? | 18. Gāng-láide-nèige-rén shr-bushr-níde-sywésheng? |
| 8. Tā-chǐngle-yibǎi-sānshíge-rén lái-chī-Jūnggwo-fàn. | 19. Tā-shwō tā-bujrdào nèige-chéng lí-jèr-dwō-ywǎn. |
| 9. Nǐ-gāngtsái-mǎide-nèiběn-shū shr-'shéi-syède? | 20. Wō-kànjiangwo-jèige-dz, kěshr wàng-le shr-'shémma-yìsz. |
| 10. Yǎushr-fāngwǎr lí-jèr jǐ-yǒu-yìlǐ-lù wōmen yíkè-jūng jyòu-dàudelyǎu. | |
| 11. Nǐ-péngyoude-jyā lí-jèr-dwō-ywǎn? | |

NOTES

1. a. English phrases like 'A is far from B' have in Chinese the order *A lí B ywǎn* 'A from B is far.' Here the coverb *lí* 'distant from' is used for 'from' and the verb *ywǎn* for 'far': *Wō-jyā lí-nèige-dìfang hěn-ywǎn* 'My home is far from there.'
- b. English phrases like 'A is close to b' have in Chinese the order *A lí B jìn* 'A from B is close, A to B is close.' Here the coverb *lí* 'distant from' is used for 'from' or 'to' and the verb *jìn* for 'close': *Wō-jyā lí-nèige-dìfang hěn-jìn* 'My home is very close to that place.'
- c. If adverbs are used in sentences of the above type they are placed either before the coverb or before the final verb according to the meaning: *Wō-jyā lí-jèr-buywǎn* 'My home is not far from here,' *Wō-jyā yě-lí-jèr-buywǎn* 'My home is also not far from here.'
2. Stative verbs are sometimes used as adverbs: *budà-sìhwan* 'not greatly like, not like very much.'
3. a. The adverb *dwó* 'how much' (sometimes pronounced *dwō*, and derived from the stative verb *dwō*) is used before a stative verb to form questions of extent: *dwó-gāu?* 'how tall?', *dwó-dà?* 'how big?', *dwó-ywǎn?* 'how far?', *Nèige-dìfang dwó-ywǎn?* 'How far is that place?', *Nèige-dìfang lí-jèr-dwó-ywǎn?* 'How far is that place from here?'
- b. The verb *yǒu* sometimes precedes *dwó* in the preceding construction: *yǒu-dwó-ywǎn?* 'how far?', *Nèige-dìfang yǒu-dwó-ywǎn?* 'How far is that place?', *Nèige-dìfang lí-jèr yǒu-dwó-ywǎn?* 'How far is that place from here?'
4. a. The measure *lí* 'a Chinese mile, one-third of an English mile' is used with the nouns *lù* 'road' or *dì* 'ground' to form expressions of distance: *yìlǐ-lù* 'one *lí* of road, one *lí*,' *sānlǐ-dì* 'three *lí* of ground, three *lí*.'
- b. Expressions of distance, sometimes preceded by the verb *yǒu*, are used with

the coverb *li* to express extent of separation: *Nèige-dìfang li-jèr yǒu-bāli-lù*, *Nèige-dìfang li-jèr-bāli-lù* 'That place is eight *li* from here.'

- c. Expressions of distance are used after verbs to express extent of an action: *Tā-dzǒule-sānlǐ-lù* 'He walked three *li*.'
5. a. The stative verb *dwō* is added to some measures to indicate a fractional increase of less than one: *yīkwài-dwō-chyān* 'one dollar and more; more than one dollar, but less than two,' *sānlǐ-dwō-lù* 'three-odd *li*.'
- b. The use of *dwō* noted above applies only to small numbers. In the case of larger numbers *dwō* is used only with numbers divisible by ten and is added directly to the number (lesson 9, Note 1e): *sānshr-dwōli-lù* 'thirty-odd *li*.'
6. a. Numbers over 99 are expressed by using *bǎi* 'hundred,' *chyān* 'thousand,' and *wàn* 'ten thousand.' The larger units preceding the smaller: *sānbǎi szshr-wǔ* '345,' *yīwàn lyǎngchyān sānbǎi szshr-wǔ* '12,345.'
- b. Numbers above 10,000 are expressed in multiples of ten thousand instead of multiples of one thousand or of one million, as in English: *shíwàn* '100,000,' *bǎiwàn* '1,000,000,' *chyānwàn* '10,000,000,' *wànwàn* '100,000,000.'
- c. In numbers such as '103,' '1003,' '10,003,' Chinese uses one *líng* 'zero' between the larger and smaller units: *yībǎi líng-sān* '103,' *yìchyān líng-sān* '1003,' *yīwàn líng-sān* '10,003.'
- d. The numbers *bǎi*, *chyān*, *wàn*, and the measure *li* are preceded by either *lyǎng* or *èr*: *lyǎngbǎi*, *èrbǎi* '200,' *lyǎngli-lù*, *èrli-lù* 'two *li*.'
7. The measure *ge* is often omitted after *bǎi*, *chyān*, and *wàn* and also after *dwō* when the following word refers to people: *yībǎi-rén* '100 people,' *szwànwàn-rén* '400,000,000 people,' *yībǎi-dwō-rén* 'more than a hundred people.'
8. a. The verbs *lái* 'come' and *chyù* 'go' are added to other verbs to show whether the action is toward or away from the speaker or some other envisaged point of reference: *dzǒuchyu* 'walk away from one,' *Cháng-yǒu-rén dzǒulai wèn-wǒ-shì* 'There are often people who walk up to me and ask me things.' In this use *lai* and *chyù* are generally neutral in tone.
- b. The verbs *lái* and *chyù* (note the tones) are used after a verb to express the idea 'back and forth,' as in 'walk back and forth.' This is done by first saying the verb with *lái* after it and then repeating it with *chyù*: *dzǒulái dzǒuchyù* 'walk back and forth.' Sometimes the use is figurative: *syǎnglái syǎngchyù* 'think back and forth, think hard.'
9. *Jìshr* is related to *yīnwei* as 'since' is to 'because' in English. In Chinese there is the further distinction that the clause with *jìshr* always comes before the main clause, whereas the one with *yīnwei* sometimes comes after the main clause: *Tā-jìshr jīntyan búdzai-jyā*, *wǒ-míngtyan dzài-lái* 'Since he isn't at home today, I'll come again tomorrow,' *Yīnwei wǒ-méiyǒu-chyān*, *swóyi wǒ-mǎibulyǎu-nèiben-shū* 'Because I don't have any money, I can't buy that book,' *Wǒ-mǎibulyǎu-nèibēn-shū yīnwei-wǒ-méiyǒu-chyān* 'I can't buy that book because I don't have any money.'
10. The verb *jīdau* is used in reference to knowing about facts (Lesson 17, Note 3). The verb *rènshr* is used in reference to recognizing or being acquainted with people, Chinese characters, etc.: *Wǒ-bujrdau tā-shémma-shíhou-lái* 'I don't know when he is coming,' *Wǒ-burènshr-nèige-rén* 'I don't know that man.'

11. *Nèmma* 'so' sometimes occurs at the beginning of a sentence with the meaning 'in that case, hence, then, so.'
12. Verbs are often repeated, especially in commands or in answer to a request, to show that the action of the verb continues for a while. Sometimes the syllable *yi* is put between the two parts of the verb: *Jèibèn-shū hèn-hǎu. Nǐ-'kànyikàn* 'This book is very nice. Look at it (for a while).' *Hǎu, wǒ-'kànkàn* 'All right, I'll take a look at it.'

LESSON 27

SIMILARITY AND DISPARITY

Conversation: Wáng tells of his nickname

- W: Nǐ-kàn-nèige-chìchē. Wǒ-méi-kàn-jyangwo nèmma-syǎude. Look at that automobile. I've never seen such a small one.
- M: Nǐ-shwōde shr-nèige? Which one do you mean?
- W: Pùdz-chyántoude-nèige. Busyàng-Měigwo-chē. That one in front of the store. It doesn't look like an American car.
- M: Yésyǔ shr-Yínggwo-chē. Gēn-Yínggwode-syǎu-chìchē yiyàng. Perhaps it's an English car. It's the same as a small English automobile.
- W: Yínggwode-chìchē budōu-shr-dàde-ma? Aren't all English cars big ones?
- M: Budōu-shr-dàde. Hái-yǒu-syǎude. Not all are big ones. There are also small ones. They're the same size as that one in front of the store.
- W: Nǐ-kāigwo-Yínggwo-chì'chē-méi-you? Have you ever driven an English car?
- M: Kāigwo-yítsz. I've driven one once.
- W: Dzài-nǎr-kāide? Dzài-'Yínggwo-kāide-ma? Where did you drive it? Did you drive it in England?
- M: Búshr. Dzài-Jūnggwo-kāide. Wǒ-méi-chyùgwo-Yínggwo. No. I drove it in China. I've never been to England.
- W: Yínggwo-chìchē dzěmmayàng? What do you think of English cars?
- M: Yǒu-hǎude, hái-yǒu-búnèmma-hǎude. Měigwo-rén budà-sihwan-kāi-syǎu-chìchē. Some are good and some are not so good. Americans aren't very keen about driving small cars.
- W: Syǎu-chē gēn-dàde yiyàng-kwài-ma? Are small cars as fast as big ones?
- M: Buyiyàng-kwài. Syǎu-chē méiyǒu-dàde-kwài. They're not the same speed. Small cars aren't as fast as big ones.
- W: Yàushr syǎu-chē yòu-màn-yòu-syǎu, wèi-shémma Yínggwo-rén síhwan-kāi-ne? If small cars are slow as well as small, why do Englishmen like to drive them?
- M: Syǎu-chē méiyǒu-dà-chē-gwèi. (Because) small cars aren't as expensive as big ones.

- W: Nèmma Jūnggwo-rén wèi-shémma dōu-syǎng-mǎi-Měigwo-chē-ne? Then why do all Chinese want to buy American cars?
- M: Jūnggwo-chìchē-lù syàndzài budà-hǎudzǒu. Yàushr-lù-buhǎu, syǎu-chìchē jyòu-dzòubulyǎule. China's auto roads are at present not very good to travel on. If the roads aren't any good, small cars can't travel them.
- W: Gāngtsái-ní-shwō dzài-Jūnggwo kāigwo-yítshì Yīnggwo-syǎu-chìchē. Chē dzěmmayàng? A moment ago you said you drove a small English car once in China. What was the car like?
- M: Budà-hǎu. Nèitsz wōmen-szge-rén dàu-chéng-wài kàn-'péngyou-chyùle. Nèityān shr-'wǒ-kāi-chē. Not very good. At that time four of us went outside the city to see some friends. It was I who drove the car that day.
- W: Nèmma-syǎude-chē hái-néng-dzwò-szge-rén-ma? Could such a small car still seat four people?
- M: Néng. Dàule-chéng-wài lù-jyòu-buhǎudzǒule. Chìchē jyòu-dzòubulyǎule. Yes, it could. When we got outside the city the road was no longer passable. The car couldn't proceed any further.
- W: Ní-méi-chíng lùshangde-rén bāng-máng-ma? Didn't you ask the people on the road to help you?
- M: Chíngle-lyǎng-sāngde-rén. Tāmen-yě-dōu-lái bāng-mángle. Kěshr tāmen-yí-kànjyan-wōmen-wàigwo-rén jyòu-syǎule. We asked two or three people. They all came to help us too. But as soon as they saw us foreigners they all laughed.
- W: Tāmen-syǎu-shémma? What were they laughing about?
- M: Wǒ-tīngjian yíge-rén-jèmma-shwō: "Ní-kàn-nèisyē-wàigwo-rénde-bídz. Dzěmma-nèmma-gāu?" I heard a man speak as follows: "Look at the noses of those foreigners. How is it that they're so high?"
- W: Jūnggwo-rén kàn-wàigwo-rénde-bídz dōu-hěn-gāu, hěn-dà. Wǒ-búshr-wàigwo-rén, kěshr wǒde-bídz-busyǎu. Wǒ-péngyou-shwō wǒ-shr-wàigwo-rén. Tāmen-yě-cháng-cháng-syǎu-wo, jyǎu-wǒ-Wáng-Dà-Bídz. Chinese think foreigners' noses are all very high and very big. I'm not a foreigner, but my nose isn't small. My friends say I'm a foreigner. They also often laugh at me and call me Big Nose Wáng.

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|-----------|--|--------------|---|
| 1. syàng | TV: resemble, be like | 7. yiyàng | SV: be identical (<i>yī</i> 'one' plus <i>yàng</i> 'sort') |
| 2. syào | TV: laugh (at) | 8. yàng | M: sort, kind |
| 3. bāng | TV: assist, help | 9. syē | M: few (see Note 4) |
| 4. bāngju | TV: assist, help (<i>bāng</i> plus <i>jù</i> 'to help') | 10. bídz | N: nose |
| 5. kwài | SV: be fast | 11. jèmma | AD: so, this sort (see Note 2c) |
| 6. màn | SV: be slow | 12. chàbudwō | PH: almost (see Note 6) |

Substitution Tables

syǎu chē	(bu-)	gēn	dà chē	(bu-)	yiàng	—	(ma?)
chìchē			fēiji			dà	
chwán			lauhǔ			kwài	
rén			mǎ			màn	
	Yínggwo	syàng	Yīndu	jèmma	dà		
	Āběn	méiyǒu	Jūnggwo	nèmma	ywǎn		
	Fàgwo		Měigwo		syǎu		
	Myǎndyàn		Dégwo		hǎu		

Drill I. Similarity and Disparity

1. Jèige-jwōdz gēn-nèige yiàng-dà. This table is the same size as that one.
2. Jintyande-sínwén gēn-dzwótyande yiàng. Today's news is the same as yesterday's.
3. Jèige-dz bugēn-nèige-dz yiàng. This character is not the same as that character.
4. Wōde-yisz gēn-nǐde buyiàng. My idea is different from yours.
5. Jèige-sywésheng gēn-nèige-sywésheng yiàng-hǎu. This student is as good as that student.
6. Nǐ-gēn-wōde-pényou yiàng-gāu. You're as tall as my friend.
7. Jūnggwo-rénde-bǐdz gēn-wàigwo-rénde-bǐdz yiàng-gāu-ma? Are Chinese noses as high as foreigners' noses?
8. Syě-dz gēn-nyàn-shū yiàng-yàujǐn. Writing is as important as reading.
9. Fàgwo-fàn gēn-Jūnggwo-fàn yiàng-hǎuchī-ma? Is French food as tasty as Chinese?
10. Yínggwo-chē gēn-Měigwo-chē buyiàng-kwài-ma? Aren't English cars as fast as American cars?
11. 'Mǎ-Syǎnsheng syàng-wǒ-jèmma-gāu. Mr. Martin is as tall as I.
12. Nèige-lauhǔ syàng-mǎ-nèmma-dà. That tiger was as big as a horse.
13. Yínggwo syàng-Āběn nèmma-syǎu. England is as small as Japan.
14. Myǎndyàn gēn-Yīndu yiàng-ywǎn. Burma is as far as India.
15. Jūnggwo-hwà syàng-Āběn-hwà nèmma-nán-ma? Is Chinese as difficult as Japanese?
16. Jèiyàng méiyǒu-nèiyàng-gwèi. This kind isn't as expensive as that kind.
17. Chwán méiyǒu-chìchē nèmma-kwài. Boats aren't as fast as automobiles.
18. Nèisyē-rén méiyǒu-wǒ-syǎnsheng-gāu. Those men aren't as tall as my teacher.
19. Wōde-mǎ méiyǒu-tāde-nèmma-màn. My horse isn't as slow as his.
20. Nèige-chéng méiyǒu-Sūjou-dà. That city isn't as big as Soochow.

Drill II. Questions and Answers

1. Nǐ-jǐntyán-syàwǔ néng-bunéng-bāng-wōde-máng? Can you help me this afternoon?

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 2. Jintyan-bunéng. Míngtyan-dzēm-mayàng? | I can't today. How will tomorrow be? |
| 3. Yìgwo-hwà gēn-Fàgwo-hwà yiyàng-ma? | Are Italian and French the same? |
| 4. Yìgwo-hwà gēn-Fàgwo-hwà budà-yiyàng. | Italian and French are not much alike. |
| 5. Nèisyē-Jūnggwo-shū 'dwōshau-chyán? | How much are those Chinese books? |
| 6. Lyǎngkwài-chyán yiběn. | \$2 per volume. |
| 7. Nǐ-syàndzài néng-bunéng-chyù gēi-wō-mǎi-bàu? | Can you go buy the newspaper for me now? |
| 8. Mǎi-'shémma-bàu? | Buy what newspaper? |
| 9. Wáng-Syānshengde-jyā lí-jèr dwō-ywǎn? | How far is Mr. Wáng's home from here? |
| 10. Wáng-Syānshengde-jyā méiyōu-wōde nèmma-ywǎn. | Mr. Wáng's home isn't as far away as mine. |
| 11. Bāngju-Mǎ-Syānshengde-nèige-rén shr-shéi? | Who is that man helping Mr. Martin? |
| 12. Bāngju-Mǎ-Syānshengde-nèige-rén shr-kāichēde. | That man helping Mr. Martin is the driver. |
| 13. Nǐ-dzwótýan-mǎide-jwōdz dwō-dà? | How big is the table you bought yesterday? |
| 14. Wō-dzwótýan-mǎide-jwōdz gēn-jèige yiyàng-dà. | The table I bought yesterday is the same size as this one. |
| 15. Jwōdzshang yōu-'dwōshau-chyán? | How much money is there on the table? |
| 16. Jwōdzshang yōu-chàbudwō s̀kwài-chyán. | There is almost four dollars on the table. |
| 17. Jèiyàngde 'hǎu-buhǎu? | How is this kind? |
| 18. Nèiyàngde yě-budà-hǎu. | That kind isn't very good either. |
| 19. Jèitsz nǐ-syǎng dzwò-chìchē-chyuma? | Do you plan to go by car this time? |
| 20. Jèitsz wō-syǎng dzwò-fēiji-chyuma. | This time I plan to go by plane. |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|---|
| *1. Nèige-jìjě hěn-syàng-wàigwo-rén. | That reporter is a lot like a foreigner. |
| *2. Jèisyē-jwōdz dōu-shr-yiyàngde. | These tables are all alike. |
| *3. Wōde-fádz gēn-nǐde buyiyàng. | My method is different from yours. |
| *4. Nǐ-mǎide-jǐ gēn-wō-dzwótýan-mǎide-jǐ yiyàng-hwài. | The paper you bought is as bad as the paper I bought yesterday. |
| *5. Nèige-chìchē syàng-fēiji nèmma-kwài. | That car is as fast as an airplane. |
| *6. Jèige-lù méiyōu-nèige-hǎu. | This road isn't as good as that one. |
| *7. Jèisyē-chìchē dōu-méiyōu-wōde nèmma-kwài. | None of these cars is as fast as mine. |
| 8. Nǐ-syàu-shémma? | What are you laughing at? |

Drill III (cont.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 9. Nèiyàngde-dūngsi yòu-syǎu yòu-gwèi. | That kind of thing is both small and expensive. |
| 10. Wǒ-yào-syèsye-ta, yīnwei tā-bāng-wǒ-hěn-dwō-máng. | I want to thank him, as he helped me a great deal. |
| 11. Nèige-Jūnggwo-rénde-bídz gēn-wàigwo-rénde chàbudwō-yiyàng-dà. | That Chinese person's nose is almost as big as a foreigner's. |
| 12. Jèige-shān méiyǒu-nèige-gāu. | This mountain isn't as high as that one. |
| 13. Nǐ-néng-bunéng-bāngju-wo sywé-Jūnggwo-hwà? | Can you help me study Chinese? |
| 14. Jèisyē-dz wǒ-chàbudwō-dōu-hwèi-syēle. | I can write almost all these characters. |
| 15. Gēn-wàigwo-rén-yiyàng-gāude-Jūnggwo-rén bushǎu. | There are quite a few Chinese who are as tall as foreigners. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Syē-dz méiyǒu-shwō-hwà yàujīn. | 11. Wǒ-busīn Měigwo-gēn-Jūnggwo-yiyàng-dà. |
| 2. Nèi-lyǎngge-difangde-chíngsīng chàbudwō-yiyàng. | 12. Jèr yǒu-méiyǒu-rén néng-bāng-máng? |
| 3. Jyàu-èr-sānbǎi-rén lái-bāngju-wǒmen. | 13. Jìshr-lǐbàilyòu dàubulyǎu, wǒmen-dzài-jèr-jù-yì-lyǎngtyān, 'hǎu-buhǎu? |
| 4. Nèige-dàifu hěn-syàng-wàigwo-rén, kěshr wǒ-burènsīr-ta. | 14. Yǒude-rén-shwō tā-syàng-Rběn-rén, kěshr-wǒ-yí-kàn-ta jyòu-jīrdau tā-shr-Jūnggwo-rén. |
| 5. Tā-yào-mǎi yòu-hǎu-yòu-jyànde-jwōdz. | 15. Tā-tàitai yòu-gāu-yòu-hǎukàn. |
| 6. Jūnggwo méiyǒu-nèmma-kwàide-fēiji. | 16. Tāmen-dōu-shwō jèige-lù méiyǒu-nèige-hǎudzǒu. |
| 7. Nèisyē-rén budàn-méiyǒu-bāngju-wǒmen, bìngchǎyē-hái-syàu-wǒmen. | 17. Jèisyē-mǎ dōu-yiyàng-màn. |
| 8. Bàushang-shwō dzwótyan-dzǎu-shang-shíyidyǎn-bàn yǒu-sǎge-wàigwo-jǐjě lái-kàn-jèige-difangde-chíngsīng. | 18. Gāng-láide-nèige-rén gēn-Mǎ-Syānsheng chàbudwō-yiyàng-gāu. |
| 9. Dàifu-shwō tā-bubì-'dzài-lái-kàn-ni. | 19. Yàushr-dzwò-chìchē nǐ-děi-dzǒu-chàbudwō-sānge-jūngtóu. |
| 10. Tā-shwō bunéng-dzwò-chìchē-chyu, yīnwei lù-buhǎudzǒu. | 20. Byé-syàu-ta. Tā-bīngle. |

NOTES

1. a. The stative verb *yiyàng* is used either as a full verb meaning 'to be identical, to be the same,' or as an adverb meaning 'equally': *Jèi-lyǎngběn-shū yiyàng* 'These two books are one sort, These two books are the same,' *Jèi-lyǎngběn-shū buyiyàng* 'These two books are not the same, These two books are different,' *Jèi-lyǎngběn-shū yiyàng-dà* 'These two books are one sort big, These two books are equally big, These two books are the same size,' *Jèi-lyǎngběn-shū buyiyàng-dà* 'These two books are not equally big, These two books are not the same size, These two books are different in size.'

- b. Often the things which are being compared are not lumped together in phrases like 'these two books' but are mentioned separately, as in 'my book and your book,' 'that big book and this little one.' In these cases Chinese connects the two items with the coverb *gēn* 'together with, and': *Wǒde-shū gēn-nǐde-shū yìyàng* 'My book and your book are one sort, My book and your book are the same,' *Wǒde-shū gēn-nǐde-shū yìyàng-dà* 'My book and your book are one sort big, My book is the same size as your book.'
- c. The two Chinese sentences mentioned in the preceding paragraph can be made negative by putting *bu* before either the coverb *gēn* or before *yìyàng* without much difference in meaning: *Wǒde-shū bugēn-nǐde-shū yìyàng* 'My book is not the same as your book,' *Wǒde-shū gēn-nǐde-shū buyìyàng* 'My book is different from your book,' *Wǒde-shū bugēn-nǐde-shū yìyàng-dà* 'My book is not the same size as your book,' *Wǒde-shū gēn-nǐde-shū buyìyàng-dà* 'My book is different in size from your book.'
2. a. The verb *syàng* 'to resemble' is used as an ordinary transitive verb to express a general similarity: *Nǐ-syàng-ta* 'You resemble him, You look like him.'
- b. The verb *syàng* is also used with stative verbs to express a specific similarity: *Nǐ-syàng-ta nèm-ma-gāu* 'You resemble him so big, You are as big as he,' *Nǐde-shū syàng-wǒde-shū jèm-ma-dà* 'Your book resembles my book so big, Your book is as big as my book.'
- c. The adverbs *jèm-ma* 'this sort' and *nèm-ma* 'that sort' used in the preceding sentences are both generally translated as 'so' or 'as.' *Jèm-ma* refers to something close by and *nèm-ma* to something farther away or at no specified place or distance: *Nèiben-shū syàng-jèiběn-shū jèm-ma-dà* 'That book resembles this book this sort big, That book is as big as this book,' *Jèiben-shū syàng-nèiběn-shū nèm-ma-dà* 'This book resembles that book that sort big, This book is as big as that book,' *Tā-syàng-wǒ-péngyou nèm-ma-dà* 'He's as big as my friend.'
3. a. If in describing two things, A and B, we say that A is inferior in some respects to B, as in the sentence 'He isn't as tall as I,' Chinese uses *méiyǒu* 'not have' with a stative verb (SV) in the pattern *A méiyǒu B SV*: *Tā-méiyǒu-wǒ-gāu* 'He doesn't have my tallness, He isn't as tall as I,' *Yìndu méiyǒu-Jūnggwo-dà* 'India isn't as big as China.'
- b. The adverbs *jèm-ma* and *nèm-ma* are sometimes used before the stative verb in sentences such as those just mentioned: *Yìndu méiyǒu-Jūnggwo nèm-ma-dà* 'India isn't as big as China,' *Nǐde-shū méiyǒu-wǒde-shū jèm-ma-dà* 'Your book isn't as big as my book.'
4. The syllable *syē* 'a few' is a measure which replaces any other measure after the specifiers *jèi*, *nèi*, and *něi* to indicate a general plural: *jèige-rén* 'this person,' *jèisyē-rén* 'these persons'; *nèiben-shū* 'that book,' *nèisyē-shū* 'those books'; '*něige-chē?* 'which car?', '*něisyē-chē?* 'which cars?'
5. Sentences such as 'He is both tall and big' are expressed by using the adverb *yòu* 'again, also' before both verbs: *Tā-yòu-gāu-yòu-dà* 'He is also tall also big, He is both tall and big.'
6. The phrase *chàbuduō* 'almost,' which literally means something like 'lacks not much, differs not much,' is used very flexibly: *chàbuduō-èrshíge-rén* 'almost twenty people,' *chàbuduō-yìyàng* 'almost the same,' *chàbuduō-dōu-láile* 'almost all came.'

7. a. The verb *bāngju* 'help, assist' is generally used for helping to do some specific task: *Tā-bāngju-wo dzwò-fàn* 'He helps me cook the food.'
- b. The verb *bāng* followed by *máng* 'busy' as object forms a more or less set expression meaning 'to help' in the sense of 'to help one's being busy, to help one in one's being busy, to help out.' In the phrase *bāng-máng* the verb *bāng* already has the object *máng* and therefore cannot take another object: *Wǒ-bāng-tāde-máng* 'I helped him,' *Tā-bāng-wǒ-hěn-dwō-máng* 'He helped me a great deal.'
8. The verbs *lái* 'some' and *chǎyù* 'go' are used after a verb as well as before a verb to express purpose: *Wǒ-chǎyù-kàn-péngyou*, *Wǒ-kàn-péngyou-chǎyù* 'I'm going to see some friends.'
9. The verb *dzwò* 'to sit' also means 'to seat': *Jèige-chē néng-dzwò-wǔge-rén* 'This car can seat five people.'

LESSON 28

COMPARISON

Conversation: Martin tells how he was taken for a Chinese

- M: Wǒmen-syàndzài wàng-'něibyar-dzǒu-ne? Búshr-wàng-běi-dzǒu-ma? In what direction are we walking now? Aren't we walking toward the north?
- W: Búshr. Wǒmen-shr-wàng-sīběi-dzǒu-ne. Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn dzài-chéngde-sīběibyar. Dzwèi-yǒu-míngde-fàngwǎr yě-dzài-něibyar. Kěshr dzwèi-yǒu-míngde-shūpù dōu-dzài-dūngnánbyar. No. We are walking toward the northwest. The Chinese-American Restaurant is in the northwestern part of the city. The most famous restaurants are also there. But the best known bookstores are all in the southeast.
- M: Nyóuywē-Tàiwushrbàude-gūngshrfáng shr-bushr-dzài-chéngde-běibyar? Aren't the offices of the *New York Times* in the northern section of the city?
- W: Shr. Dàgūngbàude-gūngshrfáng yě-dzài-běibyar. Wǒ-jyā dzài-nánbyar, swóyi wǒ-měityān yàu-dzǒu-bushǎude-lù. They are. The offices of the *Dàgūngbàu* are also in the northern section. My home is in the southern section, so I have to travel quite a bit every day.
- M: Nǐ-jyā lí-gūngshrfáng dwō-ywǎn? How far is your home from the office?
- W: Sǎlǐ-dwō-lù. More than four *li*.
- M: Bǐ-wǒde-jyā ywǎnde-dwō. It's much farther than my home.
- W: Dwèile. That's right.
- M: Wǒmen-syàndzài lí-fàngwǎr dwō-ywǎn? How far are we from the restaurant now?
- W: Buywǎnle. Wǒ-méi-dzǒu-dà-mǎlù yīnwei-jèige-lù jìn-yidyǎr. Dzài-dzǒu-sz-wǔfēn-jūng jyòu-dàule. Dzěmma, nǐ-lèi-ma? Not far. I didn't take the main road because it's a little closer by this road. Another four or five minutes and we'll be there. Why, are you tired?
- M: Yǒu-yidyǎr-lèi, kěshr nà-buyàujīn. I'm a little tired, but that doesn't matter.
- W: Wǒ-yě-yǒu-yidyǎr-lèi. I'm a little tired too.

- M: Syàtsz-lái kéyi-dzwò-chìchē. Jèitsz wǒ-mǎile-tài-dwō-shū, méi-chyán-dzwò-chìchē. Next time we can take a car. This time I bought too many books, so we don't have any money left to take a car.
- W: Nà-buyàujīn. Kàn-shū bǐ-chī-fàn yàujīnde-dwō. Wǒ-yǒude-shfhou yě-nèmma-syǎng. It doesn't matter. It is much more important to read than to eat. I think so too sometimes.
- M: Syàndzài búnèmma-syǎngle. I don't think so any longer now.
- W: Nà-shr-yīnwei nǐ-chàbudwō yìtyān méi-chī-dūngsi. That's because you haven't eaten for almost a day.
- M: Dwèile! Wǒ-syàndzai busyǎng-byéde, jǐ-syǎng-chī-yidyǎr-dūngsi. That's right. Now I'm not thinking of anything else, I'm only thinking of eating a bit.
- W: Syān hē-yidyǎr-jyǒu, dzěmmayàng? How about drinking a little wine first?
- M: Yě-hǎu. Kěshr wǒ-budà-sfhwān 'Jūnggwo-jyǒu. That'll be all right too. But I don't care much about Chinese wine.
- W: Yěsyǔ nǐ-méi-hēgwo-hǎude. Perhaps that's because you have never had any good wine.
- M: Wǒ-hēde dōu-méiyǒu-Měigwode-hǎu. None of what I have drunk has been as good as American (liquor).
- W: Yǒude-wàigwo-rén-shwō Jūnggwo-jyǒu-hěn-hǎuhē. Some foreigners say Chinese wine is very nice to drink.
- M: Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎnde-jyǒu dzěmmayàng? What's the wine at the Chinese-American Restaurant like?
- W: Shr-chéngli dzwèi-hǎude. Nǐ-hēgwo tāmende-jyǒu nǐ-yídìng-buhwèi-dzài-shwō Jūnggwo-jyǒu buhǎuhē. Nǐ-dzài-nǎr hēgwo-Jūnggwo-jyǒu? It's the best in the city. After you've once drunk their wine you certainly won't be able to say any more that Chinese wine isn't good to drink. Where have you ever had Chinese wine?
- M: Wǒ-wǎngle-nèige-fàngwǎrde-míng-dz-le. Wàigwo-rén cháng-dàu-nèrchyu hē-jyǒu chī-fàn. I've forgotten the name of that restaurant. Foreigners often go there to eat and drink.
- W: Ou! Wǒ-jǐrdau-nèige-difang. Dzài-Nán-Chéng-ne. Tāmende-jyǒu buhǎuhē. Nimen-wàigwo-rén wèishémma dàu-nèiyàngde-fàngwǎr-ne? Oh! I know that place. It's in the South City. Their wine is terrible. Why do you foreigners go to such restaurants?
- M: Yěsyǔ shr-yīnwei fàngwǎrli-dzwò-shrde-rén dōu-hwèi-shwō-Yīngwén. Perhaps it's because the people who work in the restaurant can all speak English.
- W: Nǐ-cháng-chyù-nèige-fàngwǎr-ma? Do you often go to that restaurant?
- M: Bucháng-chyù. Jǐ-chyùle-yítsz. Nèitsz chī-fàn-hē-jyǒude-rén dōu-shr-wàigwo-rén. Yǒu-sz-wūge-Měigwo-rén, yǒu-hǎujíge-Yīnggwo-rén, hái-yǒu-yì-lyǎngge-Fàgwo-rén. I don't go there often. I've just been there once. The people who were eating and drinking there at that time were all foreigners. There were four or five Americans, several Englishmen, and also one or two Frenchmen.
- W: Méiyǒu-yíge-Jūnggwo-rén-ma? Wasn't there a single Chinese?

- M: Nèityān yíge-yě-méiyōu. That day there wasn't a single one.
 W: Dzwò-shrde-rén búshr-Jüggwo- Weren't the people working there Chi-
 rén-ma? nese?
 M: Shr. Jǎnggwèide yě-shr-Jüggwo- Yes. The manager was also a Chinese.
 rén.
 W: Tā-hwèi-shwō-Yíngwén-ma? Could he speak English?
 M: 'Tā-buhwèi, kěshr dzwò-shrde-rén He couldn't, but the people who worked
 dōu-hwèi. Wō-syān-bujrdàu tāmen- there all could. At first I didn't know that
 hwèi-shwō-Yíngwén, jyòu-gēn-tā- they could speak English, and I spoke
 men shwō-Jüggwo-hwà. Yōu-yíge- Chinese with them. One man asked me:
 rén wèn-wo: "Syānsheng-shr-Jügg- "Are you a Chinese, sir?"
 wo-rén-ma?"
 W: Tā-wèi-shemma kàn-ní-shr-Jügg- Why did he think you were Chinese?
 wo-rén?
 M: Wō-wèn-ta wō-syāng-Jüggwo-rén- I asked him whether I looked like a Chi-
 ma? Tā-shwō busyāng, kěshr shwō- nese. He said I didn't look like one but I
 hwà yōu-yidyār-syāng. Tā-shwō: was a little like one in speech. He said:
 "Syānsheng búshr-Jüggwo-rén, "If you're not a Chinese, how come you
 'dzemma-hwèi-shwō-Jüggwo-hwà- know how to speak Chinese?"
 ne?"

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|---------------|--|---------|--|
| 1. yídìng | AV: certain to, sure to (<i>yí</i> 'one, all' plus <i>dìng</i> 'decided') | 7. mǎlù | N: (important) road (<i>mǎ</i> 'horse' plus <i>lù</i> 'road') |
| 2. bǐ | CV: compared to | 8. dūng | PW: east |
| 3. wàng | CV: toward, to | 9. sī | PW: west |
| 4. gèng | AD: more, still more | 10. nán | PW: south |
| 5. syān | AD: first | 11. běi | PW: north |
| 6. byār, byar | M: side, region | 12. nà | SP: that |

Substitution Table

Měigwo	bǐ	Yínggwo	—	ywǎn	yidyar
Jüggwo		Fàgwo	hái	dà	dyar
Myāndyàn		Yìgwo	gèng	hǎu	-de-dwō
Yìndu		Dégwo			

Drill I. Directions

- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. dūngbyar | the east | 8. sībēi | northwest |
| 2. nánbyar | the south | 9. dūngnánbyar | the southeast |
| 3. sībyar | the west | 10. dūngběibyār | the northeast |
| 4. běibyār | the north | 11. sīnánbyar | the southwest |
| 5. dūngnán | southeast | 12. sībēibyār | the northwest |
| 6. dūngběi | northeast | 13. wàng-dūng | toward the east |
| 7. sīnán | southwest | | |

Drill I (cont.)

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| 14. wàng-nán | toward the
south | 15. wàng-sī-dzǒu | go west |
| | | 16. wàng-dūngběi-dzǒu | go northeast |

Drill II. Comparison

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wǒ-syǎng jèige-fádz 'hǎu-yidyǎr. | I think this method is a little better. |
| 2. Tāde-bídz gèng-dà. | His nose is even bigger. |
| 3. Dzǒu-jèige-lù 'ywǎn-yidyǎr. | It's a little farther by this road. |
| 4. Nèige-sywésheng gāude-dwō. | That student is much taller. |
| 5. Wǒde-dàifu bǐ-nǐde-hǎu. | My doctor is better than yours. |
| 6. Tā-dzwòde-bīngjīlíng hǎuchīde-dwō. | The ice cream he makes is much tastier. |
| 7. Nèige-bào bǐ-Nyóuywē-Tàiwushìbào 'gwèi-yidyǎr. | That newspaper is more expensive than the <i>New York Times</i> . |
| 8. Dzwò-fēiji bǐ-dzwò-chìchē yǒu-yǐsz. | It's more fun [more interesting] to go by plane than by auto. |
| 9. Myǎndyàn bǐ-Jūnggwo 'ywǎn-yidyǎr. | Burma is farther than China. |
| 10. Jīnyande-chíngsīng bǐ-chyùnyande hwàide-dwō. | Conditions this year are much worse than last year. |

Drill III. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Myǎndyàn dzài-Jūnggwo-de-nánbyar-ma? | Is Burma south of China? |
| 2. Dwèile. Myǎndyàn dzài-Jūnggwo-de-nánbyar. | That's right. Burma is south of China. |
| 3. Dà-chìchē néng-dzwò-'dwōshau-rén? | How many people can the big car seat? |
| 4. Dà-chìchē néng-dzwò-èrshr-dwō-rén. | The big car can seat more than twenty people. |
| 5. Jèi-shì-bushr-Měigwo-jyǒu? | Is this American wine? |
| 6. Búshr. Měigwo-jyǒu bǐ-jèige hǎude-dwō. | No. American wine is much better than this. |
| 7. Chīng-wèn, dàu-Yīng-Měi-Shūpù 'dzěmma-dzǒu? | May I ask, how does one get to the British-American Bookstore? |
| 8. Wàng-sī dzǒu, yǐlǐ-lù jyòu-dàule. | Go west and you'll get there in one <i>li</i> . |
| 9. Nǐ-kàn nèige-dàifu-hǎu? | Which doctor do you think is better? |
| 10. Wǒ-kàn Chyán-Dàifu-hǎu. | I think Dr. Chyán is better. |
| 11. Chìchē néng-dzǒu-nèige-mǎlù-ma? | Can automobiles travel that road? |
| 12. Chìchē bunéng-dzǒu-nèige-mǎlù. | Automobiles cannot travel that road. |
| 13. Jūnggwo-shū 'gwèi-bugwèi? | Are Chinese books expensive? |
| 14. Buhěn-gwèi. Bǐ-Měigwo-shū jyànde-dwō. | Not very expensive. They're much cheaper than American books. |
| 15. Gāng-láide-nèige-rén shr-shéi? | Who is that man who has just come? |
| 16. Gāng-láide-nèige-rén shr-yíge hēnyǒu-míngde-jijě. | That man who has just come is a very famous reporter. |
| 17. Dà-yidyarde 'dwōshau-chyán? | How much is a little bigger one? |
| 18. Dà-yidyarde shǐkwài-wǔ. | A bigger one is \$10.50. |

Drill III (cont.)

19. Jintyan-dzǎushang chyù-buchyù- kàn-ta? Are you going to see him this morning?
 20. Buchyù. Jintyan-dzǎushang wǒ-tài-máng. No. I'm too busy this morning.

Drill IV. Model Sentences

- *1. Jèige-jwōdz 'jyàn-yidyǎr. This table is a little cheaper.
 *2. Mèigwo bǐ-Yīnggwo dàde-dwo. America is much bigger than England.
 *3. Dzǒu-dà-mǎlu 'jìn-yidyǎr. It's a little nearer by the main road.
 *4. Wàng-dūng-dzǒu yìkè-jūng jyòu-dàule. If you go east for a quarter of an hour you'll reach it.
 *5. Nǐ-yídìng-děi-gěi-tā-hǎude. You certainly have to give him a better one.
 6. Nèibyar yídìng-méiyǒu-yóujidwèi. There are certainly no guerrillas in that direction.
 7. Nèige-lù gèng-hǎudzǒu. That road is even better going.
 8. Jèibyarde-shān hěn-gāu, kěshr sǐbèi-byarde-shān gèng-gāu. The mountains in this direction are very high, but the mountains in the north-west are still much higher.
 9. Wǒmen-yǐjing-wàng-nán-dzǒule lyòuge-jūngtóu-le, kěshr hái-kànbu-jyàn nánbyarde-shān. We've already been traveling south for six hours but we still can't see the mountains in the south.
 10. Nà-buyídìng. That's not certain.
 11. Tā-shwō wàng-sī-dzǒu 'jìn-yidyǎr. He says it's a little nearer to go west.
 12. Chǐng-wèn, dàu-Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn wàng-'něibyar-dzǒu? May I ask, in what direction should one go to get to the Chinese-American Restaurant?
 13. Nǐ-syān-chyù. Wǒ-jyòu-lái. You go first. I'll come immediately.
 14. Byéde-lù dǒu-méiyǒu-jèige-hǎudzǒu. The other roads are all inferior to this one.
 15. Tā-jyàu-wǒ-chyù gěi-tā-mǎi-hǎude. He told me to go and buy a better one for him.

Drill V. Translation Exercise

1. Dzài-nèige-dà-shānde-běibyar yǒu-hěn-dwō yóujidwèi. 8. Sínánbyarde-shān jyàu-shémma?
 2. Wàng-sī méiyǒu-hǎu-mǎlù. 9. Jèmma-syě 'hǎu-yidyǎr.
 3. Fěiji bǐ-chìchē kwàide-dwō. 10. Nèige-chéng lí-jèr 'gèng-ywǎn. Sàge-jūngtóu hái-dàubulyǎu.
 4. Nà-shr-'shémma-yisz? 11. Fàgwo dzài-Dégwode-sībyar.
 5. Rbēn dzài-Jūnggwode-dūngbyar. 12. Jèige-fàngwǎr bǐ-nèige hǎude-dwō.
 6. Wǒmen-yídìng-děi-chǐng-rén lái-bāng-máng. 13. Nǐ-mǎide-shū bǐ-wǒde gwèi-yidyar.
 7. Wǒde-pényou hěn-gāu, kěshr Mǎ-Syānsheng bǐ-tā-hái-gāu. 14. Yídìng-děi wàng-jèibyar-dzǒu.
 15. Tā-shwō Jūnggwo-hwà bǐ-Yingwén 'nán-yidyǎr.

Drill V (cont.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 16. Nèige-chyán wǒ-yídìng-buyàu. | 19. Tsúng-jèige-difang yàu-wàng-dūng-dzǒu. |
| 17. Hǎu-yidyarde 'yǒu-méiyǒu?' | |
| 18. Běibyarde-shān bǐ-nánbyarde gāude-dwō. | 20. Syě-Jūnggwo-dzǐ bǐ-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà nán-de-dwō. |

NOTES

1. a. The comparative degree, which in English is generally expressed by adding *er* to an adjective, as in 'tall taller, old older,' is sometimes not indicated at all in Chinese except by the context: *Jèr-yǒu-lyǎngge-mǎ. Nǐ-kàn-nèige-hǎu?* 'Here are two horses. Which one do you think is better?'
 - b. The comparative of stative verbs is most often formed by adding *yidyǎr* or *dyǎr* 'a little' after the verb. Both are used to make the comparison clear rather than to emphasize the idea of 'a little.' Often they are not even translated: *Jèige 'hǎu-yidyǎr* 'This is a little better, This is better.'
 - c. When two things are compared, as in the sentence 'I am bigger than you,' the second thing is expressed in Chinese as object of the coverb *bǐ* 'compared to': *Wǒ-bǐ-nǐ-dà, Wǒ-bǐ-nǐ-'dà-yidyǎr* 'I compared to you am big, I'm bigger than you,' *Dzwò-fēiji bǐ-dzwò-chìchē kwài-yidyǎr* 'It's faster by plane than by auto.'
 - d. When two things are compared the comparison can be made stronger by putting *gèng* or *hái*, both meaning 'still more, even,' before the stative verb: *Tā-bǐ-wǒ gèng-gāu* 'He compared to me is still more tall, He is even taller than I,' *Jèige hái-hǎu-yidyǎr* 'This is even better.'
 - e. If there is a great difference between two things which are being compared, as in the sentence 'He is much taller than I,' this is expressed by adding *-de dwō* 'by much' to the stative verb: *Nèige hǎude-dwō* 'That one is better by much, That one is much better,' *Wǒ-bǐ-nǐ dàde-dwō* 'I'm much bigger than you are,' *Dzwò-fēiji bǐ-dzwò-chìchē kwàide-dwō* 'It's much faster by plane than by auto.'
 - f. The adverb *hěn* 'very' is never used before a stative verb in a comparison. The idea of 'very' or 'very much' in a comparison is most often expressed by adding *-de dwō* to the stative verb, as mentioned in the preceding paragraph. Hence, 'He is very much taller than I' is likely to be *Tā-bǐ-wo gāude-dwō*.
2. The four cardinal points of the compass are given in Chinese in the order *dūng, nán, sī, běi* 'east, south, west, north,' or *dūng, sī, nán, běi* 'east, west, south, north,' that is starting with the word for 'east' rather than for 'north' as in English. Directions in between the four cardinal points are expressed by placing the words for 'east' and 'west' before those for 'north' and 'south.' This is the reverse of the practice in English. (See Drill I.)
3. The regions indicated by the points of the compass are expressed by adding to the latter the neutral syllable *byar*, derived from *byār* 'direction.' (See Drill I.)
4. The syllable *nà* is a variant form of the specifier *nèi* 'this' and is interchangeable with it, being used especially when referring back to a whole sentence or idea: *Nà-buyàujǐn* 'That doesn't matter.'
5. The auxiliary verb *yídìng* 'be certain to' is very often translated most conveniently as an adverb or phrase in English: *Tā-yídìng-lái* 'He is certainly coming,' *Tā-buyídìng-lái* 'He's not coming for sure.'

LESSON 29

ADVERBIAL PREDICATES

Conversation: Wáng and Martin discuss food

- W: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-'hwèi-buhwèi yùng-kwàidz? Mr. Martin, can you use chopsticks?
- M: Hwèi-yidyār. Wǒ-dzài-Měigwo chf-Jūnggwo-fānde-shfhou yùng-kwàidz. I can a little. When I ate Chinese food in America I ate with chopsticks.
- W: Dzài-Jūnggwo-ne? How about in China?
- M: Dzài-Jūnggwo yě-yùng-kwàidz. Tsúngchyán buhwèi-yùng. Syàn-dzài-yùngde bǐ-tsúngchyán hǎu-yidyar. In China I also use chopsticks. In the past I wasn't adept at using them. I use them a little better now than before.
- W: Nǐ-dzài-Měigwo-chfde-Jūnggwo-fàn dzěmmayàng? What was the Chinese food you ate in America like?
- M: Dzài-Měigwode-shfhou wǒ-yíwéi nèrde-Jūnggwo-fàn hǎuchf. Dàule-Jūnggwo tsái-jfdau háishr-jèrde-fàn hǎuchf. Nǐ-dzài-Měigwo chfgwo-Jūnggwo-'fàn-méiyou? When I was in America I thought the Chinese food there was nice. Only after arriving in China did I realize that the food here is nicer. Have you ever eaten Chinese food in America?
- W: Chfgwo-hǎujtsz. Budà-hǎuchf. I've eaten it a number of times. It isn't very good.
- M: Dzài-Měigwode-Jūnggwo-rén chà-budwǒ dǒu-shr-Gwǎngdūng-rén. Tāmen-dzwòde dǒu-shr-Gwǎngdūng-tsài. Almost all the Chinese in America are Cantonese. What they cook are all Cantonese dishes.
- W: Yě-buyídng jēn-shr-Gwǎngdūng-tsài-ba. It's not certain either that it really is Cantonese food.
- M: Búshr-hǎu-Gwǎngdūng-tsài, kěshr Měigwo-rén hái-sfhwan-chf. It isn't good Cantonese food, but Americans still like to eat it.
- W: Měigwo-rén chf-Jūnggwo-fàn wèi-shémma yàu-yùng-dàudz-chādz-ne? Chf-Jūnggwo-fàn yínggāi-yùng-kwàidz. Why do Americans insist on eating [want to eat] Chinese food with knife and fork? In eating Chinese food one should use chopsticks.
- M: Měigwo-rén yíwéi yùng-kwàidz tài-màn. Americans think using chopsticks is too slow.
- W: Chf-fàn háishr-màn-yidyar-hǎu. Tài-kwàile buhǎu. In eating it's better to be a little slower. If one is too fast it's no good.
- M: Tsúngchyán wǒ-yě-chfde tài-kwài. Syàndzài búnèmma-kwàile. Formerly I also ate too fast. Now I'm no longer so fast.
- W: Nǐ-dzài-Měigwode-shfhou wèi-shémma méi-jyāu-nǐde-pényou yùng-kwàidz? When you were in America why didn't you teach your friends to use chopsticks?

- M: Wǒ-'shè-jyāule-hǎujǐge-rén. Tā-men-kàn Jūnggwo-kwàidz hěn-hǎuyùng. Yǒude-shíhou chī-wàigwo-fàn yě-yàuyòng-kwàidz.
 W: Wǒ-dzài-Měigwode-shíhou yě-jyāule-lyǎngge-rén. Yǒu-yíge-shwō yàushr-méi-kwàidz Jūnggwo-fàn jyòu-buhǎu-chīle.
 M: Nà-shr-jēnde!
 W: Nǐ-cháng-chī-wǒmen-Jūnggwo-fàn-ma?
 M: Yíge-lǐbài yào-chī-sè-wùtsè.
 W: Dài-jyā-chī háishr-dài-fàngwǎr?
 M: Buyíding.
 W: Nǐ-cháng-chyù-Gwǎngdūng-fàngwǎr-ma?
 M: Bucháng-chyù. Wǒ-busíhwan-Gwǎngdūng-tsài.
 W: Nǐ-dzwei-síhwan-chīde shr-nǎrde-tsài?
 M: Běipíng-tsài dzwei-hǎuchī.
 W: Dwèile.
 M: Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎnde-tsài shr-'shéma-dìfangde?
 W: Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎn shr-Běipíng-rén-kāide. Tsài shr-Běipíng-tsài.
 M: Hǎujǐle. Wǒmen-dzǒu-kwài-yidiyar-ba. Dàule-fàngwǎr byé-wàngle dēisyān-hē-yidiyǎr-jyǒu.
 W: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, wǒ-jīntyan dzài-shūpùli jyāu-nǐde-nèige-gēr, nǐ-háihwèi-chàng-ma?
 M: Hwèi-chàng. Dzěmma? Nǐ-háiyǒu-byéde-gēr-ma?
 W: Yǒu. Wǒ-háiyǒu-yíge-láuhǔ-gēr.
 M: Hǎutīng-ma?
 W: Hǎutīngjǐle.
 M: Dzěmma-chàng?
 W: Míngtyan gěi-nǐ-'chàngchàng-ba. Wǒmen-kwài-dàule.
 M: Syān-gěi-wǒ-'shwōshwō nèige-gērde-yisz, kéyi-ma?
- I did teach quite a few people. They thought Chinese chopsticks were very nice to use. Sometimes they also used chopsticks when eating foreign food.
 When I was in America I also taught a couple of people. One said that if one doesn't have Chinese chopsticks, Chinese food doesn't taste good.
 That's the truth!
 Do you often eat our Chinese food?
 I eat it four or five times a week.
 Do you eat at home or at a restaurant?
 It's not definite.
 Do you often go to Cantonese restaurants?
 I don't often go. I don't like Cantonese dishes.
 What food do you like best? [That which you like best to eat is what place's dishes?]
 Peiping food is the tastiest.
 That's right.
 Of what place is the food at the Chinese-American Restaurant?
 The Chinese-American restaurant was opened by a native of Peiping. The food is Peiping food.
 Swell. Let's walk a little faster. When we arrive at the restaurant don't forget that we first have to drink a little wine.
 Mr. Martin, can you still sing that song I taught you at the bookstore today?
 I can sing it. Why? Do you also have some other songs?
 Yes. I have another tiger song.
 Is it nice?
 It sounds very nice.
 How do you sing it?
 I'll sing it for you tomorrow. We'll arrive soon.
 First tell me what the song means, can you?

W: Hǎu, kéyi:	I can:	
Sānge-láuhǔ		Oh three tigers ¹
Sānge-láuhǔ		Oh three tigers
Pǎude-kwài		Running fast
Pǎude-kwài		Running fast
Yíge méiyǒu-wěiba		One's without a tail
Yíge méiyǒu-wěiba		One's without a tail
Jēn-chígwài		That's quite strange
Jēn-chígwài.		That's quite strange.

Vocabulary

1. yùng	TV: to use	11. Běipíng	PW: Peiping (in Hopei Province) (<i>běi</i> 'north' plus <i>píng</i> 'peace')
2. jyāu	TV: teach		
3. yíwéi	TV: consider (<i>yǐ</i> 'take' plus <i>wéi</i> 'to be')	12. kwàidz	N: chopsticks
4. gāi	AV: should, ought to	13. chādz	N: fork
5. yīnggāi	AV: should, ought to (<i>yīng</i> 'ought' plus <i>gāi</i> 'ought')	14. dāudz	N: knife
		15. wěiba	N: tail
6. yīngdāng	AV: should, ought to (<i>yīng</i> 'ought' plus <i>dāng</i> 'ought')	16. tsài	N: course, dish, food
		17. tsúngchyán	TE: in the past, formerly (<i>tsúng</i> 'from' plus <i>chyán</i> 'front')
7. pǎu	IV: to run		
8. jēn	SV: be sincere, true, real		
9. píngcháng	SV: be ordinary, common (<i>píng</i> 'level' plus <i>cháng</i> 'constant')	18. hòulái	TE: later, afterwards (<i>hòu</i> 'rear' plus <i>lái</i> 'come')
10. chígwài	SV: be strange, amazing (<i>chí</i> 'wonderful' plus <i>gwài</i> 'strange')	19. jíle	GP: very (see Note 3)
		20. yikwàr	PH: together

Substitution Tables

dzǒu	-de	kwài	'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide	dzǒu	-de	bǐ	wǒ	kwài	—
pǎu		màn	'Wáng-Syānsheng	pǎu		nǐ	màn	yidyar	
shwō		dwō	wǒde-pényou	shwō		tā	dwō	sye	
syě		shǎu	'Mǎ-Syānsheng	syě			shǎu	-de dwō	
chàng		hǎu	'Wáng-Tàitai	chàng			hǎu		

1. The words in both the Chinese and English versions fit the tune of the round 'Frère Jacques.'

Drill I. Adverbial Predicates

1. dzōude-kwài	walk fast	11. dzōude-jēn-kwài	walk real fast
2. pǎude-kwài	run fast	12. pǎude-hěn-kwài	run very fast
3. syēde-màn	write slowly	13. syēde-gèng-màn	write more slowly
4. sywéde-màn	study slowly	14. sywéde-dzwèi-màn	study most slowly
5. ch̄rde-dwō	eat much	15. ch̄rde-jèmma-dwō	eat so much
6. hēde-shǎu	drink little	16. hēde-tài-shǎu	drink too little
7. dzwōde-hǎu	do well	17. dzwōde-buhǎu	do badly
8. shwōde-kwài	speak fast	18. shwōde-nèmma-kwài	speak so fast
9. mǎide-dwō	buy much	19. mǎide-hěn-dwō	buy very much
10. mǎide-jyàn	buy cheaply	20. mǎide-hěn-jyàn	sell very cheaply

Drill II. Comparison with Adverbial Predicates

1. Tā-dzōude bī-wō-kwài	He walks faster than I do.
2. Tā-dzōude bī-wō kwài-yidyar.	He walks a little faster than I do.
3. Tā-dzōude bī-wō kwàide-dwō.	He walks much faster than I do.
4. Tā-dzōude bī-wō gèng-kwài.	He walks even faster than I do.
5. Syàndzài tā-hēde bī-tsúngchyán-dwō.	He drinks more now than before.
6. Nī-chàngde bī-'Mǎ-Syānsheng hǎu-yidyar.	You sing somewhat better than Mr. Martin.
7. 'Wáng-Tàitai bī-'Wáng-Syānsheng ch̄rde-màn-sye.	Mrs. Wáng eats a little slower than Mr. Wáng.
8. Tā-syàndzài ch̄rde-bī-tsúngchyán dwōde-dwō.	He now eats much more than before.
9. Nèige-rén pǎude-bī-byéde-rén kwài-yidyar.	That man runs a little faster than the other people.
10. 'Sānge-láuhǔ'-gēr bī-nèige hǎutingde-dwō.	The song 'Three Tigers' sounds much nicer than that one.

Drill III. Questions and Answers

1. Byé-dzōu. Wōmen-tántán-hwà, 'hǎu-buhǎu.	Don't leave. Let's talk for a while.
2. Wō-gāi-dzōule.	I ought to leave.
3. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà shwōde-dzèmmayàng?	How does Mr. Martin speak Chinese?
4. Shwōde-jēn-hǎu.	He speaks real well.
5. Wō-jīntyan-syǎng-dàu-Běipíng. Nī-'néng-bunéng gēn-wō-yikwàr-chyù?	I plan to go to Peiping today. Can you go with me?
6. Bunéng. Jīntyan dēi-jyāu-shū.	No. I have to teach today.
7. Nèige-pùdz Jūnggwo-shū mǎide-'dwō-budwō?	Does that store sell many Chinese books?
8. Mǎide-hěn-dwō.	It sells a lot.
9. Nī-píngcháng yùng-kwàidz ch̄-fàn-ma?	Do you ordinarily eat with chopsticks?

Drill III (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 10. Píngcháng buyòng-kwàidz. Yùng-dāudz-chādz. | Ordinarily I don't use chopsticks. I use knife and fork. |
| 11. Tā-jyā lí-jèr bujìn. Wōmen-sāndyǎn-bàn dāudelyǎu-ma? | His home isn't near here. Can we get there by 3.30? |
| 12. Yàushr dzòude-kwài-yidyar yíkè-jūng jyòu-dàule. | If we walk a little faster we'll get there in a quarter of an hour. |
| 13. Ní-chǐgwo-jèiyàngde-tsài-ma? | Have you ever had this sort of dish? |
| 14. Chǐgwo-lyǎngtsz, kěshr méi-jèige-hǎu. | I've eaten it a couple of times, but it wasn't as good as this. |
| 15. Nèisyē-sywésheng 'shéi-syède-dzwèi-hǎu? | Of those students, who writes the best? |
| 16. Nèige-Hángjou-láide-sywésheng syède-dzwèi-hǎu. | That student from Hangchow writes the best. |
| 17. Ní-kàn nèige-dàifu dzěmmayàng? | What do you think of that doctor? |
| 18. Tsúngchyán wǒ-yíwéi tā-hěn-hǎu, kěshr syàndzài wǒ-jǐdau tā-búshr-hǎu-dàifu. | I used to think he was very good, but now I know he isn't a good doctor. |
| 19. Dzǒu-lù-kwài háishr-dzwò-chìchē-kwài? | Would it be quicker to walk or to go by auto? |
| 20. Háishr-dzwò-chìchē-kwài. | It would be quicker to go by auto. |

Drill IV. Model Sentences

- | | |
|--|--|
| *1. Tā-pǎude-jēn-kwài. | He runs real fast. |
| *2. Tāmen-dōu-chǐde bǐ-wǒ-màn. | They all eat slower than I do. |
| *3. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà shwōde-bǐ-wǒ hǎude-dwō. | Mr. Martin speaks Chinese much better than I do. |
| *4. Yàushr yùng-dāudz-chādz chǐ-fàn, jyòu-bǐ-nǐ kwài-sye. | If I eat with knife and fork I'm faster than you. |
| *5. Chǐng-ni shwō-màn-yidyar. | Please speak a little slower. |
| *6. Běipíng-tsài-hǎu háishr-Gwǎngdūng-tsài-hǎu? | Is Peiping or Cantonese food better? |
| *7. Wǒ-yíwéi lyǎngge-rén yikwàr-chyù hǎu. | I thought it would be better for two people to go together. |
| *8. Wōmen-yínggāi chǐng-bǐ-tā-hǎu-yidyarde-syānsheng lái-jyāu-wōmen-Jūnggwo-hwà. | We ought to invite a teacher who is somewhat better than he to come and teach us Chinese. |
| *9. Tsúngchyán nèige-dūngsi hěn-gwèi . . . Syàndzai-ne? . . . Gèng-gwèile. | That thing was formerly very expensive . . . What about now? . . . It's even more expensive. |
| 10. Hòulái tā-láile, kěshr wǒ-méi-dzài-jyā. | Later he came, but I wasn't at home. |
| 11. Nèige-láuhǔ jēn-chǐgwài. | That tiger is really odd. |
| 12. Lyǎngge-tsài shr-hěn-píngchángde-fàn. | Two courses is a very ordinary meal. |

Drill IV (cont.)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 13. Jishr-wōmen dzài-Jūnggwo wōmen-yīngdāng yùng-kwàidz chī-fàn. | Since we're in China we ought to eat with chopsticks. |
| 14. Nèisyē-láuhǔ hěn-chígwài. Dōu-méiyōu-wěiba. | Those tigers are very odd. They are all without tails. |
| 15. Nèige-gwèijíle. Wō-mǎibulyǎu. | That's awfully expensive. I can't buy it. |

Drill V. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Nī-buyīngdāng chīde-nèmma-kwài. | 11. Tā-pǎude bǐ-wo kwàide-dwō. |
| 2. Nī-jintyan syǎng-chī-'shémma-tsài? | 12. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng chàng-Jūnggwo-gēr yě-chàngde-budà-hǎu. |
| 3. Tāmen-dōu-shwō tsúngchyánde-chíngsīng hǎude-dwō. | 13. 'Wáng-Syānsheng syēde-dzēmmyàng? |
| 4. Wō-yīwéi tā-buhwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà, kěshr tā-bǐ-'Mǎ-Syānsheng shwōde-hǎu. | 14. Wōmen-chī-kwài-yidyar-ba. Wōmen-yīngdāng shfèrdyǎn-bàn-dzōu. |
| 5. Wō-dzài-Běipíngde-shfhou 'tyāntyān yùng-kwàidz chī-fàn. | 15. Nèige-fēiji kwàijíle. |
| 6. Tā-'chángcháng chīde-tài-kwài, swóyi tā-bīngle. | 16. Nī-dzwótian-mǎide-jwōdz 'gwèibugwèi? |
| 7. Chīng-ni mǎn-yidyar-dzōu. Wō-lèijíle. | 17. Dāudz-gwèi háishr-chādz-gwèi? |
| 8. Tā-bujrdàu shr-yùng-kwàidz-hǎu háishr-yùng-dāudz-chādz-hǎu. | 18. Tā-yíjing-jyāule-hěn-dwō-wàigwo-rén shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà. |
| 9. Wōmen-gāi-dzōule. | 19. Wōmen-yīnggāi dzōu-mǎn-yidyar. |
| 10. Tā-hěn-sīhwan gēn-tàitai yikwàr-'dzōuyidzōu. | 20. Wàigwo-rén píngcháng buyùng-kwàidz-chī-fàn. |

Drill VI. Sentence Pyramid

1. Mǎn-yidyar.
2. Shwō-mǎn-yidyar.
3. Shwōde-mǎn-yidyar.
4. Nèige-rén shwōde-mǎn-yidyar.
5. Nèige-rén shwōde bǐ-ni mǎn-yidyar.
6. Nèige-rén yě-shwōde bǐ-ni mǎn-yidyar.
7. Nèige-rén shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà yě-shwōde bǐ-ni mǎn-yidyar.
8. Nèige-Yīnggwo-rén shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà yě-shwōde bǐ-ni mǎn-yidyar.
9. Nèige-Yīnggwo-rén shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà yě-shwōde bǐ-ni mǎn-yidyar-ma?

NOTES

1. a. English adverbs of manner such as 'slowly,' 'quickly,' 'correctly' are expressed by verbs in Chinese. Thus, 'He walks slowly' is *Tā-dzōude-mǎn* '[The manner] in which he walks is slow.' Here the English adverb 'slowly' is expressed by the Chinese verb *mǎn* 'is slow.' The subject of this verb is the phrase *Tā-dzōude* which has the form of a relative clause ending in the subordinatory particle *de*.

It will help to understand this construction if we imagine the phrase *Tā-dzōude* to be subordinated to the noun *yàngdz* 'manner,' as if the whole sentence were *Tā-dzōude-[yàngdz]-màn* '[The manner] in which he walks is slow.' Other examples of this construction: *Tā-chr̄de-kwài* 'He eats fast,' *Ni-shwōde-hāu* 'You speak well,' *Tāmen-pāude-kwài* 'They run rapidly.'

- b. When adverbs are used in sentences like *Tāmen-chr̄de-kwài* 'They eat fast,' they are placed before the first or the last verb, according to what they modify: *Tāmen-dōu-chr̄de-kwài* 'They all eat fast,' *Tāmen-chr̄de-hěn-kwài* 'They eat very fast,' *Tāmen-dōu-chr̄de-hěn-kwài* 'They all eat very fast.' Instead of using *hěn* before the stative verb, as in *hěn-kwài* 'very fast,' one often says *-de hěn* after the verb. This is a somewhat more emphatic way of saying 'very': *Tā-chr̄de-kwàide-hěn* 'He eats very fast.'
 - c. In a sentence like *Tā-chr̄de-kwài* 'He eats fast' the object is never placed between the verb and the particle *de*. The most common way of saying 'He eats Chinese food very fast' is to put the object in front: *Jūnggwo-fàn tā-chr̄de-hěn-kwài* 'Chinese food he eats very fast, He eats Chinese food very fast.' Another way is first to say the verb *ch̄r* 'eat' with the object *Jūnggwo-fàn* 'Chinese food' and then repeat the verb *ch̄r* with the particle *de* after it: *Tā-ch̄r-Jūnggwo-fàn chr̄de-hěn-kwài* 'He eats Chinese food eats very fast, He eats Chinese food very fast.' Other examples of these forms: *Jūnggwo-hwà tā-shwōde hěn-hāu*, *Tā-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà shwōde-hěn-hāu* 'He speaks Chinese very well.'
 - d. Sentences like *Tā-chr̄de-kwài* 'He eats fast' are made into questions either by adding *ma* or by using the positive and negative forms of the stative verb: *Tā-chr̄de-kwài-ma?* *Tā-chr̄de-kwài-bukwài?* 'Does he eat fast?'
 - e. In some situations the stative verbs which express the way in which an action is done show a comparison: *Nimen-lyǎngge-rén 'shéi-chr̄de-kwài?* 'Which of you two eats faster?' The comparison is made clearer by adding *dyar*, *yidyar*, *syé*, or *-de dwō* to the verb or by placing the adverbs *gèng* or *hái* 'still' before the verb: *Tā-chr̄de-kwài-yidyar* 'He eats a little faster,' *Tā-chr̄de-kwàide-dwō* 'He eats much faster,' *Tā-chr̄de-gèng-kwài* 'He eats still faster.'
 - f. The second thing is a comparison, such as 'you' in 'He eats faster than you,' is presented as the object of the coverb *bǐ* 'compared to.' *Bǐ* and its object sometimes follow the subject but most often come after the particle *de*: *Tā-bǐ-ni chr̄de-kwài* 'He compared to you eats faster, He eats faster than you,' *Tā-chr̄de bǐ-ni kwài* 'He eats compared to you faster, He eats faster than you,' *Tā-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà shwōde-bǐ-wo hāude-dwō* 'He speaks Chinese much better than I do.'
 - g. The particle *de* is sometimes omitted from the type of sentences illustrated in the previous paragraphs. It is omitted most often from sentences which end in *yidyar* and express commands or answers to requests: *Dzōu-màn-yidyar* 'Walk more slowly,' *Hāu. Wō-dzōu-màn-yidyar* 'All right, I'll walk more slowly.' The order of these sentences is often reversed, so that *Dzōu-màn-yidyar* changes to *Màn-yidyar-dzōu* 'Walk more slowly.'
2. The verb *yùng* 'to use' is used as a coverb whose object shows the means by which the action of the main verb is done. In this use it is generally translated as 'with': *Tā-yùng-kwàidz ch̄r-fàn* 'He eats with chopsticks.'

3. The grammatical particle *jú* is added to stative verbs; it means 'tremendously,' 'awfully,' 'terrifically,' etc.: *Jīnyānde-fàn hǎujú* 'Today's food is awfully good,' *Nèige-chìchē guàijú* 'That car is tremendously expensive.'
4. In asking which of two things, A and B, is better Chinese says *Shr A hǎu, shr B hǎu?* 'Is it A that's better or is it B that's better? Is A or B better?' Another form used is *(Shr) A hǎu, háishr B hǎu* 'Is it A that's better or still is it B that's better? Is A or B better?' Other stative verbs are used in place of *hǎu*, according to the question: *Shr-jèige-hǎu, shr-nèige-hǎu?* 'Is this or that better?', *Shr-nǐ-gāu, háishr-tā-gāu?* 'Are you or he taller?' To answer these questions simply select one of the phrases after *shr* or *háishr*: *Jèige-hǎu* 'This one's better,' *Tā-gāu* 'He's taller.'
5. The grammatical particle *ne* is used to form questions with a part of a sentence when the rest is clear from the context. Thus, if Mr. and Mrs. Wáng are both invited to dinner but only Mr. Wáng shows up, the host may ask: *Wáng-Tàitai-ne?* 'What about Mrs. Wáng? And Mrs. Wáng?' Similarly: *Wáng-Syānsheng yòng-kwàidz chī-Jūngwo-fàn* 'Mr. Wáng eats Chinese food with chopsticks,' *Chī-Měigwo-fàn-ne?* 'And with what does he eat American food?'
6. The phrase *yikwār* is made up of *yī* 'one' plus *kwār*; the latter is the Peking form of *kwài* 'lump.' *Yikwār* is often used before a verb as an adverb meaning 'together': *Wōmen yikwār-chī, 'hǎu-buhǎu?* 'Let's eat together, all right?'
7. The verb *yǐwéi* 'to consider' is used especially often in situations involving a mistaken opinion: *Wǒ-yǐwéi tā-shr-hǎu-rén, kěshr syāndzài wǒ-jǐdau tā-búshr-yǐge-hǎu-rén* 'I thought he was a good person, but now I know that he isn't a good person.'
8. The auxiliary verbs *gāi*, *yīnggāi*, and *yīngdāng* 'ought to, should' are used interchangeably. The positive forms are often translated as 'must' and the negative forms as 'must not': *Wǒ-gāi-dzǒude* 'I must go,' *Nǐ-buyīngdāng-nèmma-shwō* 'You shouldn't speak so, You mustn't talk thus.'
9. The stative verb *píngcháng* 'ordinary, common' is often used as a sentence modifier meaning 'ordinarily': *Wǒ-píngcháng buchī-Jūngwo-fàn* 'I don't ordinarily eat Chinese food.'
10. The time expression *hòulái* 'afterward' is used only for a past time: *Dzówotyandzǎushang wǒ-mǎile-yǐběn-shū. Hòulái wǒ-yòu-mǎile-lyǎngběn* 'Yesterday morning I bought a book. Afterwards I bought two more.' *Yǐhòu* is used for 'afterward' when the time is in the future: *Tā-yǐhòu-dzài-lái* 'Afterward he will come again.'

LESSON 30

DIRECTIVE VERBS

Conversation: Wáng tells Martin about his friends

- | | |
|---|--|
| M: Wōmen-syāndzài-dzǒude shr-
'shémma-lù? Jyàu-'shémma-
míngdz? | What is the street we're walking on now?
What is it called? |
|---|--|

- W: Jèi-shr-Jūngshān-Lù. Shr-chéngli-dzwèi-dàde. This is Sun Yat-sen Road. It's the biggest in the city.
- M: Jèige-lùshangde-chìchē-yángchē hēn-dwō. There are lots of cars and rickshas on this street.
- W: Dwèile. Yàu-syāusīn-dyar. That's right. You have to be a bit more careful.
- M: Wōmen-hwéi-jyā yě-děi-dzōu-jèige-lù-ma? When we return home do we also have to take this road?
- W: Yě-děi-dzōu-jèige-lù. Wàng-nán-dzōu sān-szli-lù jyòu-dàu-nǐ-jyā-le. We also have to take this road. If you go south for three or four *li* you'll arrive home.
- M: Fāngwǎr hái-yōu-dwō-ywǎn? How much farther is the restaurant?
- W: Buywǎnle. Kwài-dàule. Not far. We'll arrive soon.
- M: Fāngwǎrde-jǎnggwèide nǐ-shr-'dzēm̄ma-rènshrde? How did you get to know the manager of the restaurant?
- W: Wōmen-shr-túngsyāng. We're fellow-townsmen.
- M: Tā-yě-shr-Běipíng-rén-ma? Is he also a native of Peiping?
- W: Tā-jyā běnlái dzài-Běipíng. Hòulái bàndàu-Hénán-chyùle. Gwòle-syēnyán jyòu-bànhwéi-Héběi-láile. Tā-yíge-rén shēngdzài-Hénán. Tā-sānge-dìdì dǒu-shēngdzài-Běipíng. His home was originally in Peiping. Later they moved to Honan. After a few years they moved back to Hopei. He alone was born in Honan. His three younger brothers were all born in Peiping.
- M: Tā-sìng-shém̄ma? What is his name?
- W: Sìng-Bái. Wōmen-jyàu-tā-Lǎu-Bái. He is surnamed Bái. We call him Old Bái.
- M: Nǐ-yě-rènshr tā-sānge-dìdì-ma? Do you also know his three younger brothers?
- W: Dǒu-rènshr. Lǎu-Sz shr-wō-hēn-hǎude-péngyou. Wōmen-shr-túngshf-jìn-dàsywéde. I know them all. Old Fourth is a very good friend of mine. We entered college at the same time.
- M: Nǐ-dzài-shém̄ma-dàsywé nyàn-shū? At what college did you study?
- W: Dzài-Běidà. Nǐ-túngshwōgwō nèige-dàsywé-méiyóu? At National Peking University. Have you heard of that university?
- M: Túngshwōgwō. Běidà dzài-Měigwo hēn-yōu-míng. Yes. National Peking University is very well known in America.
- W: Lǎu-Sz gēn-wō túngshf-chū-gwóde. Old Fourth and I left the country at the same time.
- M: Tā-yě-dàu-Měigwo-chyùle-ma? Did he also go to America?
- W: Chyùle. Dàule-Měigwo wōmen-shr-yikwàr-jìn-dàsywéde. Tāde-Yīngwén bǐ-wóde hǎude-dwō. Syàndzài wóde-Yīngwén chàbudwō-dōu-wàngle. Yes. After arriving in America we entered the university together. His English was much better than mine. Now I've forgotten almost all my English.
- M: Lǎu-Bái hwèi-buhwèi-shwō-Yīngwén? Can Old Bái speak English?

- W: Yidyār-yě-buhwèi. Tā-méi-sywé-gwo-Yingwén, yě-méi-jingwo-dàsywé. He can't at all. He has never studied English and has never been to college.
- M: Tā-chyùgwo-'Mèigwo-méiyóu? Has he ever been to America?
- W: Méiyóu. Tā-buyàu-chū-gwó yīnwei tā-busfhwan-dzwò-chwán. Yě-busfhwan-dzwò-chìchē. No. He doesn't want to go out of the country as he does not like to travel by boat. He also doesn't like to travel by car.
- M: Tā-wèi-shémma busfhwan-dzwò-chìchē? Why doesn't he like to travel by car?
- W: Bujrdàu. Yǒu-yityān wǒmen-dàu-Sī-Shān-chyu. Chìchē-kāidàu-chéng-wài Lǎu-Bái jyòu-syà-chē pǎuhwéi-jyā-chyùle. I don't know. One day we were going to the Western Hills. When we had driven outside the city Old Bái got down from the car and hastened back home.
- M: Yàushr tā-budzwò-chìchē bunéng-dzòu-chyù-ma? If he can't go by car, can't he go on foot?
- W: Bunéng. Sī-Shān lí-chéng tài-ywǎn. No. The Western Hills are too far from the city.
- M: Lí-chéng dwō-ywǎn? How far are they from the city?
- W: Chàbudwō-sānshfl-lù. Almost 30 *li*.
- M: Sānshfl-lù hái-dzòubulyǎu-ma? Can't he walk 30 *li*?
- W: Dzòubulyǎu. Yǒude-shfhou tā-dzwò-yángchē-chyu. Dàule-shān-syàtou jyòu-syà-chē. Tsúng-shān-shang-syàlai dzài-dzwò-yángchē hwēi-chéngli-chyu. No. Sometimes he goes by ricksha. On reaching the foot of the hills he gets down from the ricksha. After he comes down from the hills he again gets on the ricksha and returns to the city.
- M: Syǎngbudàu yángchē néng-dzòu némma-ywǎnde-lù. I didn't know that it was possible for a ricksha to go so far.
- W: Ní-chyùgwo-Sī-Shān-ma? Have you ever been to the Western Hills?
- M: Wǒ-méi-chyùgwo. Nèige-dífang dzěmmayàng? I've never been there. What is that place like?
- W: Sī-Shān hǎukànjlé. Ní-gāi-chyù-'kànkàn. Shān buhěn-gāu, kěshr-hǎukànde-dífang hěn-dwō. The Western Hills are very beautiful. You ought to go see them. The hills aren't very high, but there are many pretty places.
- M: Shān-lù nándzòu-ba. The hill roads must be hard to travel.
- W: Buhěn-nándzòu. Kěshr shānli-dzòu-lù dēi-'chángcháng shàng-shān syà-shān. Wǒmen-syà-lfbàityān-yikwàrchyù-'kànyikàn, hǎu-ma? They're not very hard to travel. But one must often go uphill and downhill when one walks in the hills. Let's go take a look together next Sunday, shall we?
- M: Chřwánle-fàn dzài-shwō-ba. Let's talk about it some more after dinner.
- W: Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎr yǐjing-dàule. We've arrived at the Chinese-American Restaurant.
- M: Hǎujlé. Fine.
- W: Wǒmen-jìnchyu-ba. Let's go in.

Vocabulary

1. shàng	TV: ascend	15. dàsywé	N: college, university (<i>dà</i> 'big' plus <i>sywé</i> 'study')
2. syà	TV: descend	16. dìdi	N: younger brother
3. jìn	TV: enter	17. yángchē	N: ricksha (<i>yáng</i> 'ocean, foreign' plus <i>chē</i> 'vehicle')
4. chū	TV: go out (of)	18. hé	N: river
5. gwò	TV: cross, pass	19. Hénán	PW: Honan (Province) (<i>hé</i> 'river' plus <i>nán</i> 'south')
6. hwéi	TV: return (to)	20. Héběi	PW: Hopei (Province) (<i>hé</i> 'river' plus <i>běi</i> 'north')
7. bān	TV: move	21. Jūngshān	PH: Sun Yat-sen Ave- nue (see note 5)
8. sīng	EV: be surnamed	Lù	
9. shēng	IV: be born	22. Běidà	PH: National Peking University (see note 7)
10. bái	SV: be white, <i>surname</i>		
11. syǎusīn	SV: be careful (<i>syǎu</i> 'small' plus <i>sīn</i> 'heart')		
12. túngshí	TE: at the same time (<i>túng</i> 'same' plus <i>shí</i> 'time')		
13. túngsywé	N: schoolmate (<i>túng</i> 'same' plus <i>sywé</i> 'study')		
14. túngsyāng	N: fellow townsman (<i>túng</i> 'same' plus <i>syāng</i> 'district')		

Substitution Tables

shàng -lai	pǎu- shàng -lai	pǎu -dàu	fàngwǎr	lai
syà -chyu	dzǒu- syà -chyu	dzǒu	jyāli	chyu
jìn	jìn	bān	shānshang	
chū	chū	hwéi	wàitou	
gwò	gwò		Běipíng	
hwéi	hwéi		pùdzli	

Drill I. Directive Verbs in Phrases

1. shàng chwán	board ship	4. chū chéng	leave the city
2. syà chwán	disembark	5. gwò hé	cross the river
3. jìn chéng	enter the city	6. hwéi gwó	return to one's country
—————			
7. shànglai	come up	13. chūlai	come out
8. shàngchyu	go up	14. chūchyu	go out
9. syàlai	come down	15. gwòlai	cross over (here)
10. syàchyu	go down	16. gwòchyu	cross over (there)
11. jìnlai	come in	17. hwéilai	come back
12. jìnchyu	go in	18. hwéichyu	go back

Drill I (cont.)

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 19. pǎushànglai | run up (here) | 25. pǎuchūlai | run out (here) |
| 20. pǎushàngchyu | run up (there) | 26. pǎuchūchyu | run out (there) |
| 21. pǎusyàlai | run down (here) | 27. pǎugwòlai | run over (here) |
| 22. pǎusyàchyu | run down (there) | 28. pǎugwòchyu | run over (there) |
| 23. pǎujìnlai | run in (here) | 29. pǎuhwéilai | run back (here) |
| 24. pǎujìnychyu | run in (there) | 30. pǎuhwéichyu | run back (there) |

-
- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 31. pǎudàu-fàngwǎr-lai | run to the restaurant (here) |
| 32. pǎudàu-fàngwǎr-chyu | run to the restaurant (there) |
| 33. bāndàu-Běipíng-lai | move to Peiping (here) |
| 34. bāndàu-Běipíng-chyu | move to Peiping (there) |
| 35. hwéidàu-shānshang-lai | come back to the top of the mountain |
| 36. hwéidàu-shānshang-chyu | go back to the top of the mountain |

Drill II. Directive Verbs in Sentences

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Shàng-shān hěn-nán. | Ascending mountains is difficult. |
| 2. Syà-chē yàu-syáusín. | One must be careful in getting down from the car. |
| 3. Tā-shr-wàigwo-rén, swóyi tā-bunéng-jìn-chéng. | He's a foreigner, so he can't enter the city. |
| 4. Tā-shr-bushr-míngnyan chū-gwó? | Is it next year that he's leaving the country? |
| 5. Wōmen-děi-dzwò-chwán gwò-hé. | We must cross the river by boat. |
| 6. Wō-měityān dzwò-yángchē hwéi-jyā. | I return home every day by ricksha. |
| 7. Wàitoude-rén dōu-kéyi-jìnlai. | The people outside may all come in. |
| 8. Tā-bingle, swóyi bunéng-chūchyu. | He's sick, so he can't go out. |
| 9. Nǐ-kàn. Yǒu-hěn-dwō-rén shàng-shān. | Look. There are lots of people climbing the mountain. |
| 10. Shānshangde-yóujidwèi měi-lyǎng-sāntyān-syàlai. | The guerrillas on top of the mountain come down every second or third day. |
| 11. Wǒ-syǎng-gwòchyu kàn-nèibyarde-chíngsing. | I want to cross over and look into conditions there. |
| 12. Tā-míngnyan yésyǔ hwéi-Jūngwo-lai. | Perhaps he will come back to China next year. |
| 13. Nèige-shān tài-gāu. Wǒ-shàng-buchyù. | That mountain is too high. I can't climb it. |
| 14. Tāmen-yí-kànnyan-fēiji jyòu-dōu-pǎusyà-'shān-chyùle. | As soon as they saw the planes they all ran down the mountain. |
| 15. Tāmen-dōu-pǎuchūlai kàn-wōmen-dzài-wàitou dzwò-shémma. | They all ran out to see what we were doing outside. |
| 16. Buyàu-pǎujìnychyu. Dzòujìnychyu hǎu-yidyǎr. | Don't run in. It's better to walk in. |

Drill II (cont.)

17. Lùshangde-rén dōu-pǎugwòlai kàn-yǒu-'shémma-shì. Everyone on the street ran over to see what was up [what matter there was].
18. Tā-búdzai-jèr. Tā-pǎuhwéi-'jyā-chyùle. He isn't here. He ran back home.
19. Tā-tsúng-jyāli pǎudàu-dàsywé-chyùle. He ran from the house to the university.
20. Tā-sāndyǎn-jūng hwéidàu-'jyāli-láile. He returned home at 3 o'clock.

Drill III. Questions and Answers

1. Wōmen-děi-shémma-shfhou shàng-chwán? When must we board the ship?
2. Děi-chídyǎn-sānkè shàng-chwán. We must board the ship at 7.45.
3. Shéi-jìnchyu kànkàn-jyāli yǒu-méi-yǒu-rén? Who'll go in to see if there is anyone in the house?
4. Méi-rén yàu-jìnchyu. No one wants to go in.
5. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng shémma-shfhou-hwéi-jyā-lai? When will Mr. Martin come back home?
6. Wǒ-bujrdàu tā-shémma-shfhou hwéi-lai. I don't know when he'll come back.
7. Tsúng-nèige-pùdz-pǎuchūlaide-rén shr-shéi? Who is the man running out of that store?
8. Tsúng-nèige-pùdz-pǎuchūlaide-rén shr-'Chyán-Jǎnggwèide. The man running out of that store is Manager Chyán.
9. Wǒde-syǎu-jwōdz dzài-nǎr? Where's my small table?
10. Bāndàu-pùdz-'wàitou-chyùle. I moved it to the outside of the store.
11. Nèige-rén sīng-shémma? What is that man surnamed?
12. Nèige-rén sīng-Wáng. That man's name is Wáng.
13. Nǐ-dìdi yě-shr-Hénán-shēngde-ma? Was your younger brother also born in Honan?
14. Búshr. Tā-shēngdzài-Héběi. No. He was born in Hopei.
15. 'Bái-Syānsheng shr-bushr-nǐde-túng-sywé? Is Mr. Bái your schoolmate?
16. Shr-túngsyāng, búshr-túngsywé. He's my fellow townsman, not my schoolmate.
17. Yóujidwèi dzài-nǎr, nǐ-jrdau-ma? Where are the guerrillas, do you know?
18. Yóujidwèi dōu-pǎuhwéi-'shānli-chyùle. The guerrillas have all fled back into the mountains.
19. Nǐ-dàu-wǒmen-dàsywé-chyu 'yàu-buyàu dzwò-yángchē? In going to our university would you like to go by ricksha?
20. Buyàu dzwò-yángchē. Dzwò-chìchē hǎu-yidyǎr. I don't want to go by ricksha. It's better to go by car.

Drill IV. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|---|
| *1. Yàushr méiyǒu-chwán dzemma-néng gwò-hé? | If there isn't a boat how is it possible to cross the river? |
| *2. Shéi-dzài-wàitou? Chíng-jìnlai. | Who's outside? Please come in. |
| *3. Pǎushànglaide-rén dōu-shr-Jūnggwo-rén. | The men running up [toward us] are all Chinese. |
| *4. Syàndzài tā-búdzai-jèr-jù. Shàng-ywè tā-bāndàu-Běi'píng-chyùle. | He doesn't live here now. Last month he moved to Peiping. |
| *5. Wōmen-lyǎngge-rén dōu-shēngdzài-Hángjiou, swóyi wōmen-shr-túng-syāng. | Both of us were born in Hangchow, so we're fellow-townsmen. |
| *6. Wǒ-shwǒ-Jūnggwo-hwà méiyǒu-'Bái-Syānsheng nèmama-hǎu. | I don't speak Chinese as well as Mr. Bái. |
| *7. Yàushr byéde-rén buhwéi-jyā, wǒ-yíge-rén jyòu-hwéichyule. | If the others aren't returning home, then I'm going back by myself. |
| 8. Dzài-Jūnggwo sǐng-Wángde dwǒjǐle. | In China there are a great many people called Wáng. |
| 9. Shr-Héběi dà háishr-Hénán-dà? | Is Hopei or Honan larger? |
| 10. Wōmen-shr-túngshf-jìn-dàsywéde, swóyi shr-túngsywé. | We entered the university at the same time, so we're schoolmates. |
| 11. Āiyā! Yíjīng-szdyǎn-le. Wōmen-dzǒu-ba! | My! It's already four o'clock. Let's go! |
| 12. Syǎusin-a. Jintyan lùshang yǒu-hěndwō-chìchē gēn-yángchē. | Be careful. There are a lot of cars and rickshas on the street today. |
| 13. Wǒ-dìdi syàndzài dzài-Běidà nyànshū. | My younger brother is now studying at National Peking University. |
| 14. Syà-shānde-shfhou tāmen-dōu-pǎude-hěnkwài, kěshr shàng-shān tāmen-dzǒude-hěn-màn. | When descending the mountain they all ran very fast, but when ascending the mountain they walked very slowly. |
| 15. Tā-méi-sywé-Yīngwén-yíchyán yíjyù-Yīnggwò-hwa yě-buhwèi-shwǒ. | Before he studied English he couldn't speak even one sentence of English. |

Drill V. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Wǒ-yíjīng-dzài-jèr jùle-lyǎngnyán-le. Syàndzài wǒ-yàu-hwéi-gwó. | 8. Dàgūngbàude-gūngshrfáng bāndàu-'nǎr-chyùle? |
| 2. Nyóuywē-Tàiwushrbàude-jijě dōu-hwéidàu-'Měigwo-chyùle. | 9. Jintyan 'Mǎ-Syānsheng búdzai-jyā. Tā-chūchyule. |
| 3. Hénán lí-Héběi hěn-jin. | 10. Shfhou-dàule. Wōmen-dzǒu-ba. |
| 4. Yángchē méiyǒu-chìchē nèmama-kwài. | 11. Wǒ-yíge-rén bunéng-bān-jèige-dūngsi. |
| 5. Wǒ-bujrdàu nèige-dàsywé jyàu-'shémama-míngdz. | 12. Wǒ-méi-kàn-tā-yíchyán yíwéi tā-shr-Rbēn-rén. |
| 6. Méiyǒu-rén néng-shàng-nèmama-gāude-shān. | 13. Lǎu-Sz shr-Lǎu-Sānde-dìdi. |
| 7. Ní-hwéidàu-Měigwo-yíhòu syǎng-dzwò-'shémama-shr? | 14. Yàushr-méiyǒu-chwán yóujidwèi 'dzemma-néng-gwò-hé? |

Drill V (cont.)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 15. Chǐng-wèn, dàu-Jūngshān-Lù
'dzemma-dzou? | 18. Wōmen-jèrde-rén dōu-shr-túngsyāng. |
| 16. Wōmen-shr-túngshí tsúng-nánbyar
bāndàu-jèige-'difang-láide. | 19. Tā-dzōude-kwài dzōude-màn dōu-
buyàujǐn. |
| 17. Wō-busihwan chū-gwó yīnwei busí-
hwan-líkāi-jyā. | 20. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng yùng-kwàidz méiyōu-
'Wáng-Syānsheng yùngde-hǎu. |

NOTES

1. a. Directive verbs such as 'ascend' and 'enter' are followed by the verbs *lái* 'come' or *chyù* 'go' to show their direction toward or away from the speaker. These two verbs are attached directly to a preceding verb or follow an intervening object if there is one: *Tā-shàng-shān* 'He is ascending the mountain,' *Tā-shànglái* 'He is coming up,' *Tā-shàng-shān-lái* 'He is coming up the mountain.'
 - b. Directive verbs are attached to other verbs, such as 'run' and 'walk,' to show the direction of their action, much as we say in English 'run up,' 'run in,' etc. In addition the direction toward or away from the speaker is shown by using *lái* or *chyù* at the end: *pǎushàng* 'run up,' *Tā-pǎushànglái* 'He is running up [toward the speaker],' *Tā-pǎushàng-shān-lái* 'He is running up the mountain [toward the speaker],' *Tā-pǎushàng-shān-chyu* 'He is running up the mountain [away from the speaker].'
 - c. The verb *dàu* 'to' is often attached to other verbs to introduce the destination of the action, much as we say in English 'run to,' 'walk to,' 'take to,' etc. *Lái* or *chyù* generally follow the object of *dàu*: *Tā-pǎudàu-fàngwǎr-chyu* 'He is running to the restaurant [away from the speaker],' *Tā-pǎudàu-shānshang-lái* 'He is running to the top of the mountain [toward the speaker].' The last sentence is almost the same in meaning as *Tā-pǎushàng-shān-lái* 'He is running up the mountain [toward the speaker].' The chief difference is that the former emphasizes the destination and the latter the action. While both forms are theoretically possible for all the directive verbs, in practice one or the other is preferred in certain situations. Thus *Tā-pǎudàu-pùdzli-chyu* is preferred over *Tā-pǎujìn-pùdz-chyu* for 'He is running into the store.'
2. From previous lessons we know that the translation for 'They speak Chinese well' is *Tāmen-shwō Jūnggwo-hwà shwōde-hǎu*, which is more literally 'They speak Chinese speak well.' From this sentence we can proceed to 'They don't speak Chinese as well as you,' which is *Tāmen-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà méiyōu-nǐ-shwōde-hǎu*, literally 'They speak Chinese do not have you speak well.' Often the word *shwōde* is omitted: *Tāmen-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà méiyōu-nǐ-hǎu*, literally 'They speak Chinese do not have you well.' Occasionally *nèmma* 'so' is used before the final verb: *Tāmen-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà méiyōu-nǐ-nèmma-hǎu*, literally 'They speak Chinese do not have you so well.' Other examples of this type of sentence are: *Wō-kāi-chè méiyōu-tā-kāide-kwài* 'I don't drive as fast as he does,' *Nǐ-yùng-kwàidz méiyōu-Mǎ-Syānsheng-hǎu* 'You don't use chopsticks as well as Mr. Martin.'
 3. The phrase *yíge-ren* 'one person' following a noun or pronoun has the meaning 'alone, by oneself': *Tā-yíge-rén-chyùle* 'He went alone.'

4. Chinese often uses a negative verb where English uses a positive verb with the word 'before': *tā-méi-shēng-yǐchǎn* 'before he was born.' This phrase implies something like 'Previously, when he was not yet born . . .'
5. Surnames precede the personal name, nickname, and other special designations. Prominent Chinese frequently have several given names which range from very personal ones to more or less formal designations. Thus the founder of the Chinese republic, best known abroad as Sun Yat-sen, also has the name Sun Chung-shan (in our writing, Swēn Jūngshān), which he adopted when he was a refugee in Japan. Chinese are sometimes referred to respectfully by their special given names. Many Chinese cities have a *Jūngshān Lù* 'Sun Yat-sen Road.'
6. Chinese friends often refer to each other by using the words *lǎu* 'old' and *syǎu* 'young,' literally 'small,' before the surname: *Lǎu-Wáng* 'Old Wang' *Syǎu-Wáng* 'Young Wang.' These words are also placed before a number referring to the order in which the sons were born in a family: *Lǎu-Sān* 'Old Third.'
7. *Běijīng-Dàxué* '[National] Peking University,' the name of which is frequently abbreviated to *Běidà*, is one of China's foremost universities.

LESSON 31

QUESTION-WORDS AS INDEFINITES

Conversation: Martin Meets Old Bái

- | | |
|---|---|
| W: Lǎu-Bái, nǐ-hǎu-a? | Old Bái, how are you? |
| B: Hěn-hǎu, hěn-hǎu. Nín-ne? | Fine, fine. And you? |
| W: Yě-hǎu. | I'm fine too. |
| B: Hǎu-dwō-shfhou méi-kànjian-nín-le. | Haven't seen you for a good while. |
| W: Chàdubwō-lyǎngge-ywè-le. Lǎu-Bái, wǒ-jèr-yǒu-yíge-wàigwo-péng-you. Wǒ-gěi-nímen-'jyèshau-jyèshau. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, 'Bái-Syānsheng. | Almost two months. Old Bái, I have a foreign friend here. I'd like to introduce you. Mr. Martin, Mr. Bái. |
| B: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng. | Mr. Martin. |
| M: 'Bái-Syānsheng. | Mr. Bái. |
| B: Ōu, 'Mǎ-Syānsheng hwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwà. | Oh, Mr. Martin can speak Chinese. |
| M: Hwèi-yidyǎr. | A little. |
| B: Nín-shwōde-hěn-hǎu. | You speak very well. |
| M: Wǒde-Jūnggwo-hwà buhǎu. Chǐng-byé-jyànsyàu. | My Chinese is no good. Please don't laugh. |
| B: Nín-yíding sywéle-hěn-dwō-shfhou-ba, yàuburán bunéng-shwōde-jèmma-hǎu. Dzài-'nǎr-sywéde? | You certainly must have studied for a long time, otherwise you couldn't speak so well. Where did you study? |

- M: Wǒ-syān-dzài-Měigwo sywéle-jǐge-ywè. Yòu-dzài-Jūnggwo sywéle-chàbudwō-yīnyán-le. I studied a few months in America. I also studied almost a year in China.
- B: Nín-shwōde-jēn-hǎu. You speak real well.
- M: Kèchi, kèchi. You flatter me.
- W: Lǎu-Bái, Lǎu-Sz hǎu-ma? Hǎujǐge-lǐbài méi-kànjyan-ta-le. Old Bái, how is Old Fourth? I haven't seen him for several weeks.
- B: Nín-méi-tīngjyan-ma? Lyǎngge-lǐbài-yǐchyán tā-dàu-Hénán-chyùle. Haven't you heard? He went to Honan two weeks ago.
- W: Jēnde-na? Wǒ-méi-tīngshwō. Tā-chyù-dzwò-'shémma? Really? I hadn't heard. What did he go for?
- B: Tā-chyù-kàn-yǐge-yǒu-bìngde-péng-you. Gwò-jǐtyān Lǎu-Sz-jyòu-gāi-hwéilaile. He went to see a sick friend. Old Fourth should return in a few days.
- M: Wǒ-tīngshwō nǐde-dìdi dzài-Měigwo nyàngwo-shū. I hear your younger brother has studied in America.
- B: Dwèile. Tā-dzài-'Nyóuywē nyàngwo-shū. Nǐ-jǐrdau-nèige-dífang-ma? That's right. He studied in New York. Do you know that place?
- W: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng shr-tsúng-Nyóuywē-láide. Mr. Martin comes from New York.
- B: Lǎu-Sz-gàusunggwo-wo hěn-dwō-Nyóuywēde-chíngsing. Gwò-jǐnyán tā-syǎng dzài-hwéi-Měigwo-chyu nyàn-yì-lyǎngnyán-shū. Old Fourth has told me a lot about conditions in New York. After a few years he plans to return to America again and study one or two years.
- M: Tā-syǎng dzài-nèige-dàsywé nyàn-shū? At what university will he study?
- B: Tā-hái-bujrdau-ne. Tā-shwō swéi-byàn-nèige-Měigwo-dàsywé dōu-kéyi. Kěshr tā-sfhwān dzài-Nyóuywē-jù, swóyi dàgài dzài-nèr-jīn-dàsywé. . . . Dwèibuchǐ, nǐmen-lyǎngwèi chǐ-'fàn-le-méiyóu? Dzài-wǒ-jèr-chǐ, 'hǎu-buhǎu? He doesn't know yet. He says any American university will do. But he would like to live in New York, so most likely he'll enter a university there. . . . Pardon me, have you two eaten? Eat here at my place, all right?
- W: Lǎu-Bái, byé-kèchi. Háishr-wǒ-chǐng-ba. Old Bái, don't be polite. It's I that's doing the inviting.
- B: Bunéng, bunéng. Dzài-wǒ-jèr chǐ-fàn, yídìng-yàu-wǒ-chǐng. . . . Hwǒji, gěi-wǒmen-yùbei-yǎdzwòr. No, no. When you eat at my place, I'm certainly the one to do the inviting. . . . Waiter, prepare a booth for us.
- H: Syàndzai-méiyóu, kěshr mǎshang-yóu. There isn't one now, but there will be one in a moment.
- B: Nèmma wǒmen-syān-dzài-jèr 'dzwòdzwò-ba. Ná-yǐdz-lai. Then let's sit here first. Bring some chairs.
- H: Shǐ, shǐ. . . . Hǎule, nèige-yǎ-dzwòr méi-rén-le. Yes, yes. . . . All right, there isn't any one in that booth any more.
- B: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, 'Wáng-Syānsheng, chǐng. Mr. Martin, Mr. Wáng, please.

W: Ní-syān-jìn.	You enter first.
B: Nín-syān. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, chǐng-dzwò-shàngdzwòr.	You first. Mr. Martin, please sit in the seat of honor.
M: Ōu, bugǎn-dzwò-shàngdzwòr.	Oh, I don't dare sit in the seat of honor.
B: Byé-kèchi. Chǐng-dzwò. Wáng-Syānsheng, chǐng-dzwò-nèr.	Don't be polite. Please take the seat. Mr. Wáng, please sit there.
W: Ní-budzwò-ma?	Aren't you having a seat?
B: Hǎu. Wǒmen-dōu-dzwòsya-ba.	All right, let's all sit down.

Vocabulary

1. gàusung	TV: inform	12. hwǒji	N: waiter
2. yùbei	TV: prepare (<i>yù</i> 'before-hand' plus <i>bèi</i> 'get ready')	13. nín	PR: you (polite)
3. ná	TV: grasp, carry	14. wèi	M: individual
4. jyèshau	TV: introduce (<i>jyè</i> 'intermediary' plus <i>shàu</i> 'connect')	15. mǎshang	AD: right away (<i>mǎ</i> 'horse' plus <i>shàng</i> 'top, on')
5. jyànsyàu	IV: laugh (<i>jyàn</i> 'look at' plus <i>syàu</i> 'laugh')	16. yàuburán, burán	SM: otherwise (<i>yàu</i> for <i>yàushr</i> 'if' plus <i>bu</i> 'not' plus <i>rán</i> 'so')
6. gǎn	AV: dare	17. dàgài	SM: most likely, for the most part (<i>dà</i> 'big' plus <i>gài</i> 'outline')
7. kèchi	SV: be polite (<i>kè</i> 'guest' plus <i>chì</i> 'air')	18. swéibyàn	SM: as (you) please (<i>swéi</i> 'follow' plus <i>byàn</i> 'convenience')
8. dzwò, dzwòr	N: seat	19. dwèibuchǐ	PH: (I) beg (your) pardon (<i>dwèi</i> 'facetoward' plus <i>bu</i> 'can't' plus <i>chǐ</i> 'begin')
9. shàngdzwòr	N: seat of honor (<i>shàng</i> 'top' plus <i>dzwòr</i> 'seat')		
10. yǎdzwòr	N: booth, private dining room (<i>yǎ</i> 'elegant' plus <i>dzwòr</i> 'seat')		
11. yǐdz	N: chair		

Drill I. Question-Words as Indefinites

1. Syàndzài 'shémma-dūngsi dōu-hěng-gwèi.	At present everything is expensive.
2. Tā-syǎng 'shémma-dàsywé dōu-méiyōu-Běidà-hǎu.	He thinks no university is as good as National Peking University.
3. Jèr-yōu-jǐge-rén yàu-kàn-ni.	There are a few people here who want to see you.
4. Shémma-difangde-fàn dōu-méiyōu-Běipíngde-hǎu.	No place has as good food as Peiping.

Drill I (cont.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. Jèi-lyǎngge-jwōdz chàbudwō-yiyàng.
Něige-dōu-hǎu. | These two tables are almost the same.
Any which one will do. |
| 6. Jīntyán-bàushang méiyǒu-shémma-sīnwén. | There isn't any news in the newspaper today. |
| 7. Něige-yǎdzwòr dōu-yǒu-rén. | There are people in every booth. |
| 8. Syān-ná-jǐge-yǐdz-lai. | First bring a few chairs. |
| 9. Tā-shémma-shè dōu-gǎn-dzwò. | He dares to do anything. |
| 10. Gwò-jǐge-ywè tā-syǎng-hwéi-gwó. | After a few months he plans to return to his native country. |
| 11. Tā-shwō swéibyàn-něige-hwōji dōu-kéyi gěi-nǐ-ná-fàn-lai. | He says any waiter you please can bring the food for you. |
| 12. Shémma-Jūnggwo-fàn dōu-hǎuchī. | Any Chinese food is good to eat. |
| 13. Shéi-dōu-kéyi-lái. | Anyone may come. |
| 14. Jèi-jǐnyán tā-chyùle-hǎu-dwō-difang. | In these few years he's been to a good many places. |
| 15. Shéi-dōu-busīhwan yǒu-bìng. | No one likes to be sick. |
| 16. Byé-kèchi, wǒ-yě-méi-bāng-shémma-máng. | Don't be polite. I haven't helped you any. |
| 17. Nǐ-shémma-difang dōu-méi-chyùgwo-ma? | Haven't you been anywhere? |
| 18. Jèr-méiyǒu-dwōshau-rén. | There aren't many people here. |
| 19. Wǒ-syǎng něige-dōu-hǎu. | I think any one will do. |
| 20. Tā-bunéng-nyàn-dwōshau-shū. | He can't read much. |

Drill II. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nǐ-dào-nǎr-chyu? | Where are you going? |
| 2. Budào-nǎr-chyu. Wǒ-yào-chūchyu. | I'm not going anywhere in particular. I want to go out. |
| 3. Nǐ-yào-shémma? | What do you want? |
| 4. Buyào-shémma. | I don't want anything. |
| 5. Nǐ-kàn 'něige-lù-hǎudzǒu? | Which road do you think is better to travel on? |
| 6. Jèige-difang shémma-lù dōu-buhǎu-dzǒu. | In this place every road is bad to travel on. |
| 7. Nǐ-jyào-shéi? | Whom are you calling? |
| 8. Wǒ-'méi-jyào-shéi. | I didn't call anyone. |
| 9. Tā-yào-'dwōshau-chyán? | How much money does he want? |
| 10. Tā-buyào-dwōshau-chyán. Nǐ-gěi-tā-sānkwài-wū déle. | He doesn't want much money. Give him \$3.50 and that'll do. |
| 11. 'Nǎr-yǒu-hǎu-mǎlù? | Where is there a good road? |
| 12. Nǎr-yě-méiyǒu-hǎu-mǎlù. | There isn't a good road anywhere. |
| 13. Nǐmen-jǐwèi-syānsheng dōu-rènshr-ta-ma? | Do all you gentlemen know him? |

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 14. Burènshr. Chǐng-nǐ-gěi-wōmen-'yè-shau-jyèshau. | No. Please introduce us. |
| 15. Tā-'néng-bunéng gěi-wōmen-yùbeiyidyǎr-wàigwo-fàn? | Can he prepare a little foreign food for us? |
| 16. Dàgài-wàigwo-fàn tā-yě-hwèi-dzwò. | Most likely he can also cook foreign food. |
| 17. Nǐ-wèi-shémma hái-méi-dzǒu-ne? | Why haven't you left yet? |
| 18. Wǒ-mǎshang-jyòu-dzǒu. | I'm leaving right away. |
| 19. Nèige-dzwòr shr-shàngdzwòr? | Which seat is the seat of honor? |
| 20. Mǎ-Syānsheng-dzwòde-nèige-dzwòr shr-shàngdzwòr. | That seat on which Mr. Martin is sitting is the seat of honor. |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|--|---|
| *1. Wǒ-'méiyǒu-shémma. | I don't have anything. |
| *2. Tā-shémma-dǒu-budǔng. | He doesn't understand anything. |
| *3. Jèr-'méiyǒu-jǐge-rén. Wōmen-kéyidzài-jèr-dzwò. | There aren't many people here. We can sit here. |
| *4. Gwò-jǐnyán wǒ-syǎng hwéidào-Měigwo-chyu. | After a few years I plan to go back to America. |
| *5. Byé-kèchi! Swéibyàn-chf. | Don't be polite! Eat as you please. |
| *6. Wǒ-gěi-nǐmen-jyèshau. Jèiwei-shr-'Mǎ-Syānsheng, jèiwèi-shr-'Bái-Syānsheng. | I'll introduce you. This gentleman is Mr. Martin, this is Mr. Bái. |
| 7. Jyàu-hwǒji syān-ná-yíge-yǐdz-lai. | Tell the waiter to bring a chair first. |
| 8. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng tài-kèchi. Tā-bugǎndzwò-shàngdzwòr. | Mr. Martin is too polite. He doesn't dare sit in the seat of honor. |
| 9. Dwèibuchǐ, wǒ-wǎngle gěi-nín-yùbèinèige-yǎdzwò. | Pardon me, I forgot to prepare that booth for you. |
| 10. Wǒ-buhěn-hwèi yùng-kwàidz. Chǐng-byé-jyànsyàu. | I don't know how to use chopsticks very well. Please don't laugh. |
| 11. Jēnde. 'Bái-Syānsheng jǐntyan-gàusung-wo tā-dìdi-gāng-hwéilaile. | (It's) the truth. Mr. Bái told me today that his younger brother had just returned. |
| 12. Nǐ-gěi-tā-shfkwài-chyán-ba. Burán tā-bumài. | Give him \$10. Otherwise he won't sell. |
| 13. Nèige-fēiji dàgài-yǒu-èrshfge-dzwòr. | That plane most likely has twenty seats. |
| 14. Hwǒji-mǎshang-jyòu-lái. | The waiter is coming right away. |
| 15. Tā-hái-méi-dāudz-chādz-ne. | He still doesn't have a knife and fork. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Wōmen-děi-jyàu-yíge-dàifu lái-kàn-ta. Yàuburán tā-yídìng-hǎubulyǎu. | 3. Jūngwo-gēr wǒ-chàngde-buhěn-hǎu. Chǐng-nǐmen-byé-jyànsyàu. |
| 2. Tā-dzwótyan-gàusung-wo yíge-hǎufádz. | 4. Nín-swéibyàn-shémma-shfhou-lái. |

Drill IV (cont.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. Nèige-fàngwǎr dàgài-yǒu-yībǎi-dwōge-dzwòr. | 13. Wǒ-Jūnggwo-hwà shwōde-budà-hǎu. Chíng-nín byé-jyànsyàu. |
| 6. Chíng-nǐ bāng-wǒ-yidyǎr-máng. Burán jèige-shr̄ dzwòbuwán. | 14. Jèiwèi nǐ-hái-méi-gěi-wǒ-jyèshau-ne. |
| 7. Dwèibuchǐ, wǒ-yǐwéi hwǒji-yǐjing-gěi-nǐmen ná-yǐdz-láile. | 15. Nèige-yǎdzwòrli yíge-yǐdz dōu-méi-yǒu. |
| 8. Gwò-sān-sztyān wǒ-dèi-dzwò-fèiji dàu-Yīndu-chyu. | 16. Gwò-nèmma-dàde-hé wǒ-bugǎn dzwò-jèmma-syǎude-chwán. |
| 9. Tā-shwō tā-shr̄-nǐde-túngsyāng, kěshr̄-tā-méi-gàusung-wo sīng-shémma. | 17. Nǐ-syān-gěi-wǒmen yùbei-yidyǎr-hǎu-jyǒu. Yǐhòu wǒmen-'kànkàn chř-shémma-tsài. |
| 10. Nèige-lù hěn-nándzǒu, swóyi kǎi-chēde bugǎn-kǎi-chē. | 18. Nǐ-mǎshang-bāngju-ta yùbei-nèige-yǎdzwòr. |
| 11. Dwèibuchǐ, wǒ-bunéng-gàusung-ni nèige-shr̄ching. | 19. Dzwò-yángchē yíge-jūngtóu-yě-dàubulyǎu. Dzwò-chíchē kwàide-dwō. |
| 12. Wǒ-syǎng syān-hē-yidyǎr-jyǒu, yǐhòu dzài-chř-yidyǎr-Běipíng-fàn. | 20. Syān-wàng-běi-dzǒu. Dàule-Jūngshān-Lù jyǒu-wàng-sī-dzǒu-èr-sānlǐ-lù. |

NOTES

1. a. Question-words like *shémma* 'what?' and *nǎr* 'where?' are not always used to form questions. Often they are used as indefinites similar to the English words 'anyone,' 'everything,' 'nowhere,' 'none,' 'somewhere,' 'nobody,' 'everywhere,' etc.
- b. Question-words become indefinites when used before a verb which is preceded by the adverb *dōu* 'all': *Wǒ-shémma-dōu-buyàu* 'I don't want anything, I want nothing.'
- c. Question-words become indefinites when they follow a negative verb as object: *Wǒ-'búyàu-shémma* 'I don't want anything,' *Wǒ-'méiyǒu-dwōshau-chyán* 'I don't have much money.' In these cases the stress generally shifts from the object of the verb to the verb itself.
- d. Question-words often become indefinites when some other word in the sentence receives the chief stress: *Tā-'yǒu-jǐbēn-shū* 'He has a few books.' Note that by shifting the stress from *yǒu* to *jǐ* the sentence changes to *Tā-yǒu-'jǐbēn-shū?* 'How many books does he have?'
2. The verb *gwò* 'to pass' followed by an expression of extent of time expresses the idea 'after such-and-such period of time': *Gwò-sānnián wǒ-syǎng-hwéi-Měigwo* 'After three years I plan to return to America.'
3. The measure *wèi* is used as a more polite substitute for *ge* in referring to people: *jèiwèi-syānsheng* 'this gentleman.'
4. The expression *jēnde*, 'that which is true, a true one,' is used as an exclamation: *Jēnde!* 'It's the truth! It's so! Really!' *Jēnde-ma?* 'Is it so? Really?'
5. The pronoun *nín* is a polite Pekingese equivalent for *nǐ* 'you.'

LESSON 32

THE COVERB *bǎ*

Conversation: Mr. Martin learns a guessing game

- B: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nín-'shémma-shí-hou dāude-Jūnggwo?
Mr. Martin, when did you arrive in China?
- M: Wǒ-chyùnyan-chíywe-dāude.
I arrived in July of last year.
- B: Nèmma nín-dzài-Jūnggwo chàbudwō-yínyán-le-ba.
Then you've been in China almost a year.
- M: Hái-budào-yínyán-ne. Jǐ-yǒu-shíge-ywè.
It isn't a year yet. It's only ten months.
- B: Nín-dzèmma-láide? Shr-dzwò-fēiji-ma?
How did you come? Did you come by plane?
- M: Búshr. Dzwò-fēiji yǒu-yidyār-tàigwèi. Wǒ-dzwò-'chwán-láide.
No. Traveling by plane is a little too expensive. I came by boat.
- B: Nín-yíding-dzǒule-hǎujǐge-lǐbài-ba.
You certainly must have traveled a good many weeks.
- M: Méiyǒu-jǐge-lǐbài. Wǒ-dzwòde-chwán hěn-kwài, èrshítyān jyòudàule.
Not many weeks. The boat I traveled on was very fast, arriving in twenty days.
- B: Wǒ-tǐngshwō yǒude-chwán yàudzǒu-sz-wūge-dwō-lǐbài.
I hear some boats take more than four or five weeks.
- M: Dwèile. Yǒude-chwán hěn-màn.
That's right. Some boats are very slow.
- B: Nín-dzwòde shr-Měigwo-chwán-ma?
Was the one you traveled on an American boat?
- M: Shì.
Yes.
- B: Wǒ-dìdi-gàusung-wo Měigwo-chwán bǐ-byéde dōu-kwài. Nín-syǎng dzài-Jūnggwo dāi-dwòshau-shíhou?
My younger brother tells me that American boats are faster than all others. How long do you plan to stay in China?
- M: Wǒ-hái-bujrdào. Yǒu-bushǎude-dìfang wǒ-hái-méi-chyù-ne, swóyi wǒ-hái-děi-dwō-dāi-jǐnyán.
I don't know yet. There are a good many places I haven't been to yet, so I have to stay a few years more.
- W: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng shr-yíwèi-sīnwén-jǐjě. Jūnggwo-chíngsīng tā-dōu-syǎng-jrdau.
Mr. Martin is a news reporter. He wants to know all about conditions in China.
- B: Hěn-hǎu. Nín-Jūnggwo-hwàshwōde-jèmma-hǎu, wǒ-syǎng hěnkwài jyòu-hwèi-jrdau-Jūnggwo-de-chíngsīng-le.
Very good. You speak Chinese so well I think that very quickly you can become acquainted with Chinese conditions.
- M: Nǐ-tài-kèchǐ-le.
You're too polite.

- B: Búshr-kèchi, shr-jēnde. Bushǎude-wàigwo-rén dàu-jèr-lai chf-fàn, kěshr hwèi-shwō-Jūnggwo-hwàde budwō. Jyòushr-yōu-rén-hwèi-shwō, yě-méiyōu-nín-shwōde nèmma-hǎu. Yàujīnde shr-tāmen-yīngdāng-dwō-sywé-yidyār. Yàuburán tāmen-dzēmmanéng-dūng-Jūnggwode-shrching-ne?
- M: Shì, shì.
- B: Ōu! Wōmen-yījing-tánle-bushǎu-shfhou-le. Hwōji-hái-méi-lái-ne. Wō-jyàu-ta. . . . Hēi, hwōji.
- H: Láile. Nīmen-chf-shémma?
- B: Syān-ná-dyār-gwādzér-lai. Dzàiyùbei-yihú-jyōu. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nín-hē-jyōu-ma?
- M: Hē-yidyār.
- B: Wō-pà wōmende-jyōu méiyōu-Měigwode-hǎu.
- M: Měigwo-jyōu yōude-hǎu, yōude-buhǎu.
- B: Nín-sfhwān-hē-shémma-yàngde-jyōu?
- M: 'Nī-hē-shémma, wō-'yě-hē-shémma.
- B: 'Wáng-Syānsheng, lái-dyār-báigār dzēmmayàng?
- W: Hǎujīle.
- H: Yàu-dà-hú syǎu-hú?
- B: Syān-ná-yì-syǎu-hú-lai. Kwài-dyar.
- H: Mǎshang-jyōu-lái.
- B: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nín-hēgwo-bái'gār-méiyōu?
- M: Báigār-shr-shémma? Měigwo dàgài méiyōu-nèiyàngde-jyōu. Wō-yěbudà-hē-jyōu.
- W: Jūnggwo-rén jf-dzài-chf-fānde-shfhou hē-jyōu.
- B: Wōmen-yě-hēde-budwō. Wō-píng-cháng chf-fānde-shfhou hē-lyǎng-syǎu-bēi. Yàushr-gēn-péngyou dzài-yikwàr, jyōu-dwō-hē-yidyār. Ōu, hwōji-láile. Jyōu-ne?
- H: Fàngdzai-nǎr?
- B: Fàngdzai-jèr-ba.
- It's not politeness, it's the truth. Not a few foreigners come here to eat, but not many can speak Chinese. Even if some people can speak it, they don't speak as well as you. The important thing is that they ought to study a little more. Otherwise how can they understand Chinese things?
- Right, right.
- Oh! We've already been talking for quite a while. The waiter hasn't come yet. I'll call him. . . . Hey, waiter!
- I'm coming. What would you like to eat? First bring some melon seeds and prepare a pot of wine. Mr. Martin, do you drink wine?
- I drink a little.
- I'm afraid our wine isn't as good as the American.
- Some American wine is good, some is bad.
- What kind of wine would you like to drink?
- I'll drink what you drink.
- Mr. Wáng, what about ordering some *báigār*?
- Excellent.
- Do you want a big pot or a small pot?
- First bring a small pot. Be quicker.
- It'll come right away.
- Mr. Martin, have you ever drunk *báigār*?
- What is *báigār*? Perhaps we don't have that kind of wine in America. And I don't drink wine much.
- It's only at mealtimes that Chinese drink wine.
- We don't drink much either. Ordinarily I drink a couple of small cups when I eat. If I'm together with friends, then I drink a bit more. Oh, the waiter has come. What about the wine?
- Where shall I put it?
- Put it here.

- H: Sh̄.
 B: Jyōu-bēi-ne?
 H: Jyōu-ná-lai.
 B: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, 'Wáng-Syānsheng, byé-kèchi. Chǐng-swéibyàn-ch̄-gwādz̄r.
 M: Jèige-gwādz̄r 'dzēm̄ma-ch̄?
 W: Nĭ-jēm̄ma-ch̄.
 M: Nēm̄ma-ch̄ tài-nán.
 W: Bunán, bunán. Nĭ-cháng-ch̄ jyōu-bunánle.
 B: Chǐng-ba. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, gān-bēi.
 M: Gān-bēi. . . . Āiyā!
 W: Dzēm̄ma-le?
 M: Méi-syǎngdau jèige-jyōu-jēm̄ma-lihai.
 B: Yíge-Égwo-rén gàusung-wo jèige-bí-Égwo-jyōu hái-lihai.
 M: Nà-shr-jēnde.
 B: Swóyi-wōmen-yùng-syǎu-bēi-hē.
 W: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, Lǎu-Bái, gān-bēi.
 M: Gān-bēi.
 B: Gān-bēi.
 W: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nĭ-hwèi-hwá-chywán-ma?
 M: Hwèi-yidyǎr.
 W: Shéi shūle, jyōu-děi-hē-jyōu. Nĭ-jǎdau-ma?
 M: Shūde-rén hē-jyōu-ma? Chǐgwài.
 W: Dwèile. Lái-ba.
 W: Lyòu-a! M: S̄!
 W: Lyòu-a! M: Wū!
 W: Wǒ-yíng. Nĭ-hē.
 M: Hǎu.
 W: Shí-a! M: Wū!
 W: Nĭ-yòu-děi-hēle.
 M: Jèisyē-jyōu-bēi kě-busyǎu-a.
 W: Bā-a! M: S̄!
 W: Wǒ-yòu-yíngle.
 B: Hwǒji, dzài-ná-dyǎr-jyōu-lai.
 M: Dzài-shū wǒ-jyōu-yàu-hē-tài-dwōle. Syàndzài-wǒ-jǎdau shūde-rén-wèi-shēm̄ma yàu-hē-jyōu.
- Yes.
 What about the wine-cups?
 I'll bring them immediately.
 Mr. Martin, Mr. Wáng, don't stand on ceremony. Please eat the melon seeds as you wish.
 How does one eat these melon seeds?
 Eat them this way.
 Eating them that way is too difficult.
 No, no. If you eat them often it won't be hard any more.
 Please. Mr. Martin, bottoms up [a dry cup].
 Here's to you. . . . Oh my!
 What's the matter?
 I didn't expect this wine to be so strong.
 A Russian told me this is even stronger than Russian liquor.
 That's the truth.
 For that reason we use small cups to drink from.
 Mr. Martin, Old Bái, bottoms up.
 Here's to you.
 Bottoms up.
 Mr. Martin, can you 'guess fingers'?
- A little.
 Whoever loses has to drink some wine.
 Do you know?
 The loser drinks? That's strange.
 That's it. Come on.
 Six! Four!
 [No one guesses the correct total]
 Six! Five!
 I win. You drink.
 O.K.
 Ten! Five!
 You have to drink again.
 These wine-cups aren't so small after all.
 Eight! Four!
 I've won again.
 Waiter, bring a little more wine.
 If I lose again I'll drink too much. Now I know why the loser has to drink.

Vocabulary

1. yíng	TV: win (in a game)	9. gwādzěr	N: melon-seed (<i>gwā</i> 'melon' plus <i>dzěr</i> 'seeds')
2. shū	TV: lose (in a game)	10. báigār	N: a wine made from the kaoliang plant (<i>bái</i> 'white' plus <i>gār</i> or <i>gān</i> 'dry')
3. fàngdzai	TV: place on (<i>fàng</i> 'place' plus <i>dzai</i> 'at')	11. hú	N, M: pot
4. dāi	IV: stay	12. bēi	N, M: cup
5. gān	SV: be dry	13. jyòushr	SM: even if, even
6. lihai	SV: be strong, terrific (<i>li</i> 'sharp' plus <i>hài</i> 'injure')	14. tsúnglái	SM: hitherto (<i>tsung</i> 'from' plus <i>lái</i> 'come')
7. bǎ	CV: take	15. hēi!	Int: hey! oh!
8. kě	AD: after all, on the contrary, really	16. hwá chywán	PH: to guess fingers

Substitution Table

shéi	bǎ	nèige-dūngsi	nádau-nèr-chyu	le
wǒ		wǒde-shū	màigei-ta	
nǐ		nèige-jwōdz	gěi-ta	
tā		tāde-yǐdz	fàngdzai-jèr	

Drill I. The Coverb *bǎ*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Tā-bǎ-wǒde-shū fàngdzai-'shémma-difang-le? | Where did he put my book? |
| 2. Wǒmen-yào-bǎ-jèige-dà-jwōdz bān-dau-hòutou-chyu. | We want to move this big table to the rear. |
| 3. Jǎnggwèide-shwō tā-yǐjing-bǎ-báigār dōu-màiwánle. | The manager says he has already sold all the <i>báigār</i> . |
| 4. Yóujidwèi bǎ-sānge nádau-lítou-chyùle. Byéde dōu-nádau-wàitou-chyùle. | The guerrillas took three inside. They took all the rest outside. |
| 5. Nǐ-bǎ-syǎu-hú fàngdzai-jèr, dà-hú fàngdzai-nèr. | Put the small pot here and the big one there. |
| 6. Wǒmen-bǎ-gwādzěr dōu-chfǔwánle. Dzài-ná-dyǎr-lai. | We've eaten up all the melon seeds. Bring some more. |
| 7. Chǐng-ni bǎ-nèiběn-Fàgwo-shū gěi-wǒ-'kànkàn. | Please let me have a look at that French book. |
| 8. Wǒmen-děi-bǎ-jwōdz-náshanglai. | We have to carry the table up. |
| 9. Hēi! Bǎ-nèige-yǐdz nájīnlai. | Hey! Bring in that chair. |
| 10. Tā-bǎ-líhaide-jyōu dōu-hēwánle. | He drank up all the strong wine. |
| 11. Wǒ-bǎ-nèiběn-shūde-míngdz-wàngle. | I've forgotten the title of that book. |
| 12. Nǐ-bǎ-jèibēi-jyōu-náchyu gěi-tā-hē. | Take this cup of wine and give it to him to drink. |

Drill I (cont.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 13. Jyàu-tā-bǎ-jèige-chē kāidau-chéngli-chyu. | Have him drive this car to the city. |
| 14. Chǐng-ni bǎ-jèiběn-shū gěi-'Wáng-Tàitai. | Please give this book to Mrs. Wáng. |
| 15. Nǐ-'néng-bunéng bǎ-nèige-shūpùde-míngdz-gàusung-wo? | Can you tell me the name of that book store? |
| 16. Nǐ-syān-bǎ-jèisyē-shū dōu-nádaugūngshrfángli-chyu. | First take all these books into the office. |
| 17. Wǒ-bǎ-nèijyù-hwà shwōle-sāntsǜ, kěshr-tā-'háishr-budǔng. | I repeated that sentence three times, but he still didn't understand. |
| 18. Nǐ-bǎ-gānde fàngdzai-lítou. Byéde fàngdzai-wàitou. | Put the dry ones inside. Put the rest outside. |
| 19. Jǎngwèide-jyàu-ta bǎ-nèiběn-Yīng-gwo-shū màigei-'Wáng-Tàitai. | The manager told him to sell that English book to Mrs. Wáng. |
| 20. Wǒ-děi-bǎ-jèige-jwōdz bāndaupùdz-chyántou-chyu. | I have to move this table to the front of the store. |

Drill II. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nǐ-dzài-Běipíng dāile-'jǐge-lǐbài? | How many weeks did you stay in Peiping? |
| 2. Wǒ-dzài-Běipíng dāile-'sānge-lǐbài. | I stayed three weeks in Peiping. |
| 3. Měigwo-rén hwèi-buhwèi-hwá-chywán? | Do Americans know how to 'guess fingers'? |
| 4. Yǒude-hwèi, kěshr-budwō. Tǐngshwō Yǐgwo-rén dōu-hwèi. | Some can, but not many. I hear all Italians can. |
| 5. Nǐ-dzwótianyíngle-'dwōshau-chyán? | How much money did you win yesterday? |
| 6. Dwótian méi-yíng. Wǒ-shūle-wùkwài-lyòumáu-chyán. | Yesterday I didn't win. I lost \$5.60. |
| 7. Nǐ-bǎ-jǐ fàngdzai-nǎr-le? | Where did you put the paper? |
| 8. Jǐ, shū, bàu, dōu-fàngdzai-jwōdzshang-le. | The paper, books, and newspapers have all been put on the table. |
| 9. Nǐ-sǐhwan chī-gwādzěr-ma? | Do you like to eat melon seeds? |
| 10. Wǒ-tsúnglái-méi-chǐgwo. | I've never eaten any. |
| 11. Dzài-jèr-jùde-rén dōu-shr-Běidàde-sywésheng. Nǐ-kàn'dwō-budwō? | The people living here are all students of National Peking University. Do you think there are many? |
| 12. Běidàde-sywésheng kě-bushǎu-a. | The students of National Peking University are quite numerous after all. |
| 13. Nǐn-yàu-hē-jyóu-ma? | Do you want to drink any wine? |
| 14. Lái-yìhú-báigār. | Bring a pot of <i>báigār</i> . |
| 15. Yìchyānkwài-chyán nǐ-'mài-bumài? | Will you sell it for \$1,000? |
| 16. Nǐ-jyòushr-gěi-wo-yíwànkwài-chyán wǒ-yě-bumài. | Even if you give me \$10,000 I won't sell. |
| 17. Nǐ-yàu-mǎi-'shémma-yàngde-jyǒu? | What kind of wine do you want to buy? |

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 18. Dzài-lihaide 'yǒu-méiyǒu? | Do you have any stronger? |
| 19. Syàndzài-yíjīng-chà-shǐfēn-chídyǎn-le. Nǐ-hái-yàu-dāi-dwōshau-shfhou? | It's now already 6.50 o'clock. How much longer are you going to stay? |
| 20. Dzài-dāi-yíkè-jūng jyǒu-děi-dzǒule. | After staying another quarter of an hour I have to leave. |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|--|---|
| *1. Nǐ-bǎ-gwǎdzēr fàngdzai-jwōdzshang. | Put the melon seeds on the table. |
| *2. Dzài-lái-yìhú-báigār. | Bring another pot of <i>báigār</i> . |
| *3. Chǐng-nǐ-dwō-chǐ-yidyǎr-bīngjīlīng. | Please have a little more ice cream. |
| *4. Shūde-rén děi-hē-yì-syǎu-bēi-jyǒu. | The loser has to drink a small cup of wine. |
| *5. Nǐ-'chǐ-shémma, wǒ-'yě-chǐ-shémma. | I'll eat what you eat. |
| *6. Dzài-lihaide-jyǒu 'yǒu-méiyǒu? | Is there a little stronger wine? |
| 7. Wàigwo-rén-buhwèi-hwá-chywán. | Foreigners can't 'guess fingers.' |
| 8. Míngtyan-dzǎushang wǒmen-děi-bǎ-jèisyē-dūngsi dǒu-bāndau-wàitou-chyu. | Tomorrow morning we have to move all these things outside. |
| 9. Wǒ-tsúnglái-méi-yínggwo. | I've never won. |
| 10. Jyǒushr-méi-yíge-rén hē-sānbēi-jyǒu, wǒmen-háishr-hēbuwán. | Even if each person drinks three cups of wine we still can't drink it all up. |
| 11. Nǐ-shǎu-chǐ-yidyǎr jyǒu-hǎule. | Eat a little less and then you'll get well. |
| 12. Nèige-dìfang kě-bujin-a. | That place isn't close after all. |
| 13. Wǒ-dāile-bàntyān-le, tā-hái-méi-láine. | I've stayed half a day, but he hasn't come yet. |
| 14. Nèige-dūngsi-'gānle-méiyǒu? | Has that thing become dry? |
| 15. Hēi. Nǐ-lái-bāngju-wǒmen bǎ-jèige-jwōdz bāndau-nèige-yǎdzwòr-chyu. | Hey. Come and help us move this table to that private dining room. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Hēi, hwǒji. Nǐ-gěi-wǒmen yùbeiyìhú-báigār. | 9. Wǒ-tsúnglái-méi-hēgwo-jèmmlìhaide-jyǒu. |
| 2. Wǒ-jǐ-shr-hē-jyǒude-shfhou hwá-chywán. | 10. Dzài-lái-yidyǎr-fàn. |
| 3. Jèisyē-gwǎdzēr kě-buhǎuchǐ. | 11. Jyǒushr-Jūnggwo-jǐjě yě-méi-tīngjyangwo-jèige-shrching. |
| 4. Wǒ-méiyǒu-yíng. Wǒ-shūle-chímáuwǔ. | 12. Gwówáng jǐ-dzài-chǐ-wǎnfànde-shfhou hē-yì-lyǎngbēi-jyǒu. |
| 5. Wǒ-jintyan biděi-dwō-bàn-yidyǎrgūng. | 13. Nǐ-bǎ-gwèide fàngdzai-jèr. Jyànde nádu-nèr-chyu. |
| 6. Chǐng-wèn, shānshangde-nèige-báidūngsi shr-shémma? | 14. Syǎusin-ba. Tāmen-shwō lí-jèr-bu-ywán yǒu-láuhǔ. |
| 7. Jūnggwo-fàngwǎr bǐ-wàigwode dwōde-dwō. | 15. Wǒ-syǎng dzài-méi-yíge-gwóli dāiyíge-ywè. |
| 8. Wǒ-yíjīng-dāile-lyǎngge-jūngtóule. Wǒ-gāi-dzǒule. | 16. Yǒude-shfhou Jūnggwo-rén-chǐ-fànyìchyán syān-chǐ-gwǎdzēr. |

Drill IV (cont.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 17. Wǒ-dàu-Jūnggwo-láile-yìhòu tsái-hēle-báigār. | 19. Ní-yésyǔ-busíhwan-hē-jèmma-li-haide-jyǒu. |
| 18. Tā-gāng-yíngle-yìbǎi-dwōkwài-chyán. | 20. Jūnggwo-rén-hē-jyǒu bucháng-shwō 'Gān-bēi.' |

NOTES

1. a. The coverb *bǎ* 'take' is used to advance the definite object of a verb to a position before the main verb: *Chǐng-ni bǎ-nèiběn-shū gěi-wo* 'Please take that book and give it to me, Please give me that book.' Here *nèiběn-shū* is put before *gěi*; without *bǎ* the sentence would be *Chǐng-ni gěi-wǒ-nèiběn-shū*.
 b. In the above construction the object is always a definite or specific one. An indefinite object like 'a book' or 'some books' is not used after the coverb *bǎ*. Hence, *yìbēn-shū* follows *bǎ* only in the meaning of 'one of the books' and not 'a book.'
 c. The main verb whose object is advanced by the use of *bǎ* is always followed by another object, such as one indicating place, or by the particle *le* or some other verb suffix: *Chǐng-ni bǎ-shū fàngzai-jwōdzshang* 'Please place the book on the table,' *Wǒ-bǎ-tāde-míngdz wàngle* 'I forgot his name.'
2. Where English uses 'more' or 'less' before the object of a verb, as in 'eat more food,' Chinese uses *dwō* 'more' and *shǎu* 'less' before the verb: *Ní-yīngdāng dwō-chī-yíd-yǎr-fàn* 'You ought to more eat a little food, You ought to eat a little more food,' *Nǐ-shǎu-gěi-tā-sānkwài-chyán* 'Give him three dollars less.'
3. Stative verbs are often used before measures: *yí-dà-hú-jyǒu* 'a big pot of wine.'
4. The verb *lái* 'come' is used, especially in restaurants, in the meaning 'bring': *Lái-yìhú-jyǒu* 'Bring a pot of wine.'
5. *Tsúnglái* 'hitherto' is used only with a negative verb. It is convenient to think of *tsúnglái* as combining with the negative prefixes *bu* and *méi* to form the idea of 'never': *Wǒ-tsúnglái-buchī-Jūnggwo-fàn* 'I never eat Chinese food,' *Wǒ-tsúnglái-méi-chīgwo-Jūnggwo-fàn* 'I've never eaten Chinese food.'
6. *Dzemma* followed by *le* forms the set phrase *Dzemma-le?* 'What's the matter?'
7. The Chinese game called *hwá-chywán* is played by two persons. Each person extends none to five fingers of the right hand while at the same time calling out a number from zero to ten which he hopes will be equal to the total number of fingers extended by the two players. Thus, if player A extends two fingers and calls out "six" while player B extends four fingers and calls out "seven," then player A wins, as he has anticipated the correct total.

LESSON 33

THE PARTICLE *je*

Conversation: Martin is introduced to roast duck

- H: Nín-yàu-'shémma-tsài? What dishes would you like to have?
 B: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nín-syǎng-chf-shémma? Mr. Martin, what would you like to eat?
 M: Nímen-'chf-shémma, wǒ-'yě-chf-shémma. Bái-Syānsheng-jèrde-tsài jìshr-Běipíngde, yíding dōu-hǎuchf. I'll eat what you eat. Mr. Bái's food here, since it is Peiping (food), will certainly all be very nice.
 B: Nín-chfle dzài-shwō-ba. Wǒmen-jèrde-fàn dzwòde-buhǎu. Kěshr-yésyǔ yǒu-lyǎngyàng-tsài hái-kéyichf. Nín-sfhwān-chf-yǎdz-ma? Don't say so till you've eaten it [Having eaten, speak again]. Our food here is badly done. But perhaps there are a couple of dishes which one can eat nevertheless. Do you like to eat duck?
 M: Hěn-sfhwān-chf. I like it very much.
 B: 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nín-ne? Mr. Wáng, how about you?
 W: Shémma-dōu-méiyǒu-yǎdz-hǎuchf. Nothing is as good as duck.
 M: Wǒ-méi-lái-Jūnggwo-yfchyán jyòu-tíngshwō Jūnggwode-yǎdz hǎuchf. Even before I came to China I had heard that Chinese duck was delicious.
 W: Ní-shwōde shr-shāu-yǎdz-ba. What you're talking about must be roast duck.
 B: Wǒmen-jyòu-lái-dyǎr-shāu-yǎdz-ba. Then let's order a little roast duck.
 W: Hǎujfle. Fine.
 B: Hwǒji, wǒmen-yàu-dyǎr-shāu-yǎdz. Waiter, we want some roast duck.
 H: Shè. Yes.
 B: Syān-lái-dyǎr-tāng-ba. First bring some soup.
 H: Nín-yàu-'shémma-tāng? Báitsài-tāng dzěmmayàng? What soup do you want? How about cabbage soup?
 B: Báitsài-tāng hěn-píngcháng. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nín-syǎng yàn-wǒ-tāng dzěmmayàng? Cabbage soup is very ordinary. Mr. Martin, what do you think of bird's nest soup?
 M: Cháng-tíngshwō, kěshr wǒ-tsúnglái-méi-chfgo. Wǒ-hěn-syǎng chf-dyǎr-yàn-wǒ-tāng. I've often heard of it, but I've never had any. I'd like very much to have a little bird's nest soup.
 B: Hǎu, wǒmen-lái-dyǎr. Good, we'll order some.
 H: Hái-yàu-'shémma-byéde-ma? Would you like something else?
 B: Syān-ná-tāng-lai. Yhòu-dzài-shwō-byéde-ba. First bring the soup. Afterwards we'll speak of the others.
 H: Shè. Yes.
 B: Kwài-dyar. Hurry it up a bit.
 H: Jyòu-lái. Right away.
 B: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nín-hái-syǎng-chf-'shémma-tsài? Mr. Martin, what other dishes would you like to eat?

- M: Swéibyàn-ba. Shémma-dōu-hǎu.
 B: Láidyǎr-jáyā-gār dzěmmayàng?
 Háiyàu-shémma?
 W: Wōsyǎng jèisyē-gòule.
 M: Dwèile.
 B: Yídìng-bugòu. Dzàiláidyǎrchíngtsàiba. 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nín-yàu-'shémma-chíngtsài?
 W: Swéibyàn.
 B: Jyàudyǎr-júswěn-mwógu, dzěmmayàng?
 W: Hǎu.
 M: Hěn-hǎu.
 B: Dzài-Měigwo-nímen-chf-júswěn-ma?
 M: Měigwo-rén píngcháng-buchf-júswěn. Yòude-shfhou dzài-Jūnggwo-fàngwǎrchf-júswěn. Kěshr-wōmen-cháng-chf-mwógu.
 B: Ní-chf-gwo-júswěn-ma?
 M: Hǎujǐtsz. Wōhěn-sfhwan-chf.
 B: Háiyàuchf-shémma? Láidyǎr-ròu 'hǎu-buhǎu?
 M: Gòule-ba!
 W: Dwèile. Bunéng-dzàiyàule.
 B: Némma-jyàudyǎrgwǒdz-ba.
 M: Hǎu-ba.
 H: Tāng-láile.
 B: Fàngdzai-jèr-ba. Háiyàudyǎr-jáyā-gār, júswěn-mwógu, gēngwǒdz. Dzàinásānwǎn-fàn-lai.
 H: Shì. Háiyàubyéde-ma?
 B: Gòule. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, 'Wáng-Syānsheng, byékèchi. Láidyǎrtāng.
 M: Jèige-tāng kějēnhǎuhē.
 W: Jēnde. Wō-tsúngláiméihēgwo jēmmaphǎude-yàn-wō-tāng.
 B: Ōu, 'méishémma.
 M: Dzài-Měigwo méijēmmaphǎude-tāng.
 B: Nín-jēnsfhwan-Jūnggwo-fàn-ma?
 M: Dāngrán. Jintyan-syàwu Wáng-Syānsheng-gēn-wo tán-chfde. Wōshwō Jūnggwo-fàn dzwèihǎu.
- Suit yourself. Anything will be fine.
 How would it be to order some fried duck livers? What else do we want?
 I think these are enough.
 That's right.
 It's certainly not enough. Let's also order some vegetables. Mr Wáng, what vegetables do you want?
 Anything you please.
 How would it be to order some bamboo shoots and mushrooms?
 Good.
 Very good.
 Do you eat bamboo shoots in America?
 Americans don't ordinarily eat bamboo shoots. Sometimes we eat bamboo shoots in Chinese restaurants. But we often eat mushrooms.
 Have you ever eaten bamboo shoots?
 Many times. I like them very much.
 What else do we want to eat? Shall we order some meat?
 Enough!
 That's right. We can't order any more.
 In that case let's order some fruit.
 All right.
 The soup has come.
 Put it here. We also want some fried duck livers, some bamboo shoots and mushrooms, and some fruit. Also bring three bowls of rice.
 Yes. Do you want anything else?
 That's enough. Mr. Martin, Mr. Wáng, don't stand on ceremony. Have some soup.
 This soup is really delicious.
 Really. I've never had such good bird's nest soup.
 Oh, it's nothing.
 We don't have such nice soup in America.
 Do you really like Chinese food?
 Naturally. This afternoon Mr. Wáng and I were discussing things to eat. I said Chinese food was the best.

- B: Hěn-hǎu. Chǐng-dzài-lái-dyǎr-tāng. Very good. Please have a little more soup.
- M: Yidyǎr, syèsye. A little, thanks.
- B: 'Nín-dzěmmayàng, 'Wáng-Syānsheng? How about you, Mr. Wáng?
- W: Syèsye, wǒ-buyàule. Thanks, I don't want any more.
- H: Já-yā-gār-láile. Nín-hēwán-tāng-le-ma? The fried duck livers have come. Have you finished the soup?
- B: Hēwánle. Nádzǒu-ba. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, 'Wáng-Syānsheng, chǐng. We've finished. Take it away. Mr. Martin, Mr. Wáng, please.
- M: Nǐ-'dzěmma-bulái-yidyǎr? Why don't you have some?
- B: Swéibyàn-chī. Eat freely.
- W: Jèi-yā-gār jēn-hǎu. These duck livers are really nice.
- B: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, dzài-lái-dyǎr. Mr. Martin, have some more.
- M: Syèsye. Nǐ-yě-dzài-lái-dyǎr. Thanks. You have some more too.
- H: Bǎ-júswěn-mwógu yě-fàngdzai-jwōdzshang-ma? Shall I put the bamboo shoots and mushrooms on the table too?
- B: Fàngdzai-jèr. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nín-kwàidz yùngde-jēn-hǎu. Kàn-nín-yùngde-jèmma-hǎu wǒ-jīdau nǐ-búshr-sín-lái-Jūnggwode. Put them here. Mr. Martin, you use chopsticks very well. Seeing you use them so well I know you aren't newly arrived in China.
- M: Nǐ-tài-kèchi. Wǒ-yùngde-budà-hǎu. You're too polite. I don't use them very well. The bamboo shoots are very delicious.
- B: Jèr-yǒu-yí-dà-kwài. Here's a big piece.
- M: Syèsye, nǐ-tài-kèchi. Thanks, you're too kind.
- H: Shāu-yā yě-láile. The roast duck has also come.
- B: Yā-gār chīgòule. Nádzǒu-ba. We've eaten enough of the duck livers. Take them away.
- H: Júswěn-mwógu-ne? What about the bamboo shoots and mushrooms?
- B: Yě-nádzǒu. Take them away too.
- H: Hǎu. Nèmma-wǒ-bǎ-shāu-yǎdz fàngdzai-jwōdzshang. All right. Then I'll put the roast duck on the table.
- B: Wǒmen-chīwánle-shāu-yǎdz nǐ-bǎ-báitsài-tāng-nálai. After we've finished the roast duck bring the cabbage soup.
- H: Hǎu. All right.
- B: 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nín-wèi-shémma bulái-dyǎr-shāu-yǎdz. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, byé-kèchi. Chǐng. Mr. Wáng, why don't you have a little roast duck. Mr. Martin, don't stand on ceremony. Please.
- W: Jèige-shāu-yǎdz kě-jēn-hǎu. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, wǒ-búshr-shwō dzài-chéngli Jūng-Měi-Fàngwǎnde-tsàidzwèi-hǎu-ma? This roast duck is really good. Mr. Martin, didn't I say the food at the Chinese-American Restaurant is the best in the city?
- M: Nǐ-shwōde-hěn-dwèi. Wǒ-chīgwō-jǐtsè-shāu-yǎdz, kěshr-tsúnglái-méi-yǒu-jèmma-hǎu. You spoke the truth [spoke correctly]. I've eaten roast duck a few times, but it's never been this good.

- B: Nín-tài-kèchi.
 M: Bukèchi. Wǒ-chēde-tài-màn. Chǐng-nǐ byé-jyànsyàu. Wǒ-kwàidz yùngde-budà-hǎu.
 B: Byé-pà-màn. Yǒude-Měigwo-rén lái-jèr chēde-tài-kwài. Shāu-yādz yīngdāng-mànmārde-chē.
 M: Dwèile. Yǒude-shíhou wǒ-mángde bunéng-dzwòje-chē-fàn. Kěshr-chē-shāu-yādz-děi-mànmārde-chē.
 H: Báitsài-tāng-láile.
 B: Fàngdzai-jèr-ba. Dzài-ná-sānwǎn-fàn-lai.
 H: Nín-yàu-chá-ma?
 B: Ná-yihú-lai.
 H: Jyòu-lái.
 W: Báitsài-tāng yě-butswò.
 B: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, hē-dyǎr-tāng.
 M: Yidyǎr.
 B: 'Dwō-lái-dyǎr.
 M: Gòule.
 B: Fàn-láile. Gwǒdz-yě-láile. Wǒ-pà-nímen-méi-chēbǎu. Dzài-chē-dyǎr-fàn jyòu-bǎule.
 M: Buhwèi, buhwèi. Yíjing-chēbǎule.
 B: Láidyǎr-chá-ma?
 M: Syèsye. Láiyībēi.
 B: Chē-gwǒdz-ma?
 M: Chērbusyàle. Shāu-yādz chēde-tàidwòle. Wǒ-tsúnglái-méi-chēgwò-jèmma-hǎude-shāu-yādz.
 B: Nín-tài-kèchi.
 M: Bukèchi. Yàushr-Měigwo-rén jīdau-Jūnggwo-shāu-yādz-jèmma-hǎuchē tāmen-yíding-dōu-yàu-dàu-Jūnggwo-láile.
- You're too kind.
 Not at all. I'm eating too slowly. Please don't laugh. I don't use chopsticks very well.
 Don't be afraid of being slow. Some Americans come here and eat too fast. Roast duck should be eaten slowly.
 That's right. Sometimes I'm so busy that I can't even eat sitting down. But in eating roast duck one must eat slowly.
 The cabbage soup has come.
 Put it here. Also bring three bowls of rice.
 Do you want tea?
 Bring one pot.
 Right away.
 The cabbage soup isn't bad either.
 Mr. Martin, have a little soup.
 A little.
 Have some more.
 Enough.
 The rice has come. The fruit has also come. I'm afraid you haven't eaten your fill. Eat a little more rice also and then you'll be full.
 I can't. I'm already stuffed.
 Have some tea?
 Thanks. I'll have a cup.
 Will you have some fruit?
 I can't get anything more down. I've eaten too much roast duck. I've never eaten such good roast duck.
 You're too kind.
 Not at all. If Americans knew that Chinese roast duck was this good they would all certainly want to come to China.

Vocabulary

1. yā, yādz	N: duck	6. gwǒdz	N: fruit
2. tāng	N: soup	7. ròu	N: meat
3. gān, gār	N: liver	8. chá	N: tea
4. júswěn	N: bamboo shoots (jú 'bamboo' plus swěn 'sprout')	9. báitsài	N: cabbage (bái 'white' plus tsài 'vegetable')
5. mwógu	N: mushrooms		

Vocabulary (*cont.*)

10. chīngtsài	N: vegetable (<i>chīng</i> 'green' plus <i>tsài</i> 'vegetable')	17. sīn	SV: be new
11. wǎn	N, M: bowl	18. dāngrán	SV: of course, naturally (<i>dāng</i> 'ought' plus <i>rán</i> 'thus')
12. shāu	TV: to roast	19. yàn-wō-tāng	PH: bird's nest soup (<i>yàn</i> 'a swallow' plus <i>wō</i> 'nest' plus <i>tāng</i> 'soup')
13. já	TV: to fry (in deep fat)	20. je	GP: See Note 1
14. tswò	SV: be incorrect		
15. gòu	SV: be sufficient, have enough		
16. bǎu	SV: be satisfied, full		

Drill I. The Particle je

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wōmen-dzōuje-shwō-ba. | Let's talk as we walk. |
| 2. Nĭ-shwōje, wō-syě. | I'll write while you're speaking. |
| 3. Tā-náje-kwàidz-dzwò-shémma? | What's he doing holding the chopsticks? |
| 4. Nĭ-dzwòje-ba. Byé-máng. | Sit down (for a while). Don't rush. |
| 5. Nĭ-gēnje-wō-chyù, 'hǎu-buhǎu? | Go along with me, O.K.? |
| 6. Shwōje-hwà tā-jyòu-láile. | He came while we were speaking. |
| 7. Wō-yòu-yidyǎr-lèi, swóyi-dzwòje tán-hwà-hǎu. | I'm a little tired, so it would be better to talk sitting down. |
| 8. Tā-pǎuje-láide. | He came running. |
| 9. Buyàu-shwōje-hwà chī-fàn. | Don't talk while you eat. |
| 10. Jèr-méiyòu-mǎ, swóyi-wōmen-děi-dzōuje-chyù. | There aren't any horses here, so we have to go on foot. |
| 11. Tā-syěje-dz chàng-gēr. | He sang as he wrote. |
| 12. Tā-kànje-nèige-rén, kànle-bàntyān-le. | He kept staring at that man. |
| 13. Tā-hēje-jyòu-shwō-hwà. | He spoke as he drank. |
| 14. Nĭ-pényou dzài-yǎdzwòr-dzwòje-ne. | Your friend is sitting in the booth. |
| 16. Nĭ-dzài-nèr-dzwòjede-shfhou tā-laile. | He came while you were sitting down there. |
| 17. Yàushr-méiyòu-chìchē, wōmen-jyòu-děi-dzōuje-chyù. | If there aren't any cars, then we have to go on foot. |
| 18. Wō-náje, nĭ-kàn. | Look while I'm holding it. |
| 19. Nĭ-syǎusĭnje-ba! | Take care! |
| 20. Wō-kànje-tā-shwō: "Nĭ-syàu-shéi?" | I said as I looked at him: "Whom are you laughing at?" |

Drill II. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Nĭ-dzēm-ma-le? Wōmen-yinggāi-chīng-dàifu. | What's the matter with you? We ought to call a doctor. |
| 2. Wō-syàwǔ chīng-dàifu. | I'm going to call a doctor in the afternoon. |
| 3. Yàn-wō-tāng nĭ-hēgòule-ma? | Have you had enough bird's nest soup? |
| 4. Gòule. Nĭ-nádzōu-ba. | I've had enough. Take it away. |

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 5. Shémma-gwóde-chá dzwèi-hǎu? | What country has the best tea? |
| 6. Yìndude, Myǎndyànde, Rǐbēnde—
wǒ-dōu-hēgwo. Dōu-méiyǒu-Jūng-
gwo-chá-hǎu. | Indian, Burmese, Japanese—I've tried
them all. None is as good as Chinese tea. |
| 7. Nǐ-kàn-jèige-ròu 'gòu-bugòu? | Do you think this meat is enough? |
| 8. Yíding-bugòu. Dzài-lái-yidyǎr-já-yā-
gār. | It certainly isn't enough. Also bring some
fried duck livers. |
| 9. Jèige-ròu yàu-já-dwōshau-shfhou? | How long should this meat be fried? |
| 10. Jèige-ròu yàu-já-yíkè-jūng. | This meat should be fried for a quarter
hour. |
| 11. Hwǒji-'dzēm̄ma-bulái? Wǒ-jyàu-tā-
kwàikwārde-chyù gēi-wōmen-ná-
lyǎngwǎn-fàn. | Why doesn't the waiter come? I told him
to go quickly and get us two bowls of rice. |
| 12. Tā-tīngswòle. Tā-yíwéi nǐ-jyàu-ta
ná-gwǒdz. | He didn't hear you correctly. He thought
you told him to bring the fruit. |
| 13. Nǐ-jintyan-chǐrde-yǎdz shr-shāude
shr-jáde? | Was the duck you ate today roasted or
fried? |
| 14. Shr-shāude. Wǒ-tsúnglái méi-chǐgwo-
jáde. | It was roasted. I've never eaten it fried. |
| 15. Wōmen-dzǒuje-chyù, 'hǎu-buhǎu? | Shall we go on foot? |
| 16. Tāde-jyā-lí-jèr wǔlí-dwō-lù. Dzwò-
chìchē-chyù-hǎu. | His home is more than five <i>li</i> from here.
It would be better to go by car. |
| 17. 'Mǎ-Syānsheng, nǐ-wèi-shém̄ma bu-
lái-yidǎr-mwógú? | Mr. Martin, why don't you have some
mushrooms? |
| 18. Wǒ-chǐrde-tài-bǎu. Bunéng-dzài-chǐ-
le. | I've eaten more than enough. I can't eat
any more. |
| 19. Jèige-jwǒdz wǒ-gēi-shǐkwài-chyán,
nǐ-'mài-bumài? | Will you sell this table for ten dollars? |
| 20. Jèige-jwǒdz shr-sīn-dzwòde. Nǐ-dwō-
gēi-sānkwài-chyán déle. | This table is a newly made one. Give me
three more dollars and that'll do. |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|---|
| *1. Yàushr-wōmen-dzǒuje-chyù wōmen-
yíge-lǐbài yíding-dàubulyǎu. | If we go on foot we certainly won't be able
to arrive in one week. |
| *2. Dzài-lái-yidyǎr-júswěn-gēn-mwógú. | Help yourself to some more bamboo
shoots and mushrooms. |
| *3. Yá-gār jáde-jēn-butswò. | The duck livers have been fried very
nicely. |
| *4. Nǐ-mànmārde-chǐ. | Eat slowly. |
| *5. Yíchyān-kwài-chyán bugòu-mǎi-sīn-
chìchē. | \$1,000 is not enough to buy a new car. |
| 6. Yíge-rén yàu-báitsài-tāng. Byéde
dōu-yàu-yàn-wō-tāng. | One person wants cabbage soup. The
others all want bird's nest soup. |
| 7. Dwō-chǐ-chīngsàì hǎu. | It would be well to eat more vegetables. |

Drill III (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 8. Dàule-di-sāntyān nǐ-jyòu-kéyi-chǐ-yidyǎr-gwōdz. | By the third day you can eat a little fruit. |
| 9. Jèige-jwōdz hěn-hǎukàn. Wō-shr-jinggwō-Yindude-shfhou-mǎide. | This table is very pretty. I bought it when passing through India. |
| 10. Nèige-lǎu-rén shwō-Déwén shwōde-hěn-butswò. | That old man speaks German not at all badly. |
| 11. Jèige-ròu shāude-buhǎu. | This meat is badly roasted. |
| 12. Wō-chǐle-chàbudwō-szǎn-fàn, kěshr hái-méi-chǐbǎu. | I've eaten four bowls of rice, but I still haven't eaten my full. |
| 13. Tā-shwōde-budwèi. Sūjou-búdzai-Dūngsānshēng. | He made a mistake. Soochow is not in Manchuria. |
| 14. Nǐ-wàngle-'wěiba'-de-yìsz-ma? | Have you forgotten the meaning of 'wěiba'? |
| 15. Tā-dāngrán-buhwèi-shwō-Jūnggwō-hwà. Tā-syǎude-shfhou jyòu-líkāi-Jūnggwō-le. | He naturally can't speak Chinese. He left China when he was small. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Tsúngchýán wō-hěn-síhwan chǐ-ròu. Syàndzài budà-síhwan-chǐ-le. | 9. Nǐ-děi-tyāntyān-wǎnshang chǐ-yidyǎr-gwōdz. |
| 2. Gwò-jyēde-shǐhou nǐ-děi-syǎusinjedzǒu. | 10. Byé-kèchi. Swéibyàn-lái-dyǎr-chá. |
| 3. Tā-shr-chyùnyán-bāywe-sānhàudzài-Héběi-shēngde. | 11. Tā-shǐdzài-hwèi-shāu-yǎdz. |
| 4. Égwō-rén chángcháng-hē-báitsàitāng. | 12. Lyǎngwǎn-fàn budwō. Dzài-chǐdyǎr. |
| 5. Tsúng-yì-jyòu-sān-líng-nyán dàu-yìjyòu-sān-sān-nyán tā-dzài-Dégwō. Hòulái tā-pǎudau-Měigwō-chyùle. | 13. Nà-búshr-wōde-yìsz. Wō-shwòtswòle. |
| 6. Nèige-dz nǐ-syètswòle. Yíngdāng-jèmma-syě. | 14. Nèige-sin-chìchē yíjing-hwàile. |
| 7. Jintyan-jūngwū wō-yì-chǐ-mwógujyòu-bíngle. Yésyǔ wō-chǐde buyídìng-shr-jěn-mwógu. | 15. Wō-tswòle, swóyì-nǐ-yíngle. |
| 8. Bǎ-júswěn-fàngdzai-shàngtou. | 16. Měigwō-rén-syǎng yàn-wō-tāng hěn-hǎuchǐ. |
| | 17. Nèmma-dwō-chíngtsài yídìng-gòule. |
| | 18. Wō-dāngrán-síhwan chǐ-já-yā-gār. |
| | 19. Wō-chǐbǎule. Shǐdzài-bunéng-dzàichǐle. |
| | 20. Syàtoude shr-wōde. Nǐ-kéyi-nádzǒu. |

NOTES

1. a. The particle *je* is added to verbs to indicate a state of continuing action: *dzwòje* 'sitting down.'
- b. The use of *je* is most common in phrases similar to English 'to eat standing up.' In Chinese, of course, the main verb comes last and the particle is added to the preceding verb: *dzwòje-syě* 'to write sitting down,' *dzòuje-chyù* 'to go walking, to go on foot.'
2. a. The stative verb *gòu* is used as an independent verb meaning 'to be enough, to

- suffice': *Fàn-gòule* 'The food is sufficient.' In such sentences *gòu* is used only as a predicate and never precedes a noun. Hence, 'Is there enough food?' is expressed as *Fàn-'gòu-bugòu?* literally 'Is the food enough?'
- b. *Gòu* is added to other verbs to form resultative verb compounds: *Wò-hēgòule* 'I've drunk enough,' *Jèige-tsài wò-ch'gòule* 'I've had enough of this dish.' These compound verbs are often contracted, as in *Wò-gòule* 'I've had enough.'
3. As a transitive verb *lái* has the meaning 'take' or 'have' in situations involving eating or drinking: *Ch'ng-ni dzài-lái-yidyär-jyòu* 'Please have a little more wine.'
4. Some stative verbs form adverbial phrases by doubling the verb and adding *de*. In these phrases the second syllable becomes a high tone regardless of its original tone: *màn-mānde* 'slowly,' *kwàikwāide* 'quickly,' *hāuhāude* 'well, diligently.' Very often a final *r* is added to the second syllable or replaces the final letter of this syllable: *màn-mārde*, *kwàikwārde*, *hāuhāurde*.
5. The noun *fàn* 'cooked food,' when preceded by the measure *wǎn* 'bowl,' refers specifically to cooked rice: *sānwǎn-fàn* 'three bowls of rice.'
6. *Butswò*, the negative form of *tswò* 'incorrect,' is not simply the opposite of *tswò* but instead has a specialized use similar to that of English 'not bad' in the meaning of 'quite good': *Jèige-chá butswò* 'This tea is not bad, This tea is quite good,' *Tāde-Jūnggwo-hwà hèn-butswò* 'His Chinese is not at all bad.'

LESSON 34

THE COVERB *ràng*

Conversation: Mr. Martin takes his leave

- | | |
|---|--|
| B: Dzài-lái-dyär-chá-ba. | Have a little more tea. |
| M: Hāu. Jèige-chá-butswò. Wōmen-dzài-Měigwo-hēde-chá chàbudwō-dōu-shr-Yìndu-láide. Méi-Jūnggwo-chá-hāu. | Fine. This tea isn't bad. The tea we drink in America is almost all from India. It isn't as good as Chinese tea. |
| B: Wò-tsúnglái méi-hēgwo-Yìndu-chá. 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nín-yě-dzài-lái-dyär-chá. | I've never had any Indian tea. Mr. Wáng, you have some more tea too. |
| W: Syèsye, gòule. Wōmen-gāi-dzòule-ba. | Thanks, I've had enough. We ought to be leaving. |
| B: Bumáng. Hái-budàu-shfdyän-jūng-ne. | Don't be in a hurry. It's not ten o'clock yet. |
| W: Wò-hái-děi-hwéi-gūngshrfáng-chyu. Yōu-dyär-shr méi-dzwòwán. | I still have to return to the office. There's a little matter I haven't finished. |
| B: Shfdyän-jūng hái-děi-chyù-gūngshr-fáng! | At ten o'clock you still have to go to the office! |
| W: Dwèile. Hái-děi-chyù dzwò-yì-lyǎngge-jūngtòude-shr. | That's right. I still have to go and do things for another hour or two. |
| B: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng-ne? | Mr. Martin, what about you? |

- M: Wō-děi-hwéi-jyā nyàn-shū. Wō-hái-yàu-lyànsi yíge-Jūngwo-gēr. I have to return home and study. I also want to practice a Chinese song.
- W: Shr-shémma-gēr? Gěi-wōmen-'chàngchàng. What song is it? Sing it for us.
- M: Shr-sīn-sywéde. Wō-budà-hwèi. I've recently [newly] learned it. I can't very well.
- W: Nèige-gēr-jyàu-'shémma-míngdz? What is that song called?
- M: 'Chílai.' Ní-dàgài-tíngyangwo-ba. 'Arise.' Most likely you've heard of it.
- W: Dāngrán. Shr-yíge-hěn-yǒu-míngde-gēr. Chàbudwō-swóyǒude-Jūngwo-rén dōu-hwèi-chàng. Of course. It's a very famous song. Almost all Chinese can sing it.
- M: 'Bái-Syānsheng, nǐ-yě-jǐdau-jèige-gēr-ma? Mr. Bái, do you also know this song?
- B: Wō-yě-jǐdau. Shr-wǒ-dìdì jǐnyán-yíchyán-jyāu-wōde. Tā-rènshr-syě-gēde-rén. I know it too. It was taught to me several years ago by my younger brother. He knows the man who wrote the song.
- M: Jēnde-ma? Really?
- B: Shì. Tāde-míngdz shr-Nyè-Ēr. Yes. His name is Nyè Ēr.
- M: Jèige-gēr shémma-shfhou-syěde? When was this song written?
- B: Wō-budà-jǐdau. Yì-jyǒu-sān-yì-nyán Dūngsānshěng-ràng-Rběn-rén jànle-yíhòu, Nyè-Syānsheng-syǎng hwànchí-Jūngwo-rén dǐkàng-wōmende-dírén. Swóyì tā-syěle-jèige-'Chílai'-gēr. Di-yíjyù-hwà-shr: 'Chílai, buywàn-dzwò-núlìde-rénmen.' I'm not certain. After Manchuria was occupied by the Japanese in 1931, Mr. Nyè wanted to arouse the Chinese people to resist our enemy. So he wrote this song 'Arise.' The first sentence is: 'Arise, you who refuse to be bond-slaves.'
- M: 'Nyè-Syānsheng syàndzài-dzài-nǎr? Where is Mr. Nyè now?
- B: Tā-gwòchyule-hǎujǐnyán-le. Tā-syěle-jèige-gē-yíhòu syǎng-dàuwàigwo-chyù dzài-sywé-dyǎr-síyáng yīnywe. Tā-méi-shémma-chyán, swóyì bunéng-chyù. He's been dead for a good many years. After he wrote this song he wanted to go abroad to study some more Occidental music. He didn't have much money, so he couldn't go.
- M: Nèmma-tā-'dzēmna-bàn-ne? Then how did he manage?
- B: Rběnde-síyáng-yīnywe hěn-hǎu, bǐngchyě Rběn lí-Jūngwo-hěn-jìn, swóyì tā-jyòu-dàu-nèr-chyù sywé-yīnywe. The Western music of Japan is very good and Japan is very close to China, so he went there to study music.
- M: Dàu-Rběn-chyù buwéisyǎn-ma? Wasn't it dangerous to go to Japan?
- B: Lǎu-Sz gēn-tā-byéde-péngyou dōu-buyàu-tā-chyù, shwō-tài-wéisyǎn. Kěshr-tā-yíding-yàu-chyù. Old Fourth and his other friends all didn't want him to go, saying it was too dangerous. But he insisted on going.
- M: Tā-'shémma-shfhou hwéi-Jūng-gwode? When did he return to China?
- B: Tā-méi-hwéilai. Szdzai-Rběn-le. Tā-péngyou-shwō shr-ràng-Rběn-rén-shā-le. He didn't return. He died in Japan. His friends say he was killed by the Japanese.

- W: Wōmen-sāngē-rén chāng-tāde-gēr, Let's the three of us sing his song.
'hǎu-buhǎu?
- M: Hǎu. Fine.
- W: Yī, èr, sān, chāng: One, two, three, sing:
Chǐlai, buywàn-dzwò-núlìde-rén- Arise, you who refuse to be bond-slaves.
men.
Bǎ-wōmēnde-syě-ròu júchéng- Let's make our own flesh and blood into a
wōmen-sīnde-Cháng-Chéng. modern Great Wall.
Jūnghwá-míndzú dàulǎu-dzwèi- Our nation has reached its most danger-
wéisyǎnde-shǐhou. ous crisis.
Měige-rén bèipwòje-fāchū-dzwèi- Everyone is forced to utter a final out-
hòude-hǒushēng. cry:
Chǐlai! Arise!
Chǐlai! Arise!
Chǐlai! Arise!
Wōmen-wànjùng-yìsīn. All of us with one heart
Màuje-dírēnde-pàuhwǒ Braving enemy gunfire
Chyán-jìn! March on!
Màuje-dírēnde-pàuhwǒ Braving enemy gunfire
Chyán-jìn! March on!
Chyán-jìn! March on!
Chyán-jìn, jìn! March on, and on!
- M: Jèige-gēr hǎujíle. This song is wonderful.
- W: Shr-sīn-Jūnggwo dzwèi-hǎude-gēr. It's new China's best song.
- H: 'Bái-Syānsheng, yǒu-yíge-sìng- Mr. Bái, there is a Mr. Wáng who is
Wángde dǎ-dyànhwà wèn-jèr-yǒu- phoning to ask if there is a foreigner by
méiyǒu-sìng-Mǎde-yíge-wàigwo- the name of Mǎ here.
rén.
B: 'Jèiwèi-syānsheng sìng-Mǎ. This gentleman is called Mǎ.
H: Nín-de-dyànhwà. Telephone for you.
M: Yésyǔ-shr-Lǎu-Wáng. Tā-'dzēm- Perhaps it's Old Wáng. How did he know
jǐdau wǒ-dzài-jèr? I was here?
H: Jèiwèi-Wáng-Syānsheng-shwǒ yǒu- This Mr. Wáng says it is a very impor-
yàujīnde-shì. Yàu-gēn-nín-shwǒ- tant matter. He wants to talk with you.
hwà.
M: Hǎule. Dyànhwà dzài-nǎr? All right. Where's the phone?
H: Jèr-ne. Here.
M: Wài. Shr-shéi? Hello. Who is it?
L: 'Mǎ-Syānsheng? Mr. Martin?
M: Shì. Nǐ-shr-něiwèi? Yes, who are you?
L: Wǒ-shr-Lǎu-Wáng. I'm Old Wáng.
M: 'Shémma-shì? Nǐ-dzài-'nǎr-dǎ- What is it? Where are you calling
dyànhwà? (from)?
L: Dzài-gūngshrfáng-ne. Nín-'tīng- I'm at the office. Have you heard that
jyanle-méiyǒu Jyǎng-Wěiywán- Chairman Chiang is going to give an
jǎng yàu-jyàn-swóyǒude-wàigwo- audience to [is going to see] all foreign
jǐjě? correspondents?

- M: Shémma! Wǒ-busin!
L: Shr-jēnde.
M: 'Shémma-shíhou-jyàn?
L: Míngtyan-syàwǔ-sāndyǎn-bàn.
M: Míngtyan! Kěshr tā-búshr-dzài-Chúngching-ma?
L: Dwèile. Tā-syàndzài-dzài-Chúngching.
M: Nèmma wǒ-'dzēm-ma-dàudelyǎu-ne? Chúngching lí-jèr-hěn-ywǎn.
L: Kéyi-dzwò-fēiji-chyu. Shfýidyǎn-bàn yǒu-fēiji tsúng-jèr-dàu-Chúngching.
M: Shfýidyǎn-bàn! Syàndzài-yíjing-shfýdyǎn-le.
L: Dwèile. Swóyi-nín-děi-kwài-dyar.
M: Wǒ-děi-syān-hwéi-jyā ná-dyǎr-dūngsi.
L: Nín-kéyi-dzwò-chìchē-chyu. Jūngshān-Lù yíding-yǒu-chìchē. Jyàuhwǒji gěi-nín-jyàu-chìchē.
M: Hǎu. Wǒ-hái-děi dàu-gūngshrfáng-chyu ná-dyǎr-chyán.
L: Nín-syūyàu-dwōshau wōmen-gěi-nín-dwōshau.
M: Hǎu. Wǒ-jyòu-lái.
L: Dzàijyàn.
M: Dzàijyàn. . . . Āiyā, wǒ-shfdzài-méi-syǎngdàu-jèige. Hēi, 'Wáng-Syānsheng, nǐ-tīng-jèige.
W: Shémma-shì?
M: Lǎu-Wáng-gāng-dǎ-dyànhwà-shwō Jyǎng-Wěiywán-jǎng míngtyan-syàwǔ yàu-jyàn-wàigwo-jijě.
W: Jēnde-ma?
M: Jēnde.
B: Dzài-'shémma-difang jyàn-nímen?
M: Dzài-Chúngching.
B: Dzài-Chúngching! Nín-míngtyan-syàwǔ 'dzēm-ma-dàudelyǎu?
M: Shfýidyǎn-bàn yǒu-fēiji dàu-Chúngching. Dwèibuchí. Wǒ-děi-syāndzǒu. Hwǒji néng-bunéng-gěi-wǒ-jyàu-yíge-chìchē?
B: Néng. Hēi, hwǒji!
H: Láile.
- What! I don't believe it!
It's the truth.
When will he see (us)?
Tomorrow afternoon at 3.30.
Tomorrow! But isn't he in Chungking?
That's right. He's in Chungking now.
Then how can I get there? Chungking is far from here.
You can go by plane. At 11.30 there is a plane to Chungking.
11.30! It's now already ten o'clock.
That's right. So you have to be a little fast.
I have to go home first and get a few things.
You can go by car. There will certainly be some cars on Sun Yat-sen Road. Ask a waiter to call a car for you.
Good. I still have to go to the office to get some money.
We'll give you as much as you need.
Fine. I'm coming right away.
Good-bye.
Good-bye. . . . Gosh, I certainly hadn't expected this. Hey, Mr. Wáng, listen to this.
What's up?
Old Wáng just called to say Chairman Chiang will grant an audience to foreign correspondents tomorrow afternoon.
Really?
It's the truth.
Where will he see you?
In Chungking.
In Chungking! How can you get there by tomorrow afternoon?
There will be a plane at 11.30 for Chungking. Excuse me. I have to leave first. Can a waiter call a car for me?
He can. Hey, waiter!
Coming.

- B: Nǐ-chyù-jyàu-yíge-chìchē. Go and call a car.
 H: Shì. Yes.
 M: Syèsye. 'Wáng-Syānsheng, wǒ-děi-gěi-nǐ-dyār-chyán. Nǐ-'néng-bunéng gēn-wǒ-yìkwàr-hwéi-jyā? Dàu-jyā jyòu-yǒu-chyán. Thanks. Mr. Wáng, I must give you a little money. Can you return home with me? When I get home I'll have some money.
 W: Chyán-buyàujǐn. Wǒ-syàndzài-busyūyàu. Nǐ-hwéilai dzài-gěi-wo. The money doesn't matter. I don't need it now. Give it to me when you return.
 M: Hǎu-ba. O.K.
 H: Chìchē-láile. The car has come.
 M: 'Bái-Syānsheng, 'Wáng-Syānsheng, hwéilai-dzàijyàn-ba. Mr. Bái, Mr. Wáng, see you again when I return.
 B: Dzàijyàn. Good-bye.
 W: Yílù-píngān. Have a nice trip.

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|-------------|--|------------------|--|
| 1. syūyàu | TV: need, require
(<i>syū</i> 'must' plus
<i>yàu</i> 'want') | 13. ràng | CV: by |
| 2. lyànsi | TV: practice, drill
(<i>lyàn</i> 'drill' plus
<i>sí</i> 'practice') | 14. dyànhwà | N: telephone (<i>dyàn</i>
'electricity'
plus <i>hwà</i>
'speech') |
| 3. jàn | TV: occupy | 15. yīnywe | N: music [note
that this word
is composed of
the syllables
<i>yīn</i> and <i>ywe</i> ,
not <i>yī</i> and
<i>nywe</i>] |
| 4. hwànchǐ | TV: arouse
(<i>hwàn</i> 'call'
plus <i>chǐ</i> 'rise') | 16. dírén | N: enemy (<i>dí</i> 'op-
pose' plus <i>rén</i>
'people') |
| 5. dǐkàng | TV: resist
(<i>dǐ</i> 'resist' plus
<i>kàng</i> 'oppose') | 17. sīyáng | PW: the occident |
| 6. dǎ | TV: strike, hit | 18. Chúnghing | PW: Chungking |
| 7. shā | TV: kill | 19. wài | Int: hello! (on tele-
phone) |
| 8. cháng | SV: be long | 20. swóyǒude | PH: all (see Note 2) |
| 9. píngān | SV: be peaceful
(<i>píng</i> 'tranquil'
plus <i>ān</i> 'quiet') | 21. wěiywán-jǎng | PH: chairman (of a
committee)
(<i>wěi</i> 'deputed'
plus <i>ywán</i>
'officer' plus
<i>jǎng</i> 'chief') |
| 10. wéisyǎn | SV: be dangerous
(<i>wéi</i> 'danger-
ous' plus <i>syǎn</i>
'hazardous') | | |
| 11. sǐ | IV: die | | |
| 12. chǐlai | IV: arise, get up
(<i>chǐ</i> 'rise' plus
<i>lái</i> 'come') | | |

Drill I. The Coverb ràng

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Tā-dìdì ràng-Ābēn-rén-dászle. | His younger brother was killed by the Japanese. |
| 2. Nǐde-jǐ ràng-shéi nǎdzǒule? | By whom was your paper taken away? |
| 3. Fǎgwo ràng-Dégwo jànle-hǎujǐtsz. | France has been occupied by Germany many times. |
| 4. Hěn-dwō-Jūnggwo-rén ràng-Ābēn-rén-shāle. | Many Chinese were killed by the Japanese. |
| 5. Wōde-chíchē ràng-dírén dǎhwàile. | My automobile was smashed by the enemy. |
| 6. Jūnggwo-ràng-Ābēn-jànle-yǐhòu hěn-dwō-rén ràng-dírén shāle. | After China was occupied by Japan many people were killed by the enemy. |
| 7. Wōde-shū ràng-rén nǎdzǒule. | My book was taken away by someone. |
| 8. Wōde-yǐdz ràng-shéi-dǎhwàile? | By whom was my chair smashed? |
| 9. Nèige-láuhǔ ràng-wōde-péngyou dászle. | That tiger was killed by my friend. |
| 10. Hěn-dwō-syǎu-gwó ràng-Dégwo-jànle. | Many small countries were occupied by Germany. |

Drill II. Questions and Answers

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Jīnyan nèige-dìfang píngān-ma? | Is that place peaceful this year? |
| 2. Hái-budà-píngān. | It still isn't very peaceful. |
| 3. Tā-dzài-Chúngchìng dāile-jǐtyān? | How many days did he stay at Chungking? |
| 4. Tā-dzài-Chúngchìng dāile-sz-wǔtyān. | He stayed at Chungking for four or five days. |
| 5. Nèibyardè-dì 'gwèi-bugwèi? | Is that land over there expensive? |
| 6. Nèibyardè-dì shr-hǎu-dì, swóyi hěn-gwèi. | The land over there is good land, so it's expensive. |
| 7. Nǐ-míngnyan chyù-buchyù-Chúngchìng? | Are you going to Chungking next year? |
| 8. Wǒ-buyǐdìng-néng-chyù. Wǒ-dzwò-wánle-jèisyē-shǐ tsái-néng-chyù. | I'm not sure that I can go. I can't go until I've completed these matters. |
| 9. Nǐ-gěi-ta dǎ-dyànhwà-le-méiyóu? | Have you phoned him? |
| 10. Hái-méi-gěi-tā-dǎ-ne. | I haven't phoned him yet. |
| 11. Nǐ-kàn-sīyáng-yīnywe dzèmmayang? | What do you think of Western music? |
| 12. Sīyáng-yīnywe hěn-hǎutīng. | Western music sounds fine. |
| 13. Wài. Shr-shéi? | Hello. Who is it? |
| 14. Jèi-shr-'Mǎ-Syānsheng. Nǐ-'yàu-buyàu dāu-wǒ-jyā-lai gēn-wǒ-lyàn-silyànsi-nèige-gēr? | This is Mr. Martin. Are you coming to my home to practice that song with me? |
| 15. Wèiywán-jǎng jyànle-'nǐmen-méiyóu? | Did the chairman see you? |
| 16. Jyànle. Tā-yàu-wǒmen-syǎng-fádz hwànchǐ-swóyǒude-Jūnggwo-rén dǐ-kàng-dírén. | He saw us. He wants us to think of ways to arouse all the Chinese people to resist the enemy. |

Drill II (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 17. Ní-'yàu-buyàu-wo gěi-tā-dǎ-dyàn-hwà? | Do you want me to phone him? |
| 18. Ní-bubì gěi-tā-dǎ-dyànhwà-le. Wǒ-yàu-chyù-kàn-ta. | You don't have to call him. I'm going to go see him. |
| 19. 'Wáng-Syānsheng 'chílaile-méiyóu? | Has Mr. Wáng gotten up? |
| 20. Wǒ-mǎshang-chyù-'kànkàn. | I'll go immediately and see. |

Drill III. Model Sentences

- | | |
|---|---|
| *1. Dzài-Hénán yǒu-hěn-dwō-rén ràng-dírén-shāle. | In Honan many people were killed by the enemy. |
| *2. Chàbudwō-swóyǒude-Měigwo-rén dzǎufàn-gēn-wǔfàn dōu-chī-gwōdz. | Almost all Americans eat fruit both at breakfast and at lunch. |
| *3. Tā-gěi-wǒ-dǎ-dyànhwà-shwō tāde péngyou-dzwótian-gwòchyule. | He telephoned me to say that his friend passed away yesterday. |
| 4. Wěiywán-jǎng tài-máng. Bunéng-jyàn-nǐmen. | The chairman is too busy. He can't see you. |
| 5. Sìyáng-yinywe gēn-Jūnggwode hēn-buyiyàng. | Occidental music is quite different from Chinese. |
| 6. Ní-syūyàu-dwō-lyànsi-syě-Jūnggwodz. | You need to practice writing Chinese characters more. |
| 7. Yì-jyǒu-sz-líng-nyán Dégwo-bǎ-Fàgwo-jànle. | In 1940 Germany occupied France. |
| 8. Jèige-gēr hēn-néng-hwànchǐ-Jūnggwō-rén dǐkàng-dírén. | This song is quite able to arouse the Chinese people to oppose the enemy. |
| 9. Ní-dzǎushang 'shémma-shfhou chí-lai? | When do you get up in the morning? |
| 10. Swéibyan-shwō-nèige-shr hēn-wéi-syǎn. | It is very dangerous to talk freely about that matter. |
| 11. Wài! Jèiwèi-shr-shéi? | Hello! Who is this? |
| 12. Jyǎli-méiyǒu-shémma-shr. Dōu-hēn-píngān. | There isn't anything doing at home. Everything is very peaceful. |
| 13. Chúnghìng méiyǒu-Běipíng-dà. | Chungking isn't as big as Peiping. |
| 14. Wànlǐ-Cháng-Chéng méiyǒu-yíwàn-lǐ-cháng. | The Great Wall is not 10,000 <i>li</i> long. |
| 15. Wàigwode-shǎu-yǎdz méiyǒu-Jūnggwode-hǎuchī. | Foreign roast duck isn't as delicious as Chinese. |

Drill IV. Translation Exercise

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Syà-shān yǒu-yidyǎr-wéisyǎn. | 4. Měigwode-lù dzěmmayàng? |
| 2. Dàgūngbào-dzài-Jūnggwō gēn-Nyóuywē-Tàiwushrbào-dzài-Měigwo yiyàng-yǒu-míng. | 5. Tǐngshwō tyāntáng-shr-hēn-hǎude-difang. |
| 3. Dírén-dzài-sínánbyar, búdzai-dūng-nánbyar. | 6. Byé-dǎ-ta! Tā-shr-wǒmende-túng-sywé. |

Drill IV (cont.)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 7. Jūnggwo-rén-syǎng swóyǒude-wài-gwo-rén dōu-yǒu-chyán. | 14. Jwōdzshang-swóyǒude-shū dōu-shr-Jūnggwo-shū. |
| 8. Tyānshangde-fēiji budōu-shr-dírēnde. | 15. Wǒ-děi-lyànsi-kāi-chē, burán wōmen-děi-jyàu-yíge-kāichēde. |
| 9. Dūngsānshēng shr-yì-jyǒu-sān-yì-nyán ràng-Ābēn-jànde. | 16. Dàgài-tā-hái-méi-chílai-ne. |
| 10. Wǒ-syūyàu-jǐrdaude tā-dōu-gàusungwo-le. | 17. Jūnggwo-rén-syǎng sīyáng-yīnywe méiyōu-Jūnggwode-hau. |
| 11. Nèige-hěn-wéisyǎn. Wǒ-bugǎn-dzwò. | 18. Chàbudwō-swóyǒude-rén dōu-méi-syǎngdàu Ēgwo-néng-díkàng-Dégwo. |
| 12. Nǐmen-burènshr-ma? Wǒ-gēi-nǐmen-jyèshau. | 19. Wōmen-nèige-shfhou shāle-hěn-dwō-dírén. |
| 13. Wěiywán-jǎng-shwō-shémma? | 20. Wōmen-syàndzài-kéyi-shwō:
“Wánle.” |

NOTES

- Transitive verbs which do not have an object expressed or clearly implied are to be interpreted as equivalent to passive verbs in English: *Tā-dásǎle-yǐge-láuhǔ* 'He killed a tiger,' *Láuhǔ-dásǎle* 'The tiger was killed.'
 - The agent in such cases is covered by coverbs like *ràng* 'by': *Tā-ràng-Ābēn-rén-dásǎle* 'He was killed by a Japanese.'
 - Chinese uses such constructions far less often than does English.
- The phrase *swóyǒude* 'all' is made up of a literary particle *swǒ* plus the verb *yǒu* 'to have, there is' and the subordinating particle *de*. It literally means 'that which there is.' It is used before a noun or in place of one. It is most often placed before a verb which is preceded by the adverb *dōu* 'all'; if there is an object after *swóyǒude* the object too is often placed before the verb: *Swóyǒude-rén-dōu-láile* 'All the people have come,' *Swóyǒude-shū wǒ-dōu-gěi-ta-le* 'I gave all the books to him.'
- The verb *dǎ*, which occurs in the resultative verb compounds *dásǎ* 'strike dead, kill' and *dǎhwà* 'smash' in its literal meaning of 'hit,' often has no meaning of its own when followed by some noun objects. In such cases it joins with the object to express the action implied by the noun. Thus the verb *dǎ* followed by the noun *dyànhwà* 'telephone' forms the verbal idea 'to make a telephone call': *Nǐ-dǎle-dyànhwà-ma?* 'Did you phone?'
- The verb *jyàn* has a somewhat more formal use than *kàn* 'to see.' *Kàn* is used in informal visits among equals: *Wǒ-chyù-kàn-wǒ-péngyou* 'I'm going to see my friend.' *Jyàn* is used in more formal situations: *Wǒ-chyù-jyàn-wěiywán-jǎng* 'I'm going to see the chairman.'
- Chiang Kai-shek, whose name in Pekingese is pronounced 'Jyǎng-Jyèshf,' is generally referred to in China as *Jyǎng-Wěiywán-jǎng* 'Chairman Chiang' from his position as *jǎng* 'head' of the *wěiywán* 'delegates' to the Central Executive Committee of the *Gwómindǎng* 'Kuomintang.'
- The expression *yí lù píngān* is equivalent to French 'bon voyage' or English 'have a nice trip.' Here *yí* 'one' suggests 'all' or 'the whole' and the entire expression literally means 'May it be peaceful the whole way.'

7. The stirring song *Chilai* 'Arise,' one of the most popular to come out of war-time China, has been recorded by Paul Robeson in an album of Chinese songs entitled *Cheelai* and put out by the Keynote Company of New York City. The English version given in the present work differs from that of the Robeson recording in that it is a more literal translation. The present version also fits the music.

The text of this song has some unusual words and constructions. Some are not spoken forms at all; others exist in speech but do not need to be learned by a beginning student and hence have not been repeated in the various drill exercises. The following notes are therefore meant only as explanations of material in the song itself.

- a. *buywàn*: The syllable *ywàn* is short for *ywànyi* 'be willing.' Hence, *buywàn* is 'not willing.' *Buywàn* is not a spoken form.
- b. *núli*: slave.
- c. *rénmen*: The second syllable is the pluralizing suffix, here appearing in one of its rare occurrences after a noun. *Rénmen* is rarely used in speech.
- d. *syě*: blood.
- e. *júchéng*: build, organize (*jù* 'build' plus *chéng* 'achieve')
- f. *Cháng Chéng*: The syllable *chéng* means 'wall.' From the use of big walls to surround Chinese cities the word has taken on the meaning, already given in these lessons, of 'city.' The Great Wall is also called *Wànli-Cháng-Chéng* 'The Ten Thousand *li* Great Wall.'
- g. *Jūnghwá*: A literary equivalent for 'China.' Its use in speech is limited to a few set phrases.
- h. *míndzú*: nation, people (*mín* 'people' plus *dzú* 'clan').
- i. *dàulyǎu*: The syllable *lyǎu* is the literary pronunciation of the final particle *le*. *Dàulyǎu* is thus literary for *dàule*. It is not a spoken form.
- j. *bèipwòje*: The syllable *pwò* means 'to force.' The semi-literary form *bèi* makes it passive and *je* continuative: 'is being forced.'
- k. *fāchū*: put forth (*fā* 'put forth' plus *chū* 'go out').
 - l. *hōushēng*: roar, cry (*hōu* 'animal cry' plus *shēng* 'sound').
- m. *wànjùng yìsīn*: The syllable *wàn* '10,000' is akin to English 'myriad' in referring vaguely to a huge number. *Jùng* means 'a crowd,' so *wàn jùng* is something like 'a host of myriads of people.' *Yìsīn* is 'one' plus 'heart.' Hence the whole phrase means 'a host of myriads of people with one heart.'
- n. *màuje*: The word *màu* 'to brave' plus the continuative ending *je*.
- o. *pàuhwǒ*: The nouns *pàu* 'cannon' and *hwǒ* 'fire.'
- p. *chyán*: Short for *wàng chyán* or *wàng chyántou* 'toward the front, forward.'
- q. *jìn*: This has occurred in the lessons in the meaning 'enter.' It also means 'to advance.'

APPENDIX

The following sentences are the English versions of the Translation Exercises presented at the end of each lesson. A valuable exercise is to translate the English sentences back into Chinese and then check against the original version.

LESSON 4

DRILL III

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. They are all very tired. | 11. He isn't very good. |
| 2. Are you tired? | 12. Are all of them tired? |
| 3. Are all of you busy? | 13. We're all fine. |
| 4. Isn't he busy? | 14. Aren't they tired? |
| 5. He isn't very tall. | 15. They are all very tall. |
| 6. Are all of them busy? | 16. Are you (<i>pl.</i>) tired? |
| 7. Very good. | 17. They're not too good. |
| 8. Are they tall? | 18. Isn't he busy? |
| 9. Are all of you tired? | 19. He isn't very tall. |
| 10. They are all very tall. | 20. Are they all well? |

LESSON 6

DRILL III

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Do you want it? | 12. He is reading a book. |
| 2. Do you want any books? | 13. Does he understand? |
| 3. Does he also want a newspaper? | 14. He wants me to speak. |
| 4. They are all reading. | 15. He understands everything. |
| 5. Do you (<i>pl.</i>) also want to read? | 16. Don't you want me to buy a newspaper? |
| 6. Do you want me to buy a book? | 17. They want to have a chat. |
| 7. Doesn't he want to speak? | 18. Let's read the newspaper. |
| 8. None of them understands. | 19. He wants to read books and newspapers. |
| 9. Quite right. | 20. I don't want it. |
| 10. I want to read the newspaper too. | |
| 11. He is looking at you. | |

LESSON 7

DRILL IV

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. Does he have any money? | 3. Manager Chyán isn't very tall either. |
| 2. Mr. Wáng isn't very tall. | 4. Do you want to buy a book? |

DRILL IV (*cont.*)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. He wants to give you some money. | 14. Manager Chyán also has books. |
| 6. Does Mrs. Wáng want to buy any books? | 15. Mrs. Wáng wants Mr. Wáng to buy a newspaper. |
| 7. You give him some money, O.K.? | 16. Is there any money? |
| 8. Mr. Martin doesn't understand everything. | 17. Mr. Martin, look and see if you have any money. |
| 9. He's also giving me a newspaper. | 18. Manager Chyán is quite tall. |
| 10. Mr. Wáng wants to buy a newspaper. | 19. Mr. Martin wants to read the newspaper. |
| 11. Don't you want to give him any money? | 20. Mr. Wáng says he wants to buy a newspaper. |
| 12. He says Mr. Wáng has money. | |
| 13. Mr. Martin has a newspaper. | |

LESSON 8

DRILL IV

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Mr. Wáng isn't the manager. | 11. Do you want to give him American money? |
| 2. Is Manager Chyán a Japanese? | 12. Do you understand it all? |
| 3. Chinese horses aren't big. | 13. I don't want to give him any money either. |
| 4. Mr. Martin wants to give him American money. | 14. He has Chinese books, not Japanese books. |
| 5. He says he wants English books, not Chinese books. | 15. Japan isn't large. It's people are also few. |
| 6. Mr. Martin doesn't have a wife. | 16. He's Chinese, not Japanese. |
| 7. Does Japan have horses? | 17. Do you understand English? |
| 8. Not all Chinese want to speak English. | 18. Are all of you Americans? |
| 9. Is she Mrs. Wáng? | 19. China is very large. So is America. |
| 10. He says Manager Chyán doesn't want American money. | 20. Mr. Martin thanks you. |

LESSON 9

DRILL III

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. 96th | 8. how many tens? |
| 2. 70-odd | 9. 40-odd |
| 3. 67 | 10. 3-3-6-7 |
| 4. 80th | 11. 5-8-9-2 |
| 5. 30 and how many? | 12. 4-1-4-5 |
| 6. 92 | 13. 88th |
| 7. 74 | 14. 13 |

DRILL III (*cont.*)

- | | |
|--------|-------------|
| 15. 45 | 18. 63 |
| 16. 94 | 19. 8-6-2-9 |
| 17. 19 | 20. 7-8-5-2 |

LESSON 10

DRILL VI

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I'll give you \$5, will you sell? | 12. \$3.50 is too little. |
| 2. How many books does Mr. Martin want to buy? | 13. This English book isn't very good. |
| 3. Does Mr. Wáng want to buy that book? | 14. Mr. Wáng has only 75 cents. |
| 4. This Chinese book is also very good. | 15. Mr. Wáng, do you want to read this Chinese book? |
| 5. Isn't \$54 a lot? | 16. How much money do you want to give to Manager Chyán? |
| 6. How much money does Mr. Martin want to give him? | 17. How much are these two Japanese books? |
| 7. All Chinese want to read this book. | 18. Manager Chyán says he doesn't have that English book. |
| 8. Which book is \$8? | 19. How many books does Mr. Martin say he wants to buy? |
| 9. He wants to give you this book. | 20. How much is this book? |
| 10. You give me the newspaper and I'll give you the book. | |
| 11. Mr. Wáng also wants to give him six or seven dollars. | |

LESSON 11

DRILL IV

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. I don't have any money. How can I buy any books? | 11. How do you say <i>syèsye</i> in English? |
| 2. Which is yours? | 12. Can your teacher speak English? |
| 3. I can't give him this book. | 13. His wife wants to buy some paper. |
| 4. I have too little money. | 14. Which man is a Japanese? |
| 5. Is that man a Japanese? | 15. My friend is also an American. |
| 6. I don't understand the meaning of that word. | 16. That king is very wealthy. |
| 7. These two men are both quite tall. | 17. That man wants to give the manager \$50. |
| 8. Can your American friend speak Chinese? | 18. What does he have? |
| 9. He says Americans are all very rich. | 19. This is my friend. |
| 10. What does <i>mǎ</i> mean? | 20. I don't have any more. How can I give you any? |

LESSON 12

DRILL V

1. If he gives it to me I'll give it to you.
2. There are good-looking ones and ugly ones.
3. Big countries have many people.
4. Mr. Martin says Mrs. Wáng is very pretty.
5. Many Americans want to buy Chinese books.
6. Japan is a small country. China is a big country.
7. Not all big ones are tall ones.
8. I don't have a single friend.
9. Mr. Martin doesn't have any more money now.
10. Mr. Wáng is a good friend of Mr. Martin's.
11. Not all of them are English.
12. If I buy a couple of Chinese books, I'll give you one.
13. Is it a big one or a small one?
14. I don't want it now.
15. That Japanese doesn't have a single book.
16. China doesn't have a king.
17. He's not a nice person, so I don't want to give him this thing.
18. Both those men said Mrs. Wáng is very good looking.
19. That Chinese table isn't very cheap.
20. If he doesn't have any money now, can you give him \$10?

LESSON 13

DRILL V

1. Mr. Martin is not a rich person.
2. There isn't anyone who doesn't fear tigers.
3. Wasn't this book written by him?
4. Who is that very tall person?
5. Quite a few people can speak Chinese.
6. The things he bought aren't very expensive.
7. Mr. Martin says the people who are singing are all friends of his.
8. He gave the manager more than \$50.
9. The characters which Mr. Wáng writes are very pretty.
10. He says the people who want to buy the horses don't have any money.
11. That Chinese is my teacher.
12. The book which Mr. Wáng is reading is very interesting.
13. I'd like to buy a book, but I don't have any money.
14. If your friend can't speak Chinese, how can he sing Chinese songs?
15. The money he gave you isn't his.
16. The book I want to buy is \$8.32.
17. These two books were both written by him.
18. Chinese guerrillas can sing very pleasing songs.
19. The first man is my friend.
20. I'm very busy, so I can't sing now.

LESSON 14

DRILL VI

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Who is outside? | 11. Isn't your wife here? |
| 2. The people inside the store are all Chinese. | 12. Who is the rear man? |
| 3. Where is Mr. Martin's book? | 13. That foreigner wants to buy some things, but he can't speak Chinese. |
| 4. The man who can speak Chinese is here. | 14. If he isn't there, how can I give it to him? |
| 5. The book he wrote is on that table. | 15. Mrs. Wáng is still abroad. |
| 6. This isn't mine, so I can't give it to you. | 16. Is the book on the table yours? |
| 7. Is the man who sang still here? | 17. Are the guerrillas still here? |
| 8. The big table is in front of that small table. | 18. He isn't here, so he can't see you. |
| 9. He said my book is on the table. | 19. Mr. Martin is in that small store. |
| 10. Where are the guerrillas now? | 20. The things you bought are all on top of that big table. |

LESSON 14

DRILL VII

1. To be on top.
2. The book is on top.
3. The book is on top of the table.
4. The gentleman's book is on top of the table.
5. Mr. Martin's book is on top of the table.
6. The book which Mr. Martin bought is on top of the table.
7. The book which Mr. Martin wants to buy is on top of the table.
8. The book which Mr. Martin wants to buy is on top of that table.
9. The book which Mr. Martin wants to buy is on top of that large table.
10. The book which Mr. Martin wants to buy is on top of that very large table.
11. The book which Mr. Martin wants to buy is also on top of that very large table.
12. The book which Mr. Martin wants to buy is now also on top of that very large table.
13. Is the book which Mr. Martin wants to buy now also on top of that very large table?

LESSON 15

DRILL IV

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. There are no cities in the mountains. | 3. Are there any foreigners in this place? |
| 2. Originally there weren't any Chinese in America, but now there are. | 4. The book says that Hangchow isn't very large. |

DRILL IV (*cont.*)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 5. Where in China are there mountains? | 14. It's very beautiful behind that mountain. |
| 6. What's on the table? | 15. There aren't any small tables here. |
| 7. There isn't a single Japanese here. | 16. Where is the man who wants to buy a big table? |
| 8. The people there aren't very numerous. | 17. There isn't a single store in that city. |
| 9. There are three English books on Mr. Martin's table. | 18. There's also a book under that little table. |
| 10. Are there any people on that mountain? | 19. How much money is there on the table? |
| 11. Are there any Japanese here? | 20. There are many guerrillas outside that city. |
| 12. There aren't any people on that mountain. | |
| 13. At present there aren't any people in that city. | |

LESSON 16

DRILL IV

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. He sings there every day. | 12. What do the guerrillas do in the mountains? |
| 2. Who is the man eating there? | 13. There are foreigners in China too. |
| 3. Everyone says the food that Mrs. Wáng cooks is very tasty. | 14. I read the Chinese newspapers every day. |
| 4. Each person has \$10. | 15. At what time do you want to eat? |
| 5. By whom was that table made? | 16. I can sing some songs. Some I can't. |
| 6. Some of the things are too expensive, so I can't buy them. | 17. He also wants to buy some things in the city. |
| 7. Is Mr. Wáng at home? | 18. The man who gave you the money is buying some books in that store. |
| 8. When do we eat? | 19. How many people are there in the house? |
| 9. Manager Chyán works in the store every day. | 20. What is Mr. Martin doing in the store? |
| 10. There are big stores in every Chinese city. | |
| 11. Some Chinese can't write. | |

LESSON 16

DRILL V

1. At home.
2. In the house.
3. Eat in the house.
4. Eat food in the house.
5. People eat in the house.

DRILL V (*cont.*)

6. That man is eating in the house.
7. That Englishman is eating in the house.
8. That Englishman is eating at a friend's home.
9. That Englishman is eating at my friend's home.
10. That Englishman is eating at the home of an old friend of mine.
11. That Englishman is eating Chinese food at the home of an old friend of mine.
12. That Englishman wants to eat Chinese food at the home of an old friend of mine.
13. That Englishman does not want to eat Chinese food at the home of an old friend of mine.
14. Doesn't that Englishman want to eat Chinese food at the home of an old friend of mine?

LESSON 17

DRILL IV

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. If he comes here today give him this book. | 11. Are you (<i>pl.</i>) going today? |
| 2. What time are you going there? | 12. Do you know when he's coming? |
| 3. I'm going to the mountain-top today. | 13. If he can't come here I'll go to his home. |
| 4. I don't know where he eats. | 14. I hear he's going to America. |
| 5. Mrs. Wáng says she doesn't want to go abroad. | 15. Do you want to invite him here to eat? |
| 6. The newspapers say the king of England is coming to China. | 16. We don't want to go there to eat American food. |
| 7. It doesn't matter whether he goes or not. | 17. The first man wants to go to England. The second man wants to go to America. |
| 8. He knows this book is uninteresting, but he still wants to read it. | 18. I don't know which city is the biggest. |
| 9. Because he wants to come here to see me, therefore I can't go to your home. | 19. He is going to that restaurant to eat. |
| 10. Who knows the meaning of that word? | 20. His home was originally in Soochow. |

LESSON 18

DRILL IV

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. This noon I bought three Chinese books at that book store. | 5. As soon as I heard him speak I knew he was an American. |
| 2. Did you forget to give him the money? | 6. I bought that book but the manager hasn't given it to me yet. |
| 3. I can't come tomorrow afternoon. | 7. Has Mr. Martin forgotten the name of that city? |
| 4. Yesterday there were three English books on that table. | |

DRILL IV (*cont.*)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 8. If you speak Chinese I'll understand. | 15. He's coming tomorrow noon to eat. |
| 9. Many foreigners want to learn how to speak Chinese. | 16. As soon as I heard him sing that song I knew that it wasn't a Chinese song. |
| 10. I've written the characters. Please come and look at them. | 17. Mr. Martin says he ate Chinese food yesterday at Mr. Wáng's home. |
| 11. Did he go to America? | 18. I have something to do this morning. I don't have this afternoon. |
| 12. Yesterday I bought a Chinese book. | 19. This book was written by a foreigner. |
| 13. Where is the Chinese-American Bookstore? | 20. What restaurant do you want to go to tomorrow to eat? |
| 14. Have you forgotten the meaning of that word? | |

LESSON 19

DRILL III

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Last year I didn't go to Italy. I'm going this year. | 11. Last year he went to England twice. |
| 2. What do you think of that city? | 12. Chinese food is wonderful. Have you ever eaten any? |
| 3. Some people think studying Chinese isn't very important. | 13. I think Mrs. Wáng has never been to America. |
| 4. Yesterday I came three times, but you weren't ever at home. | 14. In 1941 he was in China. |
| 5. I've never eaten Japanese food, so I don't know what Japanese food is like. | 15. Outside there's a man singing Chinese songs. |
| 6. This is the first time I've sung any Chinese songs. | 16. Mr. Martin is likely to come here tomorrow to see an old friend of his. |
| 7. Here are some people who are well acquainted with conditions in this place. | 17. The two countries of China and America have now become good friends. |
| 8. Originally I planned to go this year. | 18. Today I plan to write Chinese characters. |
| 9. We aren't permitted to talk about this matter. | 19. This is the first time he's been to America, so he is still unable to speak English. |
| 10. The first time I spoke he didn't understand. The second time he understood everything. | 20. If you have never eaten any Chinese food, then let's go to a restaurant to have some. |

LESSON 20

DRILL V

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. How much is it to go by that big boat? | 2. Originally he planned to go to England by plane. |
|---|---|

DRILL V (*cont.*)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. Did your friend also come by boat? | 11. When did you arrive? |
| 4. Oh my! I forgot to buy the book. | 12. Why don't you speak Chinese? |
| 5. Very few people go to China by plane. | 13. No one believes I can speak Chinese. |
| 6. He's been to France a good many times. | 14. Today is Dec. 8. |
| 7. Why don't you go by boat? | 15. Mr. Martin went yesterday by plane. |
| 8. I went by plane on August 30th, 1943. | 16. At present it is very difficult to go to China by plane. |
| 9. He doesn't believe that there are tigers in Manchuria. | 17. Each person spoke one sentence. |
| 10. Last year they went through England. This year they will pass through France. | 18. What were you doing abroad in 1940? |
| | 19. Why can't we go to the Chinese-American Restaurant to eat? |
| | 20. At present he's not at home. He left this morning. |

LESSON 21

DRILL V

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. This Thursday I want to go to the book store to buy some things. | 12. I'm too busy today, so I can't eat lunch. |
| 2. Please come to dinner at seven o'clock. | 13. Friday afternoon I plan to go to the store to buy some books. |
| 3. I don't do anything on Sunday. | 14. Yesterday evening I went outside the city to see some friends. |
| 4. That man is too old, so he can't work. | 15. From three to three-thirty I want to read the newspaper. |
| 5. I can speak a little Chinese. | 16. He left last Saturday at 10.15 A.M. |
| 6. Yesterday I was too busy, so I didn't study Chinese. | 17. It's now 6.54. |
| 7. If he isn't at home at three o'clock I'll come again at four or five o'clock. | 18. Why didn't you come here to see me yesterday noon? |
| 8. Mr. Martin says he doesn't have anything to do on Sunday. | 19. What time are you going to the store? |
| 9. He came to China last month. | 20. He says some Chinese eat breakfast at five o'clock in the morning. |
| 10. It's now five minutes of four. | |
| 11. What day of the week are you leaving? | |

LESSON 22

DRILL VII

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Do you know the name of that road? | 4. Today I was very busy so I studied Chinese for only twenty minutes. |
| 2. That foreigner has already been living in China for ten years, but he is still unable to speak Chinese. | 5. The newspaper says they've already been on the plane sixteen hours. |
| 3. May I ask, how does one get to that store? | 6. How long do you plan to live here? |
| | 7. What are you doing here? |

DRILL VII (cont.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 8. He's already been talking for an hour. | 15. I studied Chinese for four months in America. |
| 9. I want to read the newspaper for a quarter of an hour. | 16. May I ask, is there anyone here who can speak English? |
| 10. Some people work eleven hours a day. | 17. I spoke for ten minutes but no one understood. |
| 11. How many weeks were they on the boat? | 18. I've driven cars a good many times. |
| 12. There are no automobiles on that road. | 19. I've already been in China for three weeks. |
| 13. The driver has already come. | 20. I don't know where he lives. |
| 14. Sunday he worked for five hours. | |

LESSON 23

DRILL VI

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. At that time he was still a reporter in China. | 11. Chinese newspapers are all very small. |
| 2. It isn't to England that Mr. Martin is going next month. He's going to China. | 12. When he came to see me I wasn't at home. |
| 3. After I go to Soochow, I also want to go to Hangchow. | 13. As soon as we saw him we knew he was an American newspaper correspondent. |
| 4. What's the book he wrote called? | 14. Is he still in New York? |
| 5. I spoke English. He didn't understand. Afterwards I spoke Chinese. He <i>still</i> didn't understand. | 15. Before I came to China I hadn't ever eaten any Chinese food. |
| 6. Are there many Chinese news reporters? | 16. Whom did you tell to go buy the newspaper? |
| 7. Before I go to China I plan to study Chinese for three or four years. | 17. I hear that student isn't very good. |
| 8. As soon as I saw him I knew he was a Chinese student. | 18. It's not every day that I eat Chinese food. |
| 9. Mr. Martin says today's news is very bad. | 19. After I've bought some things I can cook some food. |
| 10. Those two Chinese are both very famous. | 20. Ten dollars certainly isn't much. Will you buy it? |

LESSON 24

DRILL VII

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Has your wife recovered? | 3. Mr. Martin is sick, so I plan to cook a little something nice for him to eat. |
| 2. That man is too old. He can't work any more. | 4. It's now already seven o'clock. |

DRILL VII (*cont.*)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. There isn't anyone left. They've all gone. | 13. I can't drink so much wine. |
| 6. After my friend bought the book he gave it to me. | 14. The other students say that book is very uninteresting. |
| 7. Mr. Martin says he's a little busy today. | 15. I like to eat ice cream every day. |
| 8. That man is too tired. How can he do so many things? | 16. That man has already aged. |
| 9. This car is damaged. Don't drive it. | 17. It's now already ten o'clock. How is it he hasn't come yet? |
| 10. Thanks! I can't drink any more. | 18. That sentence is too difficult. I don't understand it at all. |
| 11. I can't drive a car any more now. | 19. I haven't driven a car for six years. |
| 12. After he asked me he left. | 20. I often go to that restaurant to eat Chinese food. |

LESSON 25

DRILL IV

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. He not only doesn't want to drink any wine. He also doesn't want to eat any food. | 10. Ask him to go with us by car, alright? |
| 2. I have to finish reading this book at home, and then I can go with you to see friends. | 11. If it's impossible to buy a big table you may buy a small one. |
| 3. If you can't buy it today, perhaps you can buy it tomorrow. | 12. After he finishes studying Chinese he still has to study one or two years of German. |
| 4. That man is very bad. He often boasts. | 13. The doctor didn't say what sickness your friend has. |
| 5. Don't drink up that wine. I'd like to drink a little. | 14. We not only want automobiles, but we also want drivers. |
| 6. Are there any foreign doctors here? | 15. With whom is that foreigner in front of the store talking? |
| 7. I've already lived in China for ten years, but I still can't understand Cantonese. | 16. You don't have to cook so much food. |
| 8. I don't like to go to such distant places. | 17. If his home is too far, we can go by car. |
| 9. Not only is there nobody who has gone to that place. Moreover, very few people know about conditions in that place. | 18. People of other regions can't understand the language we speak. |
| | 19. I can't forget this matter. |
| | 20. Perhaps he lives outside the city. Do you know? |

LESSON 26

DRILL V

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. That place is too far. We can't get there in one hour. | 2. I didn't realize that that mountain was so near here. |
|---|--|

DRILL V (*cont.*)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3. Since you don't have anything else to do why don't you go with me? | 12. In that city there are 23,458 people. |
| 4. The guerrillas are three or four <i>li</i> from that mountain. | 13. He says there are some guerrillas not far from here. |
| 5. I've just bought a Chinese book. Would you like to look at it? | 14. The newspaper has just been bought, so I haven't read it yet. |
| 6. There are more than 30,000 people in that city. | 15. As soon as I saw him I recognized him. |
| 7. How is this method? | 16. I just told someone to go to that store and buy a little wine. |
| 8. He invited 130 people to come and eat Chinese food. | 17. He said that place wasn't very far, but we've already walked four <i>li</i> . |
| 9. By whom was that book you just bought written? | 18. Is that person who has just arrived your student? |
| 10. If the restaurant is only one <i>li</i> from here, we can get there in a quarter of an hour. | 19. He says he doesn't know how far that city is from here. |
| 11. How far is your friend's home from here? | 20. I've seen this character, but I've forgotten what it means. |

LESSON 27

DRILL IV

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Writing isn't as important as speaking. | 11. I don't believe that America and China are the same size. |
| 2. Conditions in those two places are almost the same. | 12. Are there any people here who can help out? |
| 3. Have two or three hundred people come and help us. | 13. Since we can't arrive by Saturday, let's stay here one or two days, all right? |
| 4. That doctor looks a lot like a foreigner, but I don't know him. | 14. Some people say he looks like a Japanese, but as soon as I looked at him I knew he was a Chinese. |
| 5. He wants to buy a table that is both good and cheap. | 15. His wife is both tall and good-looking. |
| 6. China doesn't have such fast planes. | 16. They all say this road isn't as good to travel on as that one. |
| 7. Not only did those men not help us, but they also laughed at us. | 17. These horses are all equally slow. |
| 8. The newspaper says that at 11.30 A.M. yesterday four foreign newspaper reporters came to look into conditions in this place. | 18. That man who has just arrived is almost as tall as Mr. Martin. |
| 9. The doctor says he doesn't have to come again to see you. | 19. If you go by car you have to travel almost three hours. |
| 10. He says its impossible to go by car, as the road is bad going. | 20. Don't laugh at him. He's sick. |

LESSON 28

DRILL V

1. North of that big mountain there are lots of guerrillas.
2. Toward the west there aren't any good roads.
3. Airplanes are much faster than automobiles.
4. What does that mean?
5. Japan is east of China.
6. We certainly have to ask people to come and help.
7. My friend is very tall, but Mr. Martin is even taller than he.
8. What are the hills in the southwest called?
9. It's a little better to write it this way.
10. That city is even farther from here. We still won't be able to get there in four hours.
11. France is west of Germany.
12. This restaurant is much better than that one.
13. The book you bought is a little more expensive than mine.
14. We certainly have to go in this direction.
15. He says Chinese is more difficult than English.
16. I certainly don't want that money.
17. Are there any better ones?
18. The northern mountains are much higher than the southern ones.
19. From this place you need to go east.
20. Writing Chinese is much more difficult than speaking Chinese.

LESSON 29

DRILL V

1. You shouldn't eat so fast.
2. What dishes would you like to eat today?
3. They all say previous conditions were much better.
4. I thought he couldn't speak Chinese, but he speaks better than Mr. Martin.
5. When I was in Peiping I ate with chopsticks every day.
6. He often ate too fast, so he became sick.
7. Please walk slower. I'm awfully tired.
8. He doesn't know whether it's better to use chopsticks or knife and fork.
9. We ought to leave.
10. He is very fond of walking together with his wife.
11. He runs much faster than I.
12. Mr. Martin doesn't sing Chinese songs very well either.
13. How does Mr. Wáng write?
14. Let's eat faster. We ought to leave at 12.30.
15. That airplane is awfully fast.
16. Is the table you bought yesterday expensive?
17. Are knives or forks the more expensive?
18. He has already taught many foreigners to speak Chinese.
19. We ought to walk more slowly.
20. Foreigners don't ordinarily eat with chopsticks.

LESSON 29

DRILL VI

1. More slowly.
2. Speak more slowly.
3. Speaks more slowly.
4. That man speaks more slowly.
5. That man speaks more slowly than you.
6. That man also speaks more slowly than you.
7. That man also speaks Chinese more slowly than you.
8. That Englishman also speaks Chinese more slowly than you.
9. Does that Englishman also speak Chinese more slowly than you?

LESSON 30

DRILL V

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. I've already been living here for two years. Now I want to return to my own country. | 11. I can't move this thing by myself. |
| 2. The <i>New York Times</i> correspondents have all returned to America. | 12. Before I saw him I thought he was a Japanese. |
| 3. Honan is very near Hopei. | 13. Old Fourth is the younger brother of Old Third. |
| 4. Rickshas aren't as fast as automobiles. | 14. If they don't have boats how can the guerrillas cross the river? |
| 5. I don't know what that university is called. | 15. May I ask, how does one get to Sun Yat-sen Road? |
| 6. No one can ascend such a high mountain. | 16. We moved from the south to this place at the same time. |
| 7. After you return to America what do you plan to do? | 17. I don't like to go out of the country as I don't like to leave home. |
| 8. Where has the office of the <i>Dàgūngbào</i> moved to? | 18. We here are all fellow townsmen. |
| 9. Mr. Martin isn't at home today. He's gone out. | 19. It doesn't matter whether he walks rapidly or slowly. |
| 10. The time has come. Let's leave. | 20. Mr. Martin doesn't use chopsticks as well as Mr. Wáng. |

LESSON 31

DRILL IV

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. We have to call a doctor to come and see him. Otherwise he certainly can't get well. | 3. I don't sing Chinese songs very well. Please don't laugh. |
| 2. Yesterday he told me about a good plan. | 4. Come anytime you please. |
| | 5. That restaurant most likely has over a hundred seats. |

DRILL IV (*cont.*)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 6. Please help me a bit. Otherwise I can't finish this matter. | 14. You haven't yet introduced me to this one. |
| 7. Excuse me, I thought the waiter had already brought the chairs for you. | 15. There isn't a single chair in that booth. |
| 8. In three or four days I must go to India by plane. | 16. To cross such a big river I don't dare to take such a small boat. |
| 9. He said he was your fellow townsman, but he didn't tell me what his surname was. | 17. First prepare a little good wine for us. Afterwards we'll see what dishes we'll eat. |
| 10. That road is very hard to travel on, so the drivers don't dare drive. | 18. You help him right away to get that booth ready. |
| 11. Excuse me, I can't tell you about that matter. | 19. If you go by ricksha you can't get there even in one hour. It's much faster by auto. |
| 12. I'd like to drink a little wine first, and afterwards to eat a little Peiping food also. | 20. First go north. On reaching Sun Yat-sen Road go west two or three <i>li</i> . |
| 13. I don't speak Chinese very well. Please don't laugh. | |

LESSON 32

DRILL IV

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Hey, waiter. Prepare a pot of <i>báigār</i> for us. | 12. The king drinks a cup or two of wine only when he eats dinner. |
| 2. I only play 'guess fingers' when I drink wine. | 13. Put the expensive one here. Take the cheap one in there. |
| 3. These melon seeds are indeed unappetizing. | 14. Be careful. They say there are tigers not far from here. |
| 4. I didn't win. I lost seventy-five cents. | 15. I plan to stay one month in each country. |
| 5. I have to do a little more work today. | 16. Sometimes Chinese eat melon seeds before eating. |
| 6. May I ask, what is that white thing on the mountain? | 17. It wasn't until after coming to China that I drank <i>báigār</i> . |
| 7. Chinese restaurants are much more numerous than foreign ones. | 18. He has just won more than \$100. |
| 8. I've already stayed two hours. I must leave. | 19. Perhaps you won't like to drink such strong wine. |
| 9. I've never drunk such strong wine. | 20. When Chinese drink they don't often say "Bottoms up." |
| 10. Have a little more rice. | |
| 11. Even Chinese correspondents haven't heard of this matter. | |

LESSON 33

DRILL IV

1. Previously I was very fond of eating meat. Now I don't much care to eat it any more.
2. When you cross the street you have to walk carefully.
3. He was born in Hopei on August third of last year.
4. Russians often drink cabbage soup.
5. From 1930 to 1933 he was in Germany. Afterwards he fled to America.
6. You've written that word incorrectly. You ought to write it this way.
7. This noon I became sick immediately on eating some mushrooms. Perhaps what I ate weren't real mushrooms for sure.
8. Put the bamboo shoots on top.
9. You have to eat a little fruit each evening.
10. Don't be polite. Have a little tea as you please.
11. He certainly knows how to roast a duck.
12. Two bowls of rice aren't much. Eat a little more.
13. That isn't what I mean. I spoke incorrectly.
14. That new auto is already damaged.
15. I made a mistake, so you've won.
16. Americans think bird's nest soup is very delicious.
17. That amount of vegetables is certainly enough.
18. I naturally like to eat fried duck livers.
19. I've eaten my fill. I certainly can't eat any more.
20. The bottom one is mine. You can take it away.

LESSON 34

DRILL IV

1. Descending the mountain is somewhat dangerous.
2. The *Dàgūngbào* in China is as famous as the *New York Times* in America.
3. The enemy is in the southwest, not in the southeast.
4. What are American roads like?
5. I hear heaven is a very nice place.
6. Don't hit him! He's our schoolmate.
7. Chinese think all foreigners are rich.
8. The airplanes in the sky are not all the enemy's.
9. Manchuria was occupied by Japan in 1931.
10. He told me all that I needed to know.
11. That's very dangerous. I don't dare do it.
12. Aren't you acquainted? I'll introduce you.
13. What does the chairman say?
14. All the books on the table are Chinese books.
15. I have to practice driving a car, otherwise we'll have to call a driver.
16. Most likely he hasn't gotten up yet.
17. Chinese think western music isn't as nice as Chinese.
18. Almost no one thought Russia could resist Germany.
19. At that time we killed a good many of the enemy.
20. Now we can say "Finished."

INDEX

(The Index covers the Vocabularies and Notes. V = Vocabulary and N = Notes. Thus, 4V refers to the Vocabulary of Lesson 4, and 4N6c refers to Note 6c of Lesson 4)

- a* (particle) 4V, 4N6c, 4N8
 AD. *See* adverbs
 adverbs 4N5, 4N6a-b, 6N9, 12N2, 16N1d, 26N1c, 26N2, 29N1, 33N4
āiyā 'oh my!' 20V, 20N5
 auxiliary verbs 6N3, 16N1d, 18N3b
 AV. *See* auxiliary verbs
- ba* (particle) 17V, 17N8
bā 'eight' 9V
bā 'take' 32V, 32N1
bái 'white' 30V
bǎi 'hundred' 26V, 26N6-7
báigār 'a wine' 32V
báitsài 'cabbage' 33V
bān 'move' 30V
bàn 'half' 21V, 21N1d
bàn 'manage' 21V
bàn-gūng 'work' 21V, 21N6
bāng 'help' 27V, 27N7
bāngju 'help' 27V, 27N7
bào 'newspaper' 6V
bǎu 'sufficient' 37V
bēi 'cup' 32V
běi 'north' 28V, 28N2
Běidà 'National Peking University' 30V, 30N7
Bèipíng 'Peiping' 29V
běn 'volume' 10V
běnlái 'originally' 13V
bǐ 'compared to' 28V, 28N1c, 29N1f
bìdèi 'have to' 25V, 25N4
bídz 'nose' 27V
bìngchǎyě 'moreover' 25V
bīngjīlǐng 'ice cream' 24V
bù 'not' 4V, 4N5b, 7N2b, 16N5, 25N1f, 32N5
buddàn 'not only' 25V
bùtsuò 'good' 33N6
buyāu 'don't' 24N7
byār, byar 'side' 28V, 28N3
byé 'don't' 24V, 24N7-8
byéde 'other' 24V, 24N8
- cardinal numbers 9N1a
chá 'tea' 33V
chà, chā 'lack' 21V
chàbuduō 'almost' 27V, 27N6
chādz 'fork' 29V
chàng 'sing' 13V
cháng 'long' 34V
cháng 'often' 24V
chángcháng 'often' 24V
chē 'vehicle' 22V
chéng 'city' 15V
- chī* 'seven' 9V
chìchē 'auto' 22V
chìguài 'strange' 29V
chīlái 'arise' 34V
chǐng 'request' 17V
chǐngtsài 'vegetable' 33V
chǐng-wèn 'may I ask' 22N5
chǐngsing 'conditions' 19V
chī 'eat' 16V
chū 'go out' 30V
Chungching 'Chungking' 34V
chuwán 'boat' 20V
chǎn 'thousand' 26V, 26N6-7
chǎn 'money' 7V, 10N4b, 11N5a
chǎu 'go' 17V, 17N1b-d, 18N3g, 19N5, 26N8, 27N8, 30N1
chǎnyǎn 'last year' 19V
 combining forms 7N3, 7N4a, 15N5, 19N12, 21N7
 commands 17N5, 29N1g
 comparison 28N1, 29N1, 29N4, 30N2
 compounds 11N2a
 conjunctions 12N4
 coverbs 16N1, 18N3a
 CV. *See* coverbs
- dà* 'big' 4V
dǎ 'strike' 34V, 34N3
dàgài 'most likely' 31V
Dàgūngbào 'The Impartial' 23V, 23N8
dāi 'stay' 32V
dàifu 'doctor' 25V
dāngrán 'of course' 33V
dàsywé 'college' 30V
dào 'to' 17V, 17N2, 19N5, 21N4, 30N1c
dào 'arrive' 20V
dāudz 'knife' 29V
de (particle) 11V, 11N1c, 11N2, 13N1, 14N2-3, 18N3e, 29N1, 33N4
-de duō 'by much' 28N1e
-de hěn 'very' 29N1b
děi 'have to' 25V, 25N4
-de shíhou 'when' 23N1
Dégwo 'Germany' 19V
déle 'enough' 10V, 10N7
dì (ordinalizer) 9V, 9N1a, 103b
dì 'ground' 15V, 26N4a
dìdì 'younger brother' 30V
dìfang 'place' 15V
dīkàng 'resist' 34V
dírén 'enemy' 34V
dōu 'all' 4V, 12N5b, 16N2b, 16N3b, 32N1b
dōng 'east' 28V, 28N2

dǔng 'understand' 6V
dǔngle 'understand' 11V, 11N6
Dǔngsānshèng 'Manchuria' 15V
dǔngsi 'thing' 12V
duwèi 'correct' 6V
duwèibuchǐ 'beg pardon' 31V
duwèile 'correct' 6V, 6N6b
duō 'many, much' 8V, 8N3, 9N1e, 12N2d-e,
 26N5, 26N7, 28N1e, 32N2
duō, duō? 'how much?' 26V, 26N3
duōshǒu? 'how many?' 10V, 10N6
dyǎn 'dot' 21V, 21N1a
dyǎnhuà 'telephone' 34V
dyǎr, dyar 'a bit' 28N1b
dz (suffix) 14N5
dè 'word' 11V
dzài 'occupy' 14V, 14N1, 15N1, 16N1b-c
dzài 'again' 17V, 19N10
dzàijyàn 'good-bye' 17V
dzǎufàn 'breakfast' 21V
dzǎushàng 'morning' 21V
dzèmma? 'how?' 11V, 32N6
dzèmmayàng? 'be of what sort?' 19V
dzǒu 'walk' 20V
dzwèi 'most' 15V, 15N4
dzwò 'do' 16V, 19N9
dzwò 'sit' 20V, 20N1, 27N9
dzwò, dzwòr 'seat' 31V
dzwò-shì 'work' 21N6
dzwótyan 'yesterday' 18V

Ègwo, Ègwo 'Russia' 19V
 emphasis. See stress
 equational verbs 8N1
èr 'two' 9V, 10N3b-d, 10N4b, 26N6d
 EV. See equational verbs

fádz 'method' 26V, 26N10
Fàgwo 'France' 19V
fàn 'food' 16V, 33N5
fàngdzai 'place on' 32V
fàngwǎn, fàngwǎr 'restaurant' 17V, 17N4
fēijī 'airplane' 20V
fēn 'cent' 10V, 10N2c, 10N3d
fēn 'minute' 21N1c
fēn 'tenth' 25N5
 finals 1, 2, 5
 fricatives 2, 5
 full words 7N3, 7N4a

gāi 'ought' 29V, 29N8
gān 'dry' 32V
gǎn 'dare' 31V
gān, gār 'liver' 33V
gāng 'just now' 26V
gāngtsái 'just now' 26V
gāu 'tall' 4V
gàusung 'inform' 31V
ge 'measure' 9N1f, 11N3b, 26N7
gē, gēr 'song' 13V

gěi 'give' 7V, 7N1, 24N6
gēn 'with' 25V, 27N1b-c
gèng 'more' 28V, 28N1d
gòu 'sufficient' 33V, 33N2
 GP. See grammatical particles
 grammatical particles 1N3
gūngshrfáng 'office' 21V
guādzēr 'melon seeds' 32V
Gwāngdǔng 'Kwangtung' 20V
Gwāngdǔng-rén 'a Cantonese' 20N7
guèi 'expensive' 12V
gwo (suffix) 19V, 19N1-2
guó 'country' 8V, 8N4b
guò 'cross' 30V, 31N2
guòdz 'fruit' 33V
guówáng 'king' 7N3a, 8V

háí 'still' 12V, 19N10, 24N4, 28N1d
háishr 'still' 23V, 23N6, 29N4
Hángjou 'Hangchow' 15V
hǎu 'good' 4V, 12N1
hǎu 'day of the month' 20V, 20N2b
hǎu-buhǎu (command) 6N7
hǎuji 'good many' 19V
hē 'drink' 24V
hé 'river' 30V
Hébéi 'Hopei' 30V
hēi! 'hey!' 32V
hěn 'very' 4V, 28N1f, 29N1b
Hénán 'Honan' 30V
hòulái 'afterwards' 29V, 29N10
hú 'pot' 32V
huà 'speech' 6V, 21N7
huà chywán 'guess fingers' 32V, 32N7
huài 'bad' 24V
huàncht 'arouse' 34V
huéi 'return' 30V
huèi 'able to' 11V, 11N7, 19N8
huó 'live' 25V
huòji 'waiter' 31V

indirect objects 7N1
 initials 1, 2
 INT. See interjections
 interjections 11N4
 intransitive verbs 17N1
 IV. See intransitive verbs

jà 'fry' 33V
jàn 'occupy' 34V
jànggwèide 'manager' 7V
je (particle) 33V, 33N1
jèi 'this' 10V, 11N3a, 21N3, 27N4
jèli 'here' 14N4
jemma 'so' 27V, 27N2c, 27N3b
jēn 'real' 29V
jēnde 'really' 31N4
jēr 'here' 14V
jǐ? 'how many?' 9V, 9N2b, 10N6a, 21N2b
jàjě 'reporter' 23V

jìle 'very' 29V, 29N3
jìn 'near' 26V, 26N1b
jìn 'enter' 30V
jīnggwō 'pass through' 20V
jīnnyan 'this year' 19V
jīnlyan 'today' 17V
jìshr 'since' 26V, 26N9
jǐ 'only' 8V
jǐ 'paper' 11V
jǐdau 'know' 17V, 17N3, 26N10
jù 'dwell' 22V
jūng 'clock' 21V, 21N1
Jūnggwō 'China' 8V
Jūngshān Lù 'Sun Yat-sen Avenue' 30V, 30N5
jūngtōu 'hour' 22V
jūngwū 'noon' 18V
jūsweñ 'bamboo shoots' 33V
juwōdz 'table' 12V
jiyā 'home' 16V
jiyàn 'cheap' 12V
jiyàn 'see' 34N4
jiyānsyāu 'laugh' 31V
jiyāu 'teach' 29V
jiyāu 'call' 23V, 23N7
jiyēshau 'introduce' 31V
jiyōu 'nine' 9V
jiyōu 'liquor' 24V
jiyōu 'then' 12V, 12N4, 24N4
jiyōushr 'even if' 32V
jiyù 'phrase' 20V

kāi 'open' 22V
kāichēde 'driver' 22N6
kān 'look at' 6V, 6N5c, 19N6, 34N4
kān-shū 'read' 21N8a
kè 'quarter hour' 21V, 21N1b
kě 'after all' 32V
kèchi 'polite' 31V
kéyi, kéyí 'may' 18V, 18N4
kěshr 'but' 12V
kwài 'measure' 10V
kwài 'fast' 27V
kwàidz 'chopsticks' 29V

lái 'come' 17V, 17N1b-d, 18N3g, 19N5, 26N8, 27N8, 30N1, 32N4, 33N3
lāu 'old' 13V, 30N6
lāuhū, lāuhu 'tiger' 13V
le (particle) 6N6b, 10N7, 11N5b, 11N6, 18V, 18N1-3, 19N2b, 24N1-4, 32N1c, 32N6
lèi 'tired' 4V
lì 'inside' 14N2b, 23N4
lí 'distant from' 26V, 26N1, 26N4b
lǐ 'Chinese mile' 26V, 26N4, 26N6d
lǐbài 'week' 21V, 21N2-3
lǐhai 'strong' 32V
likāi 'leave' 22V
līng 'zero' 10V, 10N3f, 21N1c, 26N6c
lītou 'inside' 14V, 14N2b, 23N4
lù 'road' 22V, 26N4a
lyānsi 'practice' 34V

lyāng 'two' 10V, 10N3-4, 26N6d
lyāu 'finish' 25V, 25N1c
lyōu 'six' 9V

M. See measures
ma (final) 4V, 4N7a, 4N8
mā 'horse' 7V
māi 'buy' 6V
māi 'sell' 10V
māigei 'sell to' 10V
mālù 'road' 28V
màn 'slow' 27V
máng 'busy' 4V, 27N7b
māshang 'right away' 31V
máu 'dime' 10V, 10N2c, 10N3d
 measures 10N1-5, 11N3, 18N1d, 27N4
 medials 1, 2, 5
mēi 'not' 7V, 7N2b, 24N9, 25N1g, 32N5
mēi 'each' 16V, 16N2b
Mēigwo 'America' 8V
mēiyōu 'not have' 7N5, 11N5b, 24N5, 24N9, 25N1g, 27N3a
men (particle) 4V, 4N3b, 4N8
mīngdz 'name' 18V
mīngnyan 'next year' 19V
mīngtyan 'tomorrow' 18V
mwoḡu 'mushrooms' 33V
Myāndyàn, Myāndyàn 'Burma' 20V

N. See nouns
ná 'grasp' 31V
nà 'that' 28V, 28N4
nàli 'there' 14N4
nǎli? 'where?' 14N4
nán 'difficult' 20V, 20N4
nán 'south' 28V, 28N2
nǎr? 'where?' 14V
ne (particle) 12V, 29N5
něi? 'which?' 10V, 27N4
nèi 'that' 10V, 11N3a, 27N4, 28N4
nèmma 'so' 24V, 24N5, 26N11, 27N2c, 27N3b
néng 'able to' 11V, 11N7
nèr 'there' 14V
 neutral tones 1, 3, 6N10b, 7N5, 8N4, 17N1c
nǐ 'you' 4V
nín 'you' 31V, 31N5
 not. *See bu, méi*
 nouns 4N2, 10N2-4, 11N1-2, 12N2, 14N2-3
NU. See numbers
 numbers 9N1, 10N3
nyán 'year' 19V, 19N3
nyàn 'study' 21V, 21N8
nyàn-shū 'study' 21N8
Nyóuywē 'New York' 23V
Nyóuywē-Tāiwushrbāu 'New York Times' 23V

objects 6N5, 7N1, 12N5a, 16N3
 or 10N3e
 ordinal numbers 9N1a, 10N3b, 19N2c
òu 'oh' 11V

pà 'fear' 13V
 palatals 5
 passive 13N2c, 34N1
 pǎu 'run' 29V
 pause 3
 péngyou 'friend' 11V
 PH. See phrases
 phrases 6N6a
 píngān 'peaceful' 34V
 píngcháng 'ordinary' 29V, 29N9
 place words 8N2, 14N1-2, 14N4, 15N1-2
 PR. See pronouns
 pronouns 4N2, 6N5b, 6N10b, 11N2c
 pùdz 'store' 14V
 PW. See place-words

questions 4N6, 4N7, 9N2, 17N3, 29N1d
 question-words 9N2, 10N6

r (suffix) 14N5
 ràng 'by' 34V, 34N1b
 Rǎběn 'Japan' 8V
 reduplication 4N9, 6N8, 16N2, 26N12
 relative clauses 13N1, 14N1b
 rén 'person' 8V, 26N7
 rènshí 'recognize' 26V
 resultative verbs 25N1
 retroflexes 2, 5
 ròu 'meat' 33V
 RV. See resultative verbs

sān 'three' 9V
 sentence modifiers 12N4
 shā 'kill' 34V
 shān 'mountain' 15V
 shàng 'top' 14N2b, 21N3
 shàng 'ascend' 30V
 shàngdǎozhōng 'seat of honor' 31V
 shàngtōu 'top' 14V, 14N2b
 shàngwǔ 'forenoon' 18V
 shāu 'roast' 33V
 shǎu 'few' 8V, 8N3, 12N2d, 32N2
 shéi, shuí? 'who?' 13V
 shénma? 'what?' 11V
 shēng 'born' 30V
 shí 'ten' 9V, 9N1c-e
 shì, shì 'be' 8V, 8N1, 8N4a, 10N8, 11N3a,
 23N5, 25N3, 29N4
 shì 'matter' 16V, 16N4, 19N11
 shìchíng 'matter' 19V, 19N11
 shídzài 'truly' 23V
 shíhou 'time' 16V
 shū 'book' 6V
 shū 'lose' 32V
 shūpù 'bookstore' 18V
 shuō 'talk' 6V, 6N5c, 15N3
 shuō-dà-huà 'boast' 20N6
 sī 'west' 28V, 28N2
 sìhuan 'like' 24V
 sīn 'new' 33V
 sīn 'believe' 20V

sīng 'surname' 30V
 sīnwén 'news' 23V
 sīyáng 'occident' 34V
 SM. See sentence modifiers
 SP. See specifiers
 specifiers 10N5, 13N1b, 21N3
 stative verbs 4N4c, 8N1b, 12N1-2, 18N3h,
 24N1, 24N5, 26N2, 27N1-3, 28N1, 32N3,
 33N4
 stress 3, 4N9, 6N10, 7N4c, 8N4c, 10N8, 16N2c,
 20N3a, 23N5-6, 31N1d
 subordination 11N1-2, 12N2, 13N1, 14N2-3
 substantives 14N5
 substitution tables 4, note; 7, note
 Sūjou 'Soochow' 15V
 superlative 15N4
 surnames 7N4
 SV. See stative verbs
 suǒbìyàn 'as you please' 31V
 suǒyǐ, suǒyǐ 'therefore' 12V, 12N4
 suǒyǐyude 'all' 34V, 34N2
 syà 'descend' 30V
 syà 'next' 21N3
 syān 'first' 28V
 syāndzài 'now' 12V
 syāng 'resemble' 27V, 27N2
 syāng 'think' 19V, 19N7
 syānsheng 'Mr.' 7V
 syàtōu 'bottom' 14V
 syǎu 'small' 12V, 30N6
 syǎu 'laugh' 27V
 syǎustin 'careful' 30V
 syǎuwǔ 'afternoon' 18V
 syě 'few' 27V, 27N4
 syě 'write' 13V
 syèsye 'thank' 7V
 syūyǎu 'need' 34V
 sywé 'study' 18V, 21N8
 sywésheng 'student' 23V
 sǐ 'die' 34V
 sǐ 'four' 9V

tā 'he' 4V
 tài 'too' 4V, 24N1b
 tàitai 'Mrs.' 7V
 tán 'converse' 6V, 6N5c, 6N8
 tāng 'soup' 33V
 TE. See time expressions
 tense 6N4, 18N1-3, 20N3a
 titles 7N4c
 time expressions 12N3, 16N5, 22N1-4, 23N2,
 24N2
 tīng 'listen to' 13V
 tīngshuō 'hear' 17V
 tones 1, 3, 4N7, 7N5, 8N4
 tou (suffix) 14N5, 15N2
 transitive verbs 6N1
 tsái 'then' 23V
 tsài 'course' 29V
 tsúng 'from' 21V, 21N4, 23N3
 tsúngchǎn 'formerly' 29V

tsúnglái 'hitherto' 32V, 32N5
tsuò 'incorrect' 33V, 33N6
tsz 'occasion' 19V, 21N3
túngshí 'at the same time' 30V
túngsyāng 'fellow townsman' 30V
túngsywé 'schoolmate' 30V
 TV. See transitive verbs
 two 10N3
tyān 'sky' 15V
tyān 'day' 16V
tyāntáng 'heaven' 15V

V. See verbs
 verbs 4N4, 6N1-5, 18N1-3. See also auxiliary
 verbs, coverbs, etc.

wài 'hello' 34V
wàiguo 'foreign country' 14V
wàitou 'outside' 14V
wán 'finished' 25V
wàn 'ten thousand' 26V, 26N6-7
wǎn 'bowl' 33V
wǎnfàn 'dinner' 21V
wáng 'king' 7V, 7N3a
wàng 'forget' 18V
wàng 'toward' 28V
wǎnshang 'evening' 21V
wèi 'individual' 31V, 31N3
wěiba 'tail' 29V
wèi-shénma? 'why?' 20V
wéisyǎn 'dangerous' 34V
wéiywǎn-jǎng 'chairman' 34V, 34N5
wén 'language' 21V, 21N7
wèn 'ask' 22V
wǒ 'I' 4V
wǔ 'five' 9V
wǔfàn 'lunch' 21V

yā, *yādz* 'duck' 33V
yǎdzwòr 'booth' 31V
yàng 'sort' 27V
yángchē 'ricksha' 30V

yàngdz 'manner' 29N1a
yàn-wò-lāng 'bird's nest soup' 33V
yào 'want' 6V, 17N7, 25N2
yàuburán, *burán* 'otherwise' 31V
yàujǎn 'important' 17V, 17N6
yàushr 'if' 12V, 12N4
yě 'also' 6V, 12N5b, 19N10
yésyü 'perhaps' 25V
yí, *yí*, *yí* 'one' 9V, 9N1f
yí, *yí* 'as soon as' 18V, 18N3d, 18N5
yíchyán 'before' 23V, 23N1-2, 30N4
yídìng 'certain to' 28V, 28N5
yídyǎn 'a bit' 21N5
yídyǎr 'a bit' 21V, 21N5, 24N5, 28N1b
yídz 'chair' 31V
yíge-chyán 'a cash' 12N6
yíge-rén 'alone' 30N3
Yìguo 'Italy' 19V
yíhòu 'after' 23V, 23N1-3, 29N10
yíjǐng 'already' 22V
yíkùwǎr 'together' 29V, 29N6
yílù pǐngān 'bon voyage' 34N6
Yìndu 'India' 20V
yíng 'win' 32V
yíngdǎng 'ought' 29N8
yínggāi 'ought' 29V, 29N8
Yíngguo 'England' 8V
yínwèi 'because' 12V, 12N4, 26N9
yínywé 'music' 34V
yísz 'meaning' 11V, 11N5a
yíwéi 'consider' 29V, 29N7
yíyàng 'identical' 27V, 27N1
yòu 'have' 7V, 7N2, 7N5, 8N2b, 11N5, 15N1,
 16N4, 19N4, 24N4, 26N3b, 26N4b
yòu 'again' 19V, 19N10
yòude 'some' 16V, 16N3
yòujídùwèi 'guerrillas' 13V
yòu-míng 'famous' 23V
yùbei 'prepare' 31V
yùng 'use' 29V, 29N2
ywǎn 'far' 25V, 26N1a
ywe 'month of the year' 20V, 20N2a
ywè 'month' 20V, 20N2a, 21N3